PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

"IN THE PAGES OF GOOD BOOKS LIES THE MAGIC TO INSPIRE OUR DREAMS AND THE POWER TO MAKE THOSE DREAMS COME TRUE"

·FROM MY LIBRARY·

Book Number ___

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

THE NEW METHOD OF
VISUAL INSTRUCTION APPLIED TO
ALL SCHOOL SUBJECTS

Dedicated to Our Boys and Girls

VOL. VII

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
CALVIN N. KENDALL
Commissioner of Education of the State of New Jersey

ASSOCIATE EDITOR
MRS. ELEANOR ATKINSON
Author of "The How and Why Library," "Greyfriars Bobby," "Johnny Appleseed," "The Boyhood of Lincoln"

DIRECTOR OF VISUAL INSTRUCTION
A. W. ABRAMS
Chief, Division of Visual Instruction, Department of Education of the State of New York

MARSHALL HUGHES CO.
PUBLISHERS
KANSAS CITY, MISSOURI

Copyright, 1916, 1917, 1919, 1920, 1921,
by the F. E. Compton Co.

Copyright, 1926, 1927, by
MARSHALL HUGHES

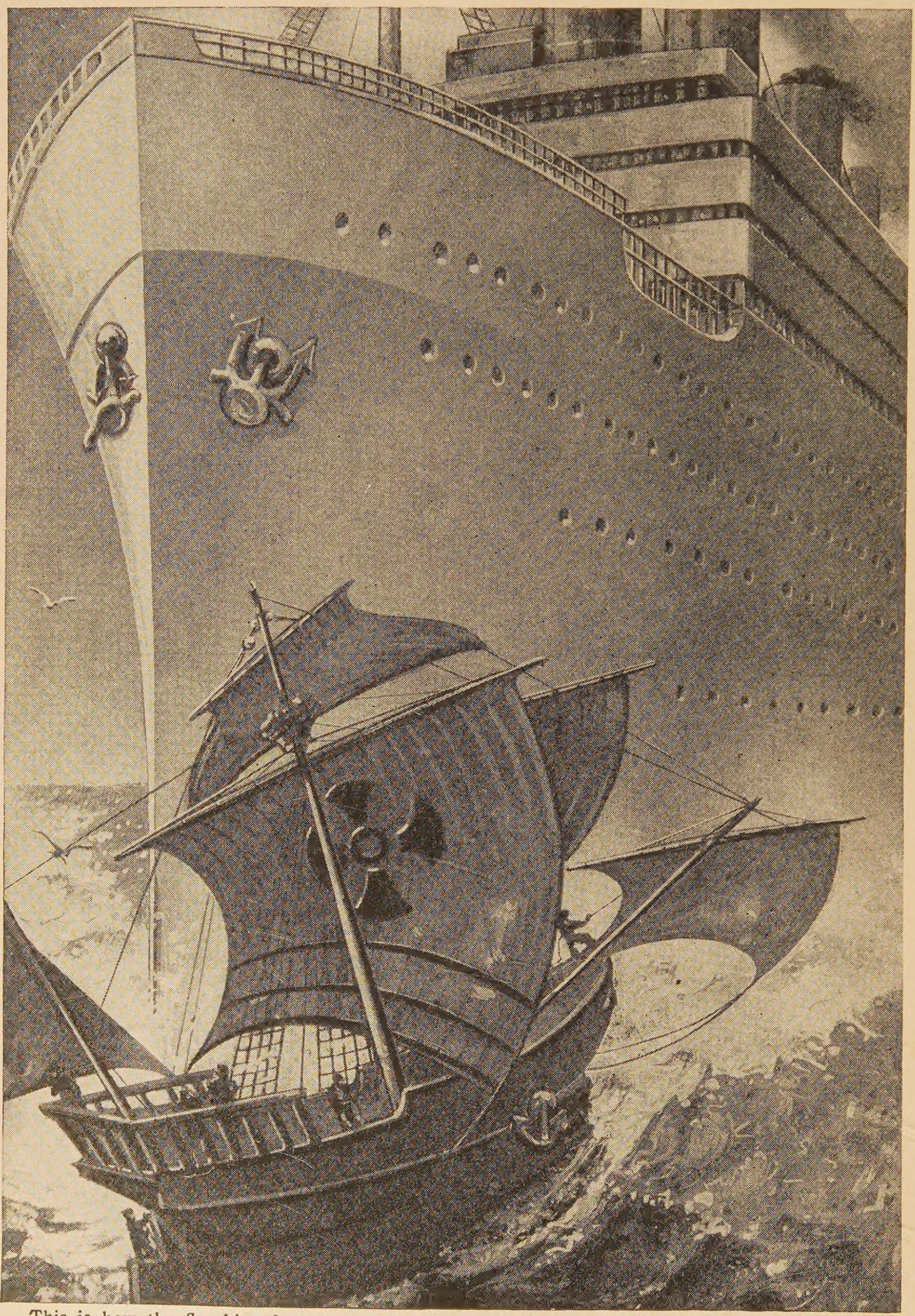
Copyright, 1930, by
MARSHALL HUGHES COMPANY

Made in U. S. A.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

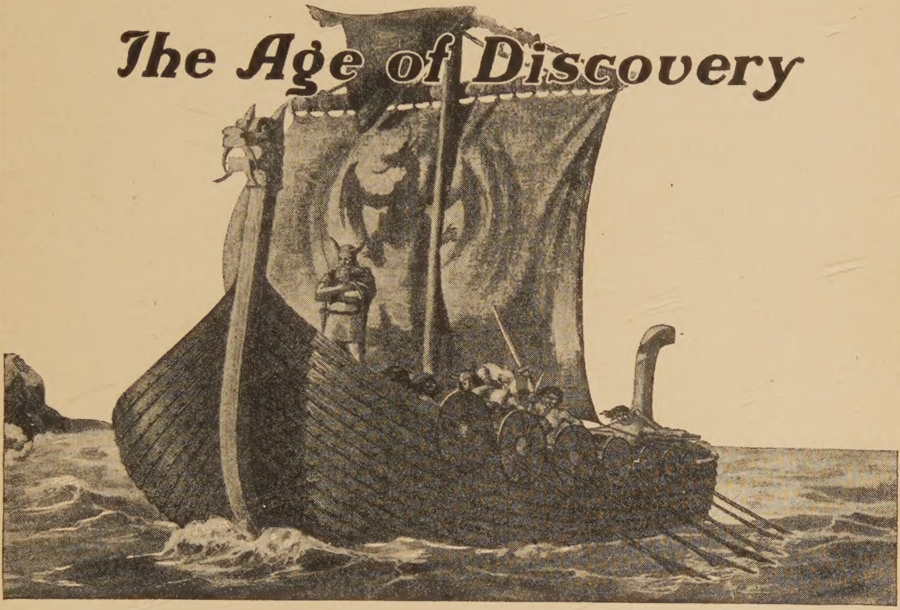
https://archive.org/details/picturedknowledg0002vari

The Santa Maria and the Liner



This is how the flagship of Columbus, the Santa Maria, would look alongside an ocean liner. Even these enormous liners sometimes succumb to the perils of the sea, as when the Titanic was sunk by striking an iceberg. Think then of the boldness of Columbus in putting to sea in that little cockleshell.

The Age of Discovery



The First Discoverers of America

Before they were converted to gentler ways by the Christian missionaries, the fierce, bold Vikings were for many years the terror of Europe. Pirates, raiders, and explorers, they even crossed the Atlantic in their strange boats. These vessels were light yet sturdy. They were driven, as you see, by the wind aided by the strong men at the oars, and were carved with terrible dragons' heads. The sails were square and made of flax, bound at the edges with hide to strengthen them. Often they were gorgeously embroidered, as this one is. This was done by the women. Dragons and serpents were their favorite devices. We know a great deal about these old sea rovers from the custom of burying with a war chief, his vessel, dogs, horses and weapons, in one great mound of earth. Several such mounds have been discovered and the old boats brought to light.

The Vikings' vessels were sometimes 80 feet long, but so shallow that they would float in four feet of water. With this kind of boat—in which your mother would probably consider it unsafe for you to take just a pleasure trip on one of the Great Lakes—the Vikings raided all the coasts of Europe and the Mediterranean, and discovered Iceland, Greenland, and America.

The Outbreak of Discovery

THE greatest events in all human history, the ones which changed and advanced the world most, were the birth of Christ, from which we date time, and the sailing of Columbus from Palos, Spain, nearly fifteen hundred years later. Before Columbus three-fourths of the world was unknown, its nature only dimly suspected, the wide oceans, lonely. Except for the open boats of a few Norse adventurers who visited Nova Scotia about the year 1000, no sail had been seen in Mid-Atlantic nor had white men reached its western shores. But within a century after 1492, this ocean swarmed with ships, and two bold navigators—Magellan for Spain, and Sir Francis Drake for England—had plowed their water furrows around the enormous earth, proving that it was in truth a globe.

Your school history tells the brave story of the discovery and exploration of America, and of the adventurous men who were engaged in it. But really to understand what happened here, we should know something of the Old World from which the New was re-peopled. Why, after so many centuries of land-faring, were all the nations of Western Europe suddenly out on this fearful sea?

The chief reason, no doubt, was that the overland route to India, China and Japan had been closed, after Western Europe had become accustomed to the spices, silks, carpets, gold, pearls and other luxuries of the Far East. But religious zeal came second. The revival of Greek learning and the invention of printing, played their part, too. Men ventured again to believe and to say that the earth was round, and that ships might sail around it. And with the mariner's compass and astrolabe, or "star-finder," introduced from China, navigators were no longer afraid to leave the shore. Greed for gold, love of adventure and belief in fanciful tales about distant lands drew many out to these perilous adventures. The urgent need of salt fish, the chances of profitable trade, and envy of the growing wealth and sea-power of Spain, obliged others to enter the great water-race around the globe.

Two Centuries of Adventures

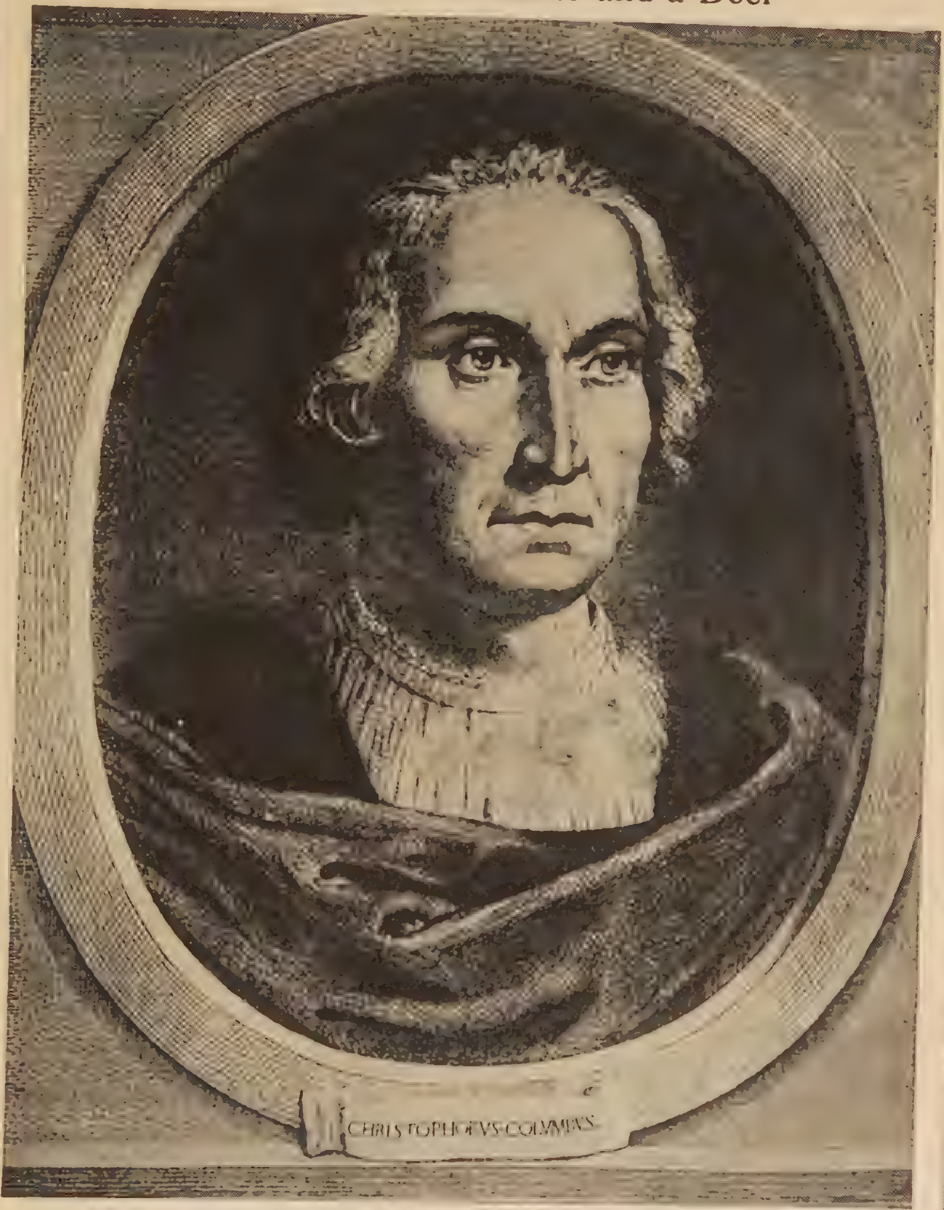
By the age of discovery—and much beside America was discovered—is meant the nearly 200 years from about 1420, when Portugal found the Cape Verde, Madeira and Canary Islands west of Africa, to 1609. Until after Champlain sailed into the St. Lawrence and Hudson went up the Hudson River, very little exploration in the interior of America was done, except by the Spanish, working westward from Florida and north and south from Mexico. In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries the drama was enacted in Europe and on the oceans. The seventeenth century saw new destinies of Old World peoples being worked out in the settlement of America.

The Daring Rovers of the North

To understand the story of Columbus and those who followed him, we shall have to go back six hundred years, to the Norsemen of the ninth and tenth centuries. The men of Denmark and Norway were the pagan sea-rovers and pirates of the time. The island-fringed, mountainous shores of Norway, heavily forested and deeply indented with glacier-carved fiords, faced the North Atlantic. Much of their land cold, steep, barren rocks, or sand and swampy lakes, the Danes and Norse were obliged to build boats and get their living from dark, fog-veiled and stormy seas. So here was the greatest training school for sailors, fighters and adventurers the world has ever seen. Putting boldly out to sea, they rode the gales and hailed the icebergs. The terror of seaport towns and coastwise traders and fishing boats, they raided every coast from England to Italy. Now and then a band settled on some good harbor in England and Northern France and there started other breeds of sea-faring men. It was the Normans, or Northman-French who, in the year 1066, conquered England; and Norman fishermen, who came from France to Newfoundland in such numbers about the year 1500.

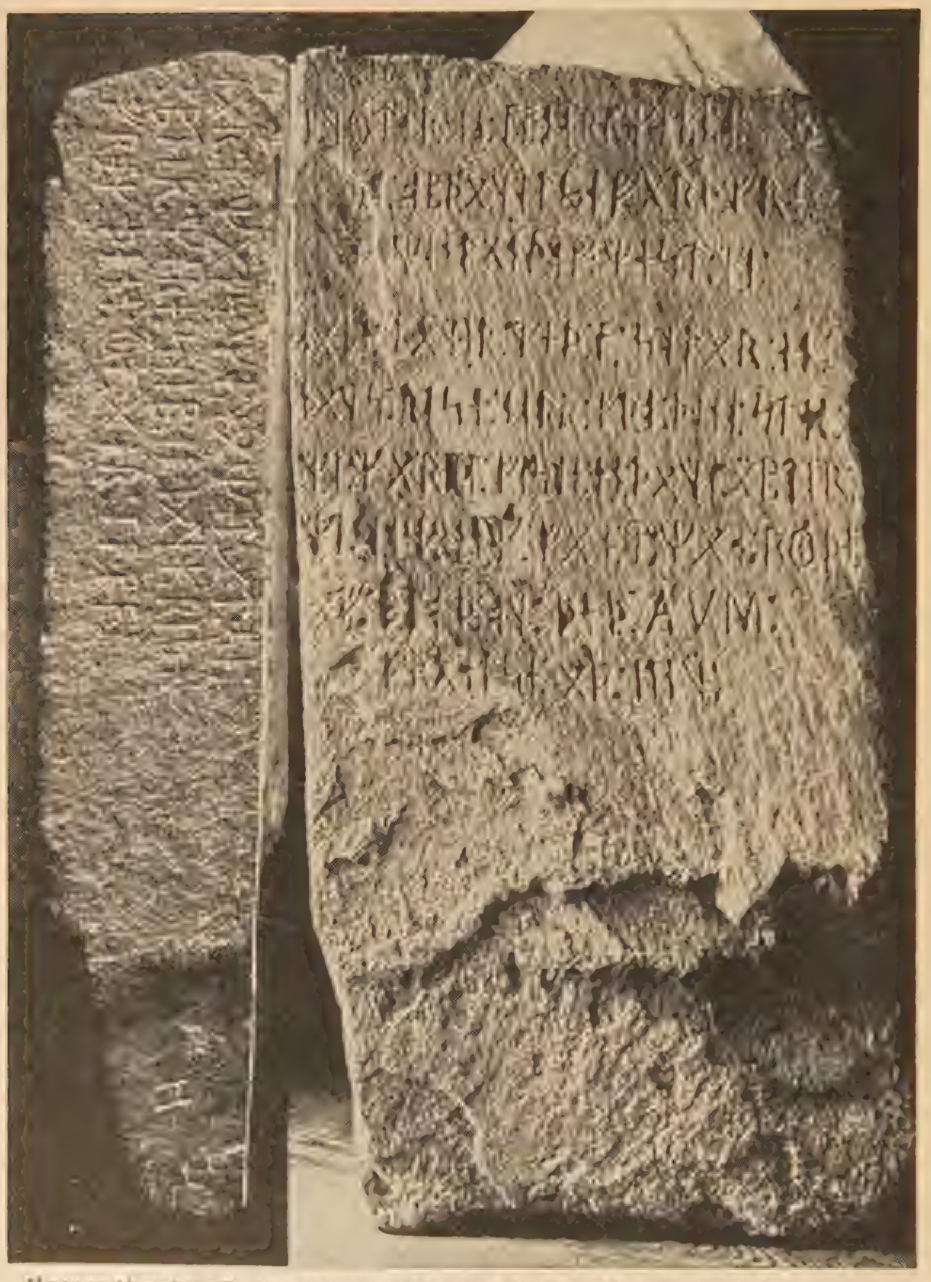
As early as the tenth century, with no compass but sun and stars,

The Face of a Dreamer and a Doer



Genoa is usually accorded the honor of being the birthplace of Columbus by historians of authority. But Spain and Portugal, and other Italian towns besides Genoa, claim him as their son. We are told he had the coloring of a Norseman—sea-blue eyes, auburn hair and a ruddy skin. That he was a handsome man you can see in the picture which this artist has painted. Some recent research workers even claim to have found proof that Columbus was a Portuguese Jew. Dispute as they may as to the facts surrounding the birth and ancestry of Columbus, the fact remains that he was one of the greatest navigators of history, a man of strong, clear faith and determined purpose, of the breed of men who achieve the great things of the earth. Notice the high cheek bones, the powerful nose, the square chin, the stout neck, the high forehead and the big thoughtful eyes—features which express a vigorous personality and a wide vision

The Stone and Its Story



If you could read the Runic characters on this stone what it would say to you is this:
“Eight Goths (Swedes) and twenty-two Norwegians upon a journey of discovery from Vinland westward. We had a camp by two skerries one day's journey north from this stone. We were out fishing one day. When we returned home we found ten men red with blood and dead. A. V. M. save us from evil.

“(We) have ten men by the sea to look after our vessel fourteen days' journey from this island. Year 1362.”

How They Explored the Explorers' Stone

Isn't that a queer looking stone? It was found under the roots of a tree on a lonely farm near Kensington, Minnesota, a good many years ago while the farmer was clearing the land for plowing. His two little boys, aged ten and twelve, were looking on. The inscription is in Runic characters, a form of writing used by the Norsemen.

The thought that here is actually a message of history carved in stone by the hands of those brave adventurers who are said to have found America before Columbus came, makes the story of the Norsemen and Vinland seem very real, doesn't it? But what is even more interesting is the story of how a committee of students of history, appointed by the Historical Society of Minnesota—the stone is now in the Society Museum—"explored" the stone itself.

First of all they came to the conclusion that the farmer could not have carved and buried the stone himself, because although a Swede, he was not an educated man, and, so of course, would not know how to write in the language of the fourteenth century. The roots of the tree under which it was found had grown around the stone and its rings showed that it was about forty years old, so that the stone must have been there before the farmer bought the place. The investigators couldn't find any skerries "one day's journey north" from the stone. A skerry is a rock or reef standing out by itself in the water. The inscription speaks of "this island," but the stone was found on a hill and not on an island. Down to the time when the tree began growing over the stone, Vinland was supposed to be either Nova Scotia or Massachusetts; and these are a great deal more than fourteen days' journey—as those Norsemen would have had to travel—from the place where the stone was found.

What the Rings Had to Say

Moreover, although the inscription pretended to have been carved over five hundred years ago, the edges and angles of the chiseling are sharp, whereas if exposed to the weather for only a few years, stone inscriptions begin to decay, as you can see in the marble slabs in any old graveyard.

All this looked pretty bad for the stone, didn't it? But further investigation showed that while there were no rocks standing in the water as described, there were found twenty miles to the North—what would have been a day's journey for the Norsemen—two large rocks, and the geology of the region shows that these rocks were at one time surrounded by the waters of a lake, and also that the hill on which the stone was found must at one time have been an island.

As to the reference to Vinland, it is said that when the Norsemen came to America, the name was applied to the whole known coast of North America, which at that time took in Hudson Bay. So the reference to Vinland as "Fourteen days' Journey" from the island, would be natural after all. As to the inscription showing so little weathering after 500 years, it was learned that it was found lying face downward, and a stone so protected decays very slowly.

A Little Deeper into the Past

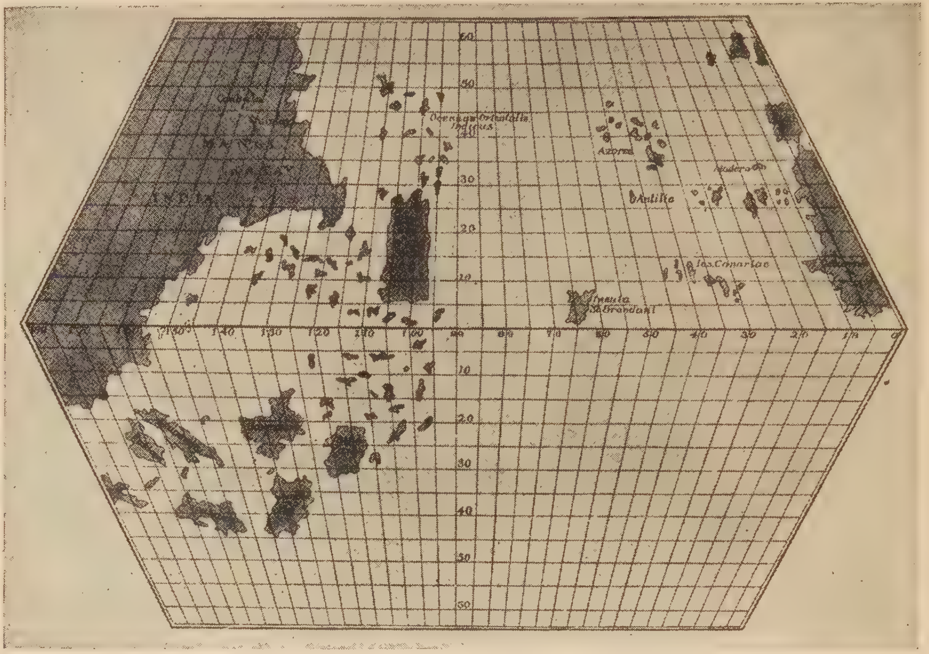
But what is regarded as the most remarkable thing in the whole inscription are the three letters, "A. V. M." This is an abbreviation of the Latin invocation in the Catholic service, "Ave Virgo Maria," but the Scandinavians were all Lutherans. Up to 1362, however, they were Catholics.

If the inscription was invented as a practical joke, it must have been by some very learned man who knew these things which only a scholar would know. But why did he put it where he would have to wait so long to know whether he fooled anybody or not? In previous hoaxes, such as the discovery of buried "giants," the man who buried them saw to it that they were discovered. Moreover, learned men get their greatest pleasure in searching for the truth and not in playing practical jokes. And the inventor of this inscription would have to be a skilful writer also. You see it would be very easy for a Norseman to tell this brief and simple tragic story. It is easy to tell the truth, but it is very difficult to invent a story that looks like the truth, and particularly to tell it in such a small space.

Yet, although the members of the committee were satisfied that the stone was genuine, several other scholars were not. They insisted that several of the words used in the inscription were not spelled as they were spelled in the fourteenth century. But, whether the stone is genuine or not, the story of how scientific men explore facts is the most profitable and interesting part of it. It will help you to realize how hard and how carefully students of history work.

History Back of Your Histories

A Map Columbus Studied



This is a map of the Atlantic Ocean with Europe just peeping over on one side and Asia standing boldly out on the other. It was made by a learned physician of Florence, named Toscanelli. He is said to have corresponded with Columbus and to have made him many valuable suggestions. You see it leaves out North and South America altogether because neither Toscanelli nor Columbus or anybody else at that time knew that North and South America were there. That large island off the coast of Asia marked "Zapingo," we now call "J-a-p-a-n."

no pilots but ravens, they turned the dragon-headed prows of their undecked boats westward, and colonized Iceland and Greenland. A boat blown southwestward by storms, reached the shore of North America.

Guided by Stars and Ravens

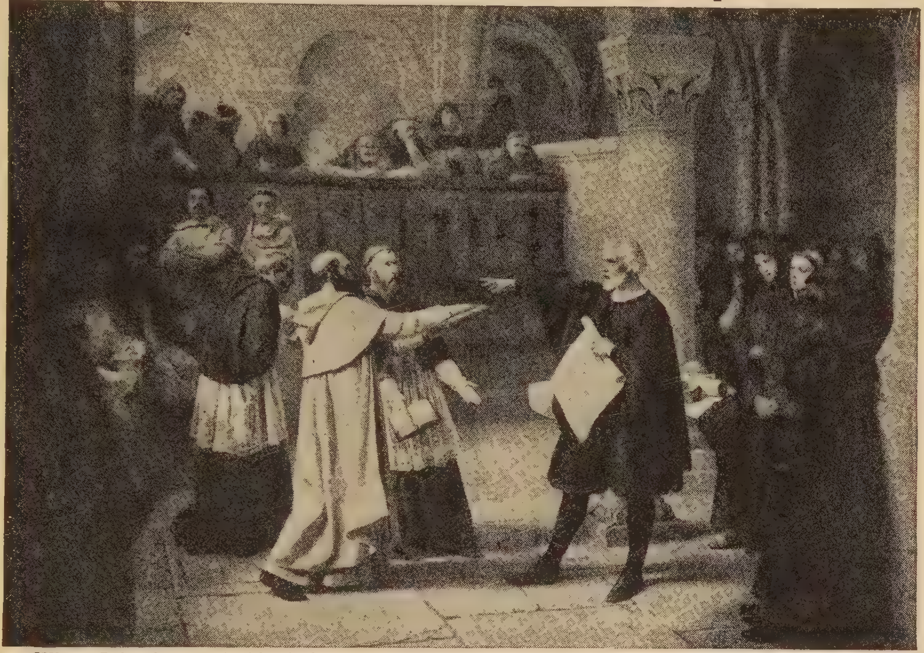
Later, Leif Ericson explored our coast in the region of Labrador and Nova Scotia. It is thought that trading was carried on with the Indians, and temporary settlements and missions made during the next three centuries. The Norse had been converted to Christianity and turned their adventurous spirits into spreading the new faith. The formation and wars of the three kingdoms of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, and more profitable enterprises in barbaric Russia occupied their attention. So the Northman practically disappeared from the sea.

How the Norse Inspired Columbus

But the story of "Leif the Lucky" was not forgotten. It lived in Iceland and elsewhere as a saga—a hero tale of a braver day, to inspire the discoverer of America. Columbus heard the story when he made a voyage from Portugal to Iceland in 1477. It seemed probable to him that the Norse Vikings had reached the northeast coast of China. This confirmed him in the idea that the countries of the Far East could be reached by sailing west.

What was Columbus doing in Portugal? He was a native of Genoa, Italy, which lay in the very center of the known world. Around

Columbus and the Wise Men of Spain



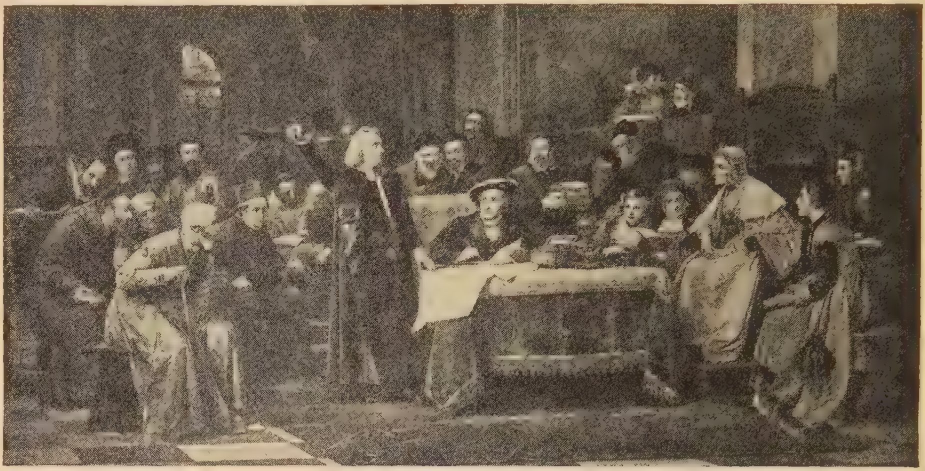
When Columbus made his daring proposition to reach the East by sailing west, he was referred to a council of the wise men of the realms of Spain. Here we see him, map in hand, proving with great eloquence and enthusiasm that he can accomplish what he promises. The learned men, mostly priests and church officials, are telling him he is a madman and a heretic. One of them is showing him the passage in the Bible that refers to the "four corners of the earth" as proof that the world is flat, not round. Another is holding out the writing of some of the early church fathers, whose crude ideas of science were taken as authority by the people of the Middle Ages. These wise men also said that Columbus could never carry enough provisions to sail around the world, and that even if he did get around on the other side he couldn't get back again without sailing up hill which would be impossible. They laughed at the idea of people walking around with heads pointing down and feet up, because they didn't understand the nature of the laws of gravity.

the Mediterranean Sea had risen and fallen all the ancient empires. In the middle centuries the independent republics of Genoa and Venice were rulers of this sea, sharing between themselves the naval power and commerce, and the overland trade with India and China. The fleets of Venice had gone to Egypt and Asia Minor to meet the camel caravans from Arabia; those of Genoa to the head of the Black Sea, to meet the caravans from the Caspian Sea and the Persian Gulf. For three centuries no Italian navigator had had to seek employment in a foreign land. After 1460 they were numerous and needy in Lisbon, Palos, Antwerp and London. Why this change? Let us see.

The Restless Westward Drive

You know how white settlers in America gradually pushed the Indians westward? Something like that happened in the Old World before Columbus' day. The people of Western Europe were pushed toward the Atlantic by crowding hordes from Asia. The Westward urge began in China. A great military leader, Genghis Kahn, organized the Mongols into an army that conquered the eastern provinces of China. Under his grandson, Kublai Kahn, this Mongol Empire spread westward to the Caspian Sea.

How Columbus Won the Support of Isabella



After Columbus had been refused a hearing several times and referred to councils which always reported unfavorably upon his scheme, Queen Isabella of Castile finally summoned him to her presence. Here he is talking, with all his eloquence and enthusiasm, of the land he will reach by sailing west. The wise men of the realm are there to listen to him, and a few ladies-in-waiting attend the queen. A scribe or notary is beside Columbus to take down in correct legal fashion his promises and demands, as well as the terms of any agreement that may be made between him and Isabella. Isabella was sole ruler of Castile and Leon, and the wife of King Ferdinand of Aragon, and she was a wise monarch.

See how she has leaned forward, she is so interested, and how thoughtfully she is listening to the glowing words of Columbus. If this strange man really can reach the East Indies by sailing west, what a wealth of trade will pour into her dominions! And there will be new lands to conquer, heathen to convert to Christianity and untold wealth for Spain if what Columbus says is true.

The painter of this picture shows Isabella's jewels being brought and laid out upon the table, to furnish money for the expedition—in accordance with the old story of how she raised the necessary funds. But this story has been proved a mistake. Isabella did not pawn her jewels for Columbus—though she was so eager to help him that she would willingly have done so. Part of her jewels had already been pawned to wage war against the Moors, but as that war proved successful, she was well supplied with money at this time.

The first effect of this was to enrich Venice and Genoa, for Kublai Kahn encouraged trade and travel. Italian princes and merchants took service under him and visited the courts of China and of India. One of these travelers, Marco Polo, wrote such glowing accounts of the wealth and splendor of the East that a kind of fever to see those strange lands and fairy courts ran like an epidemic over Europe.

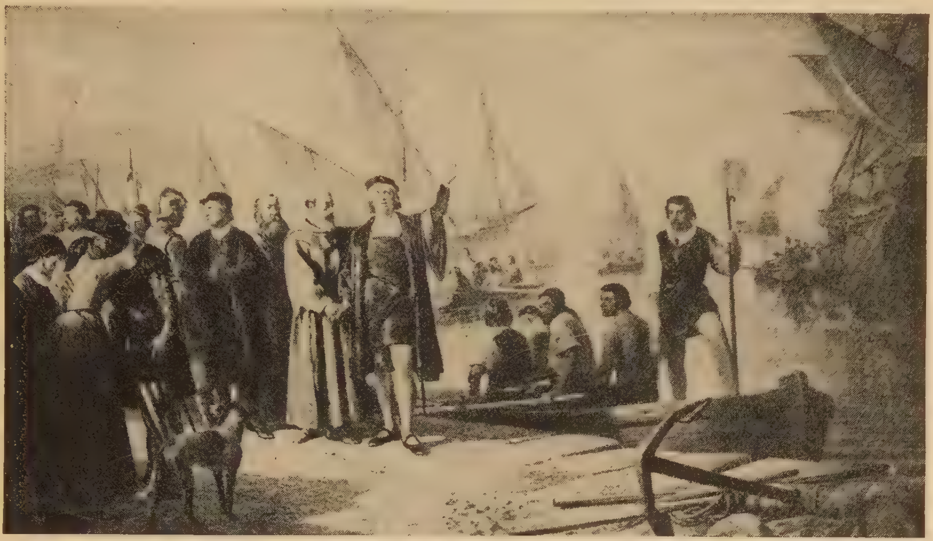
Decay of Venice and Genoa

Then something else happened. In pushing his empire westward, Kublai Kahn had to push the Ottoman Turks before him into Asia Minor. These fanatic Mohammedans, enemies of all Christian people, then crossed the Dardanelles into Europe, and after a hundred years captured Constantinople. The trade routes to the East were suddenly closed by Turkish fleets and armies. The ships of Venice and Genoa returned to their docks, many to rot, some to creep timidly out through the Strait of Gibraltar to trade with London and Antwerp. While Greek scholars and artists swarmed into Italy, to add to its learning and build up its arts, Italian merchants, bankers and seamen sought opportunity and employment in every country facing the Atlantic.

The "New Birth" of Europe

This period was, indeed, such an amazing time of intellectual expansion that it was called the Renais-

The Last Farewells at Palos



Just imagine that it is dawn on Friday, August 3, 1492. After long delays and difficulties, the 120 men and three little ships have been gotten together to embark on this mad voyage to the unknown ends of the earth. Everyone but Columbus has dark fears that the expedition never will return. That is why the women weep as they bid the men farewell, and that is why Prior Juan Perez looks sadly at the enthusiastic Columbus as he says good bye. The Prior was a warm friend of Columbus and helped him many times at court, where he had some influence with the queen, and in getting the much needed ships and sailors in Palos, from which the expedition started. The three vessels are riding at anchor in the harbor of Palos on the broad bosom of the red-brown Tinto. The oarsmen are ready to push off, and the Pinzon brothers, captains of the Nina and Pinta, are saying goodbye to their families. The men have all spent long hours in the church every day for weeks, praying and asking forgiveness for their sins. The first ebb tide of the day will soon carry them out to sea and they will sail westward into the unknown, uncharted Atlantic.

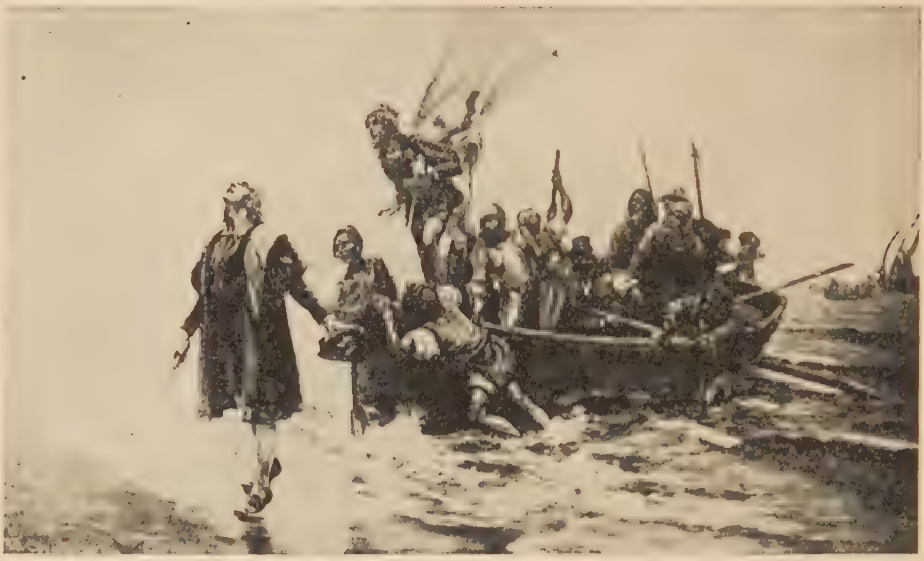
The short tunic, long tight hose, and small velvet cap which Columbus wears were much in use at that time. Notice that he wears his sword hung loosely from his belt on the left side. The little boy clinging to his father, Martin Pinzon, wears striped hose. Sometimes these stripes only ran down one leg, while the other one was a solid color. The Prior, you see, is not clean shaven as the priests of today are, but his clothing is much the same in style.

sance or "new birth" of Europe. With the invention of printing there was a revival of literature. And that was followed by the Reformation or religious upheaval in Northern countries, and by a freeing of the spirit in exploration and discovery. All the powers of men were quickened, their vision enlarged. Great events trod on each other's heels. As Venice and Genoa declined, the fleets of five nations—Portugal, Spain, England, The Netherlands and France—rose in size and power and navigated all the uncharted oceans. Disunited Italy's skilled seamen won empire and glory for every land but their own.

The Rise of Portugal

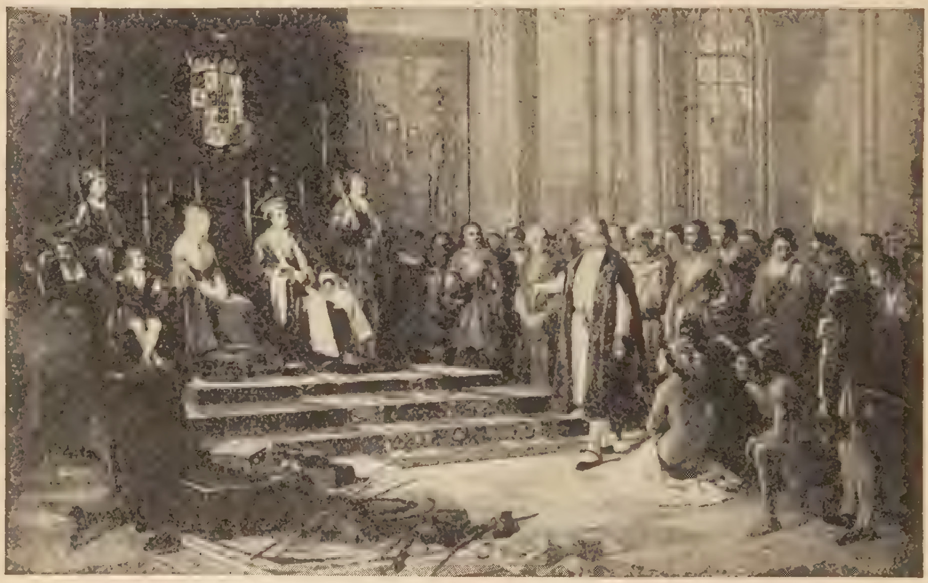
Columbus went first to Portugal One of the smallest and poorest countries of Europe, it had taken the leadership on the sea. Early in the century, Prince Henry had set up a school of navigation and naval design. Religion was his motive. For hundreds of years Spain and Portugal had been overrun by the Moors or Saracens of Morocco. To carry the war into Africa, and prevent the return of the Moslem hordes, Portugal built a fleet and opened the Strait of Gibraltar. Then, growing bold, the Madeiras, Canaries, Cape Verde Islands and the Azores were discovered and set-

Columbus Lands in the New World



Columbus has just set his foot on the shores of the little island which he named San Salvador. He is richly clad in honor of the occasion and is accompanied by the brothers Pinzon, bearing the banner of the green cross, and by most of his crew. According to the old account of the event, they all gave thanks to God, kneeling upon the shore and kissed the ground with tears of joy for the great mercy received. Columbus then named the island, San Salvador, and took possession of it for Ferdinand and Isabella.

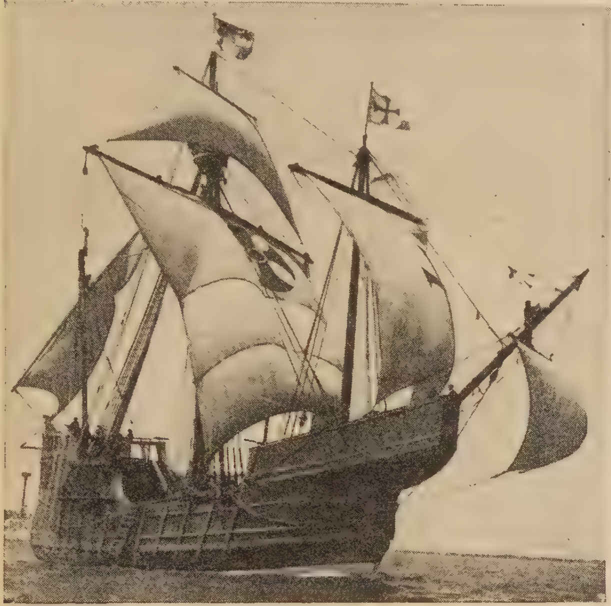
Columbus Telling of His Discovery



When Columbus returned successful from the voyage which everyone had prophesied would end in ruin, he was loaded with honors and wealth. Here we see him being received in state by Ferdinand and Isabella, who are listening with interest to the story of his adventures. He has brought gold and many implements of Indian manufacture, as well as some of the Indians themselves, to prove the truth of his story. The whole court is gathered here, in one of the big audience halls of the palace at Barcelona, to hear Columbus' account of his discovery.

tled, and Portuguese navigators began to creep down the African coast to lands of dates, ivory and gold. Hearing of the spices of islands far to the east, the Portuguese started for "the bottom of the world." In 1486, six years before Columbus' expedition, they reached the Cape of Good Hope. Then Vasco da Gama sailed around the Cape to India in 1497.

The Santa Maria and How She Sailed



© *Underwood & Underwood*

The famous little vessel of Columbus, the Santa Maria, may be said to have "discovered" America twice; once when it carried Columbus and again in 1893. As part of the celebration of the 400th Anniversary of the first voyage of Columbus, an exact copy of the Santa Maria was built in Spain and sailed across the Atlantic and through the great lakes to Chicago where, moored on the shore at Jackson Park, it was one of the most interesting historic exhibits at the great World's Fair. The trip was made in 36 days, about half the time taken for the voyage of Columbus, but the experienced sailors who made up the crew said that it pitched horribly.

In studying this little vessel, one of the first things that strike us is that it stands so high out of the water and that the masts are so tall for the length of the vessel. This is because the more surface a vessel offers to the wind the faster it will travel—provided, of course, it doesn't capsize. It was necessary to make the masts so high in order to carry the huge sails. That great, high projection at the bow is the forecastle. Almost all of the medieval vessels were built on this plan because all vessels were battleships in those days, liable to be attacked at any moment and this high forecastle furnished a convenient place for men to gather in attacking an enemy vessel. The foresail bears the papal cross and the mainsail the Maltese cross, while the papal cross and the Spanish flag fly from the masts.

This explains why Columbus failed to get a hearing in Lisbon. Portugal was already putting all her resources into developing a much safer and more promising line of exploration, mission work and trade. His appeal failed in England. Lying far off on the northwestern corner of Europe, neither king nor country had yet awakened to what was going on. Besides, the English had only small coastwise and fishing boats. The city of Bristol, however, did build a ship to be manned by a crew of nineteen, for John Cabot, an Italian navigator who had settled in that seaport town. He, too, sailed in 1497. So it happened that three explorers, sailing south, west and northwest, all seeking the same thing—a sea route to the Far East—were on the Atlantic at the same time.

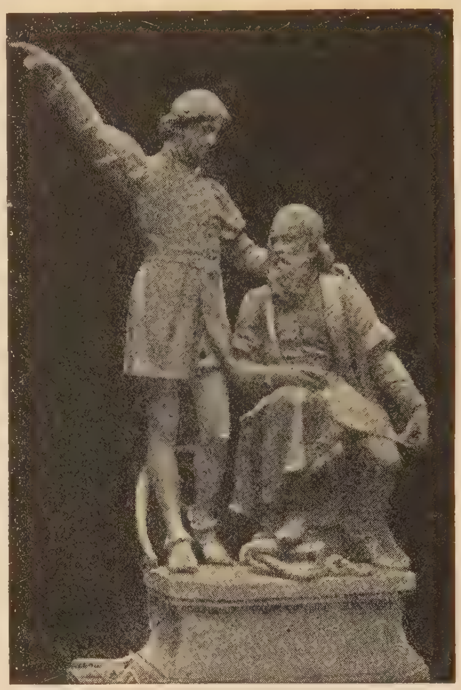
Dividing Up the Big Apple

To Portugal and Spain came the good luck. Da Gama brought back a cargo from India that made Lisbon rich, and Columbus opened the way to lands of gold to fill the empty treasury of Spain. John Cabot discovered only the bleak shores of Labrador, with its icebergs, polar bears, codfish and eider ducks. His voyage created no desire in England for further exploration. His story was little known for the next sixty years and, after one more voyage, his neglected son Sebastian sought employment in Spain. Besides, all exploration of other nations was forbidden, when the Pope divided the unknown world between Spain and Portugal.

Nothing Left for Others

The English were still loyal to the Church of Rome and would not disobey the Pope. The French were good Catholics, too, but the King of France had the spirit to protest against this unfairness, and to send the Norman fishing fleets of St. Malo to the banks of Newfoundland, where Cabot's ship had plowed through oceans of cod. In 1523 he boldly sent an Italian navigator, Verrazano, on an exploring expedition. He waylaid a Spanish treasure ship and explored 2,000 miles of our northeastern coast. Then he was captured and put to death as a pirate. Violent death, disgrace or neglect, was the fate of most of the explorers of all nations in America. Many, indeed, were pirates; and most ships were traders, armed naval vessels and privateers in one. In this wild and lawless time the destiny of nations was decided on the oceans of the world.

France was distracted from further adventures for one hundred years, but stuck to her sober business of bringing fish home from the Grand Banks of Newfoundland for her Friday dinner. But not England. Seeing a profitable business and plenty of adventure in buccaneering, they built swift ships with high forecastles, clouds of sails and long-range cannon and



The idea of sailing west in order to reach the East Indies seems to have occurred to John Cabot about the same time it did to Columbus. And the man who gave England her claim to North America was like Columbus in another respect; he was by birth a Genoese. He moved to England in order to interest the English merchants and king in his project. With the help of Henry VII he made two trips to America and planted the English flag on Canadian soil, thus giving England a claim to the New World which was of great value to her in later years.

Very little is known about the life of John Cabot. He and his son Sebastian are always mentioned together, while Sebastian's other two brothers do not seem to have been so closely associated with their father. Sebastian was a young man in his twenty's at the time of his father's first voyage to America, and probably went with him, though it is not known definitely. After his father's death he led an expedition of his own to South America and achieved considerable fame as a navigator and map-maker. The statue here shows him as a young man, scarcely more than a boy, lovingly pointing out the way to his old father. We can imagine that the Cabots are on their first voyage to America and that Sebastian is enthusiastically urging a venturesome trip into some unexplored river mouth, which the elder Cabot is fearful to undertake. His father is studying the map and thinking over the suggestion with the cautiousness of age.

sailed out, alike to explore and to raid the Spanish treasure ships. It was these explorers and pirates, who, in the sixteenth century, opened the sea to England and secured for her the discoveries of the Cabots.

Spain's Undeserved Good Fortune

But in the main, the story of the sixteenth century in America belongs to Spain, although she did little to deserve her good fortune. Unlike little Portugal, she had no interest in the science of navigation, and gave Columbus only a half-hearted hearing, deluding him with false promises. There is nothing more tragic in history than the figure of this poor, discredited genius. A beggar at indifferent courts at fifty-five, ridiculed, gray, broken-hearted, we see him leading his motherless son, Diego, across the lovely landscape of Andalusia, to the monastery of La Rabida to beg the good brothers for food and shelter. And no situation in melodrama seems more wildly improbable than that he should find there a father confessor to Queen Isabella.

The Navigator and the Dreamers

Columbus got another hearing because the royal treasury was depleted from long religious war against the Mohammedan Moors of Granada in Southern Spain. There was money in the India trade, but Portugal had the route about the Cape of Good Hope all but completed, and would not share it. There was hope only in the West. The Spaniards believed ardently in old legends of fabled islands and cities in the sea, in mountains of gold and fountains of youth. So the great navigator got his ships and sailed from Palos, Spain. His greatness lay, not in the fact that he discovered America, for he died in ignorance that he had found a new continent, but in his vision and daring in sailing westward at all.

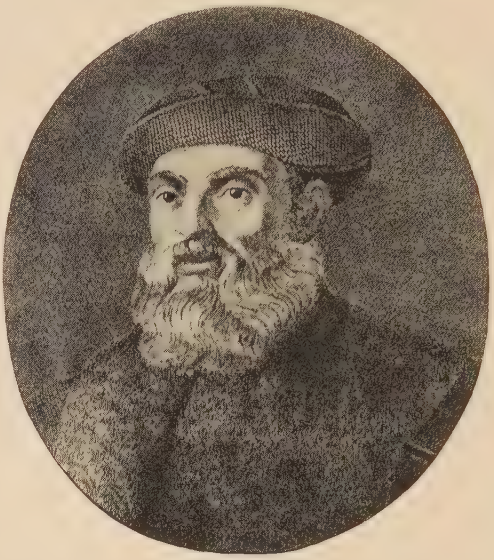
Other Spanish explorers had only to follow in his path. By 1525 they had explored the coast from Florida around to California, and penetrated the heart of the continents, working westward from Florida and north and south from Mexico. The cross went with the sword into every wilderness they trod. Magellan, a Portuguese in the service of Spain first circumnavigated the globe, and for quite two hundred years Spanish treasure fleets, convoyed by ships of war, plowed the seas.

England's Collision with Spain

But they were not left unmolested. America was too big for one nation to occupy, the oceans too vast to be defended. The geographical situation of Spain had given the Spaniards the best route, in that day of sailing vessels, in the path of the trade-winds along the Tropic of Cancer, and the lands of gold in the American tropics. Above the Carolinas on the eastern coast their ships never cruised, and all the North Atlantic was left unguarded. Quite unmolested by them, the Norman French, descendants of the old Norse Vikings, fished in ever-growing numbers on the Grand Banks of Newfoundland and even followed schools of whales into the St. Lawrence. And the Spaniards used their flood of gold from Mexico to wage war on the Protestant Netherlands, and to threaten England with naval fleets. When the English broke with the Pope and set up a church of their own, Spain, as defender of the Roman faith, undertook to punish them.

England was too small and poor to make open war on Spain, but her rulers aided and abetted venturesome men in building and arming the biggest and swiftest vessels on the ocean. With all sails spread, these men of Bristol and Plymouth braved the fogs, storms and cross-currents of the North Atlantic, and swooped down like hawks on the Spanish treasure fleets. Many seamen left commerce and fishing to engage in this profitable and patriotic business of piracy. The British bred as bold, picturesque and successful buccaneers and slave-traders as ever sailed the seas. As early as 1563, Sir John Hawkins invaded the Portuguese regions of East Africa, sold Negroes in the West Indies, and brought American Indians to London. Sir Francis Drake was bolder, sinking whole fleets, and burning towns and robbing the mule pack-trains on the Isthmus of Panama. From a peak there Drake had glimpsed the Pacific—blue, peaceful, shimmering—that had thrilled the Spaniard, Balboa, half a century before, and vowed to God that he would make a "perfect discovery" of that great ocean. In 1580 he returned from his voyage around the world. Some historians call him the British Puck. He had put a girdle around the earth. The first of all English heroes of the sea, he helped to make it possible to lay claim to the lands discovered nearly a hundred years before by the Cabots, now remembered and honored, and to plant English colonies on the North Atlantic seaboard.

The Good Qualities of Magellan

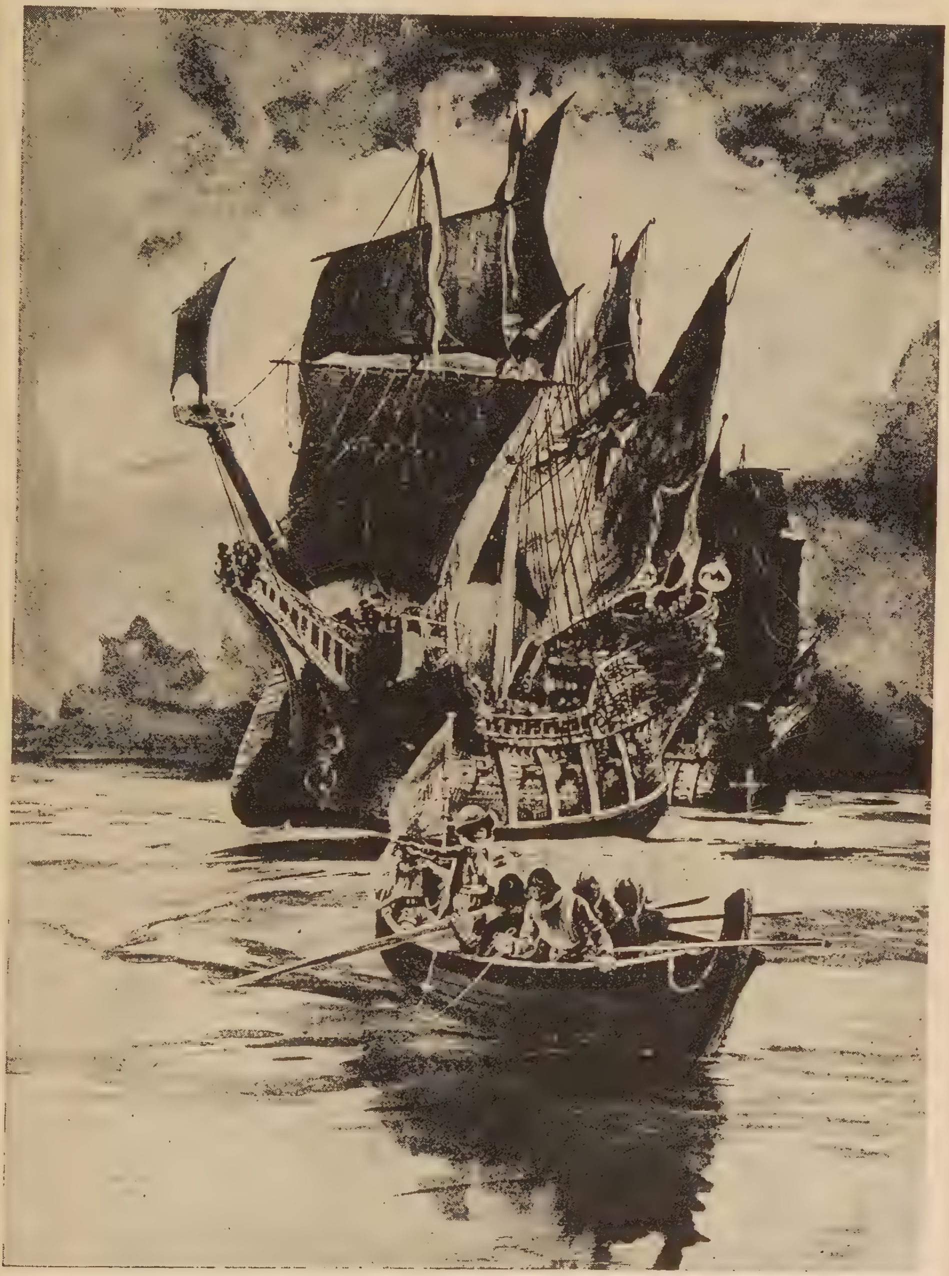


Does this look like a man of stubborn will, great courage and (for his age) a humane disposition? He was all these things, for this is Ferdinand Magellan, one of the world's most daring explorers. He was born a mountaineer, far away from ships and the sea, but he was of noble descent and went as a page to the court of the king when he was only a boy. There he heard the wonderful reports of the great navigators of that age of discovery as they returned from the far ends of the earth. Fired with the zeal to equal their exploits, he embarked upon an expedition around the Cape of Good Hope to the East Indies. Magellan was a small, homely man, with irregular features and an awkward appearance, but his will was tremendous and his mind clear and active. In the midst of the fierce storms and hardships of the passage through the strait that bears his name, Magellan's men besought him to go no farther. He replied, "I will press on if we have to eat the leather of the rigging." And his statement was proved to be literally true, for in the midst of the vast Pacific, when the biscuit had become a mass of wormy powder and the drinking water was so foul that the sailors had to hold their noses in drinking it, they did cut off pieces of the leather rigging, soak them in sea water to soften them and broiled them over the coals.

Unlike most of the explorers for Spain, he was so humane to the natives whom he encountered on the voyage that his men complained because his gentleness didn't give them enough amusement; nor could he be prevailed upon to turn aside from his purpose to look for gold or treasure. He did not live to complete the circumnavigation of the earth, as he was slain by natives in the Philippine Islands in 1521.

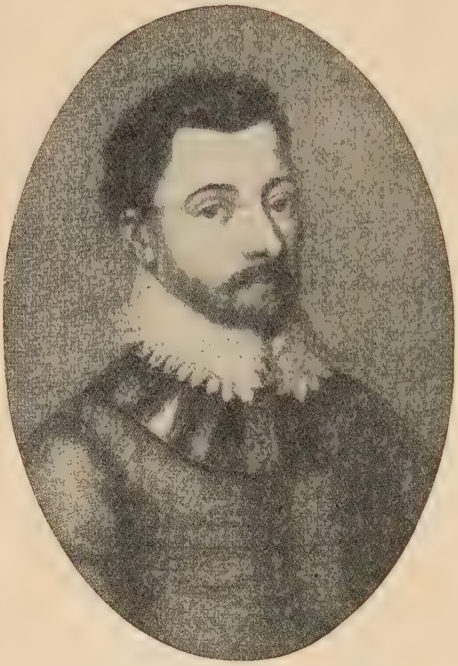
Francis Drake was the last and best of a brave and patriotic breed of men who won for England her place on the sea. Before he died on shipboard in the West Indies, the courtly Oxford student, Walter Raleigh, appeared, won the

Magellan Passing Through the Straits



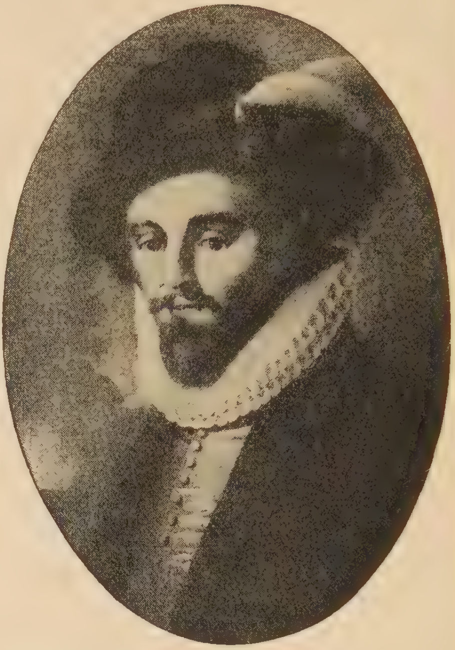
This picture gives you a good idea of how the vessels of Magellan must have looked when they sailed through the straits which bear his name, as the details of the kind of ships in which he is known to have sailed are very carefully worked out. It was considered quite an achievement for the United States to send a fleet of great war vessels through these straits, under Admiral Evans a number of years ago. But several of the battleships of this fleet were of 16,000 tons of burden, while none of Magellan's were more than 130 tons and some were only 60 tons.

Raleigh and "The Drake"



The Terror of the Spanish

Sir Francis Drake's character is easily read in this portrait of him. Not so much the gentleman and courtier as Raleigh, his large eyes look boldly at you, his chin is square and firm. There is not a weak line about his face. And he needed all that boldness and strength in his long voyage around the world, for making such a trip, with the small sailing vessels then in use, and a rich, powerful enemy like Spain to combat, was a very brave thing indeed. But it is to Drake and the men like him that England owes her sea power today, for they broke Spain's cruel rule in the New World and swept her haughty merchantmen off the seas. So greatly did the Spanish fear him that when the great Spanish Armada was sent against the English fleet and its commander, found that the vessel attacking his own ship was commanded by Drake, he struck his colors at once, not even attempting resistance against the gallant Englishman.



Raleigh, the Courtier, in His Gallant Dress

Sir Walter Raleigh lived in a romantic age of stirring events and took no small part in the shaping of those events. As a youth he had his own fortune to make and, being of an adventurous disposition, he went to court. You all know the story of how, when his clothes represented "a considerable part of his estate," he threw his cloak across a puddle so that the queen might not soil her shoes. It was by such acts as this, and by the charm of his handsome face, strong, tall figure, and ready wit in flattery and verse-making that he won the queen's favor. Raleigh was a court dandy and a very fine gentleman indeed, as well as a writer and explorer, so he was dressed in the very latest fashion you may be sure. What do you think of his collar? The ruff had at that time only recently come into fashion. It began to be used in the first half of the sixteenth century as a little cambric collar with a fancy edge.

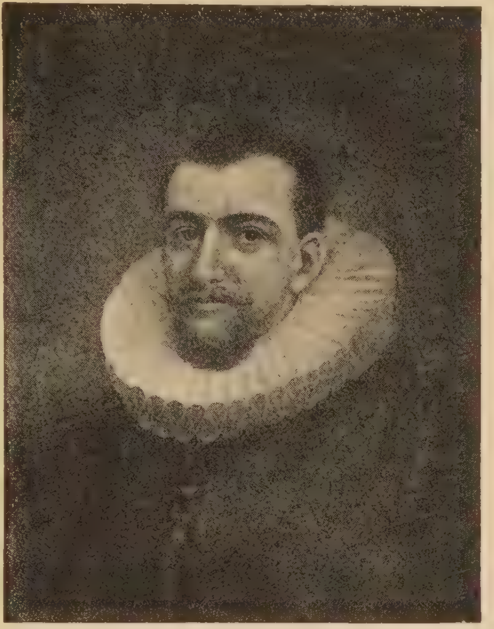
fickle favor of Queen Elizabeth, explored, named and claimed for England the coast of Virginia, and left a company of ill-fated colonists on Roanoke Island. He and his dream of colonization were brief, for he was overtaken by the tragic end that awaited most explorers. After fifteen years of unjust imprisonment, he was executed on a charge of treason in 1618. He was soon forgotten, for London, Paris and Antwerp were thinking of little but finding the northwest passage to China for which the Cabots had searched as far as Hudson's Bay. Portugal held the route around Africa, and Magellan and Drake had proved the length and perils of the voyage around South America. Both were too long for northern countries. England, France and Holland turned their eyes and hopes northwestward.

Wonderful Story of the Dutch

The Dutch had fairly won their right to a share in the exploration of the New World and of trade in the Far East. A smaller country even than Portugal had been, though enriched by industry and trade, only 800,000 sturdy people dwelt on the sterile sands behind the dykes of Holland on the North Sea. There they had fought their long wars for political and religious liberty against the armies of Spain. In the days of English privateering they decided that their enemy was to be defeated only on the sea. Declaring honorable war, the Dutch, too, raided the treasure ships and brought home gold to pay and feed their little armies. When able to hold their own on the sea the Dutch stoutly disputed the division of the world and started out definitely to find a route of their own.

What this little nation did in the last quarter of the sixteenth century is altogether incredible. The Dutch first sent ships northeast, trying to round Norway and Russia. Some of their ship-wrecked crews spent winters on Nova Zembla and Spitzbergen. Shakespeare speaks of these earliest of arctic explorers in his reference to "icicles hanging on a Dutchman's beard." They cared little for ice, storm or fog, but they were not reckless. When, in Archangel, Russia, they heard of the bitter, endless leagues of Siberia stretching southward around the North Pole, they very sensibly turned back.

A "Type" Picture of Henry Hudson



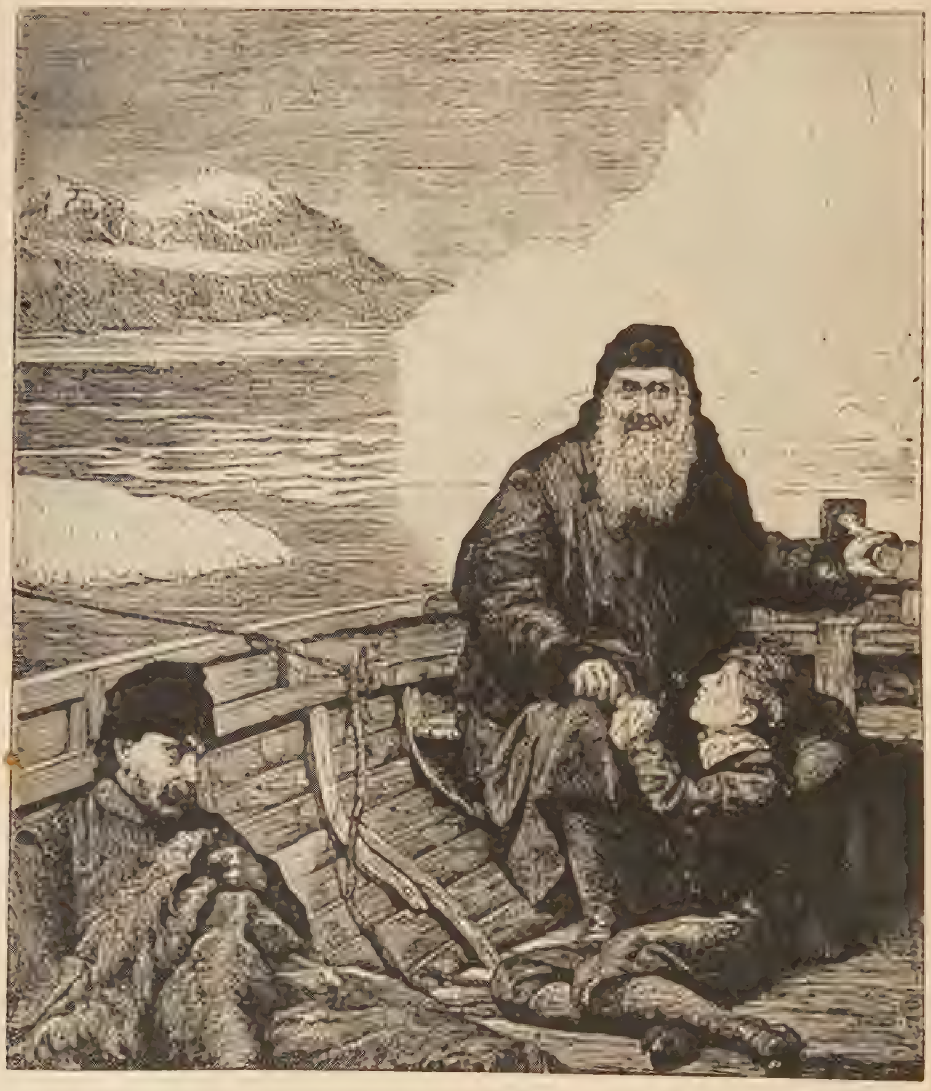
This is not a true picture of Henry Hudson, for, so far as we know, that brave explorer never had his portrait painted. It is the picture of some unknown man who probably resembled Hudson, and so the picture came to be called a portrait of Henry Hudson and as such has come down to us. Hudson's name is written a good many times on the map of our continent, though he didn't actually discover the regions that are named for him. He and Champlain both proved about the same time that there is no short route to China across North America, and Hudson's voyages were the beginning of the great fisheries and other trade with the New World.

Next they tried the southern route. Fighting the Portuguese, tropic storms, the ship diseases of long voyages, and the natives of Java, they brought back cargoes of spices. The orange, white and blue flag of the Dutch Republic was on every sea.

What Hudson Did for the Dutch

Not contented with these achievements, they rivaled England and France in efforts to find the Northwest Passage, offering a prize and honors to any navigator of any nation who would discover it. This attracted the attention of an Englishman, Henry Hudson, who entered the Dutch service, and sailed westward in the Half-Moon. This was in

Henry Hudson's Last Voyage



Hudson's fourth voyage of exploration, in the service of England, took him into what is now Hudson Bay, where his little vessel, the "Discovery," was frozen in during the winter. When the ice broke up in the spring the ship's provisions were so low that it seemed that all aboard must starve. The men were sick and rebellious, and of course they blamed Henry Hudson for the sufferings they were undergoing. He was still eager to press on in the hope of finding a passage to Asia, but the crew took matters into their own hands. They set him adrift, with eight of the sickest of their number, in a small, open boat, while they made all possible speed back to England. Here you see Hudson, comforting his small son, who is too sick and weak to sit up alone, and at the same time guiding the rudder of the little boat so that it won't be crushed to pieces by the great ice floes of Hudson Bay. One of the sick men is crouching under a fur robe in the foreground. Notice the clear, sad eyes the artist has given the old explorer; he is doing his feeble best to prevent their destruction, though he can see nothing ahead but death from cold and hunger.

The faithless crew of the "Discovery" fared but little better than the captain whom they deserted. Several of them were killed in a battle with the Eskimos, others died of starvation on the return voyage, and the few who reached England were thrown into prison for their crime.

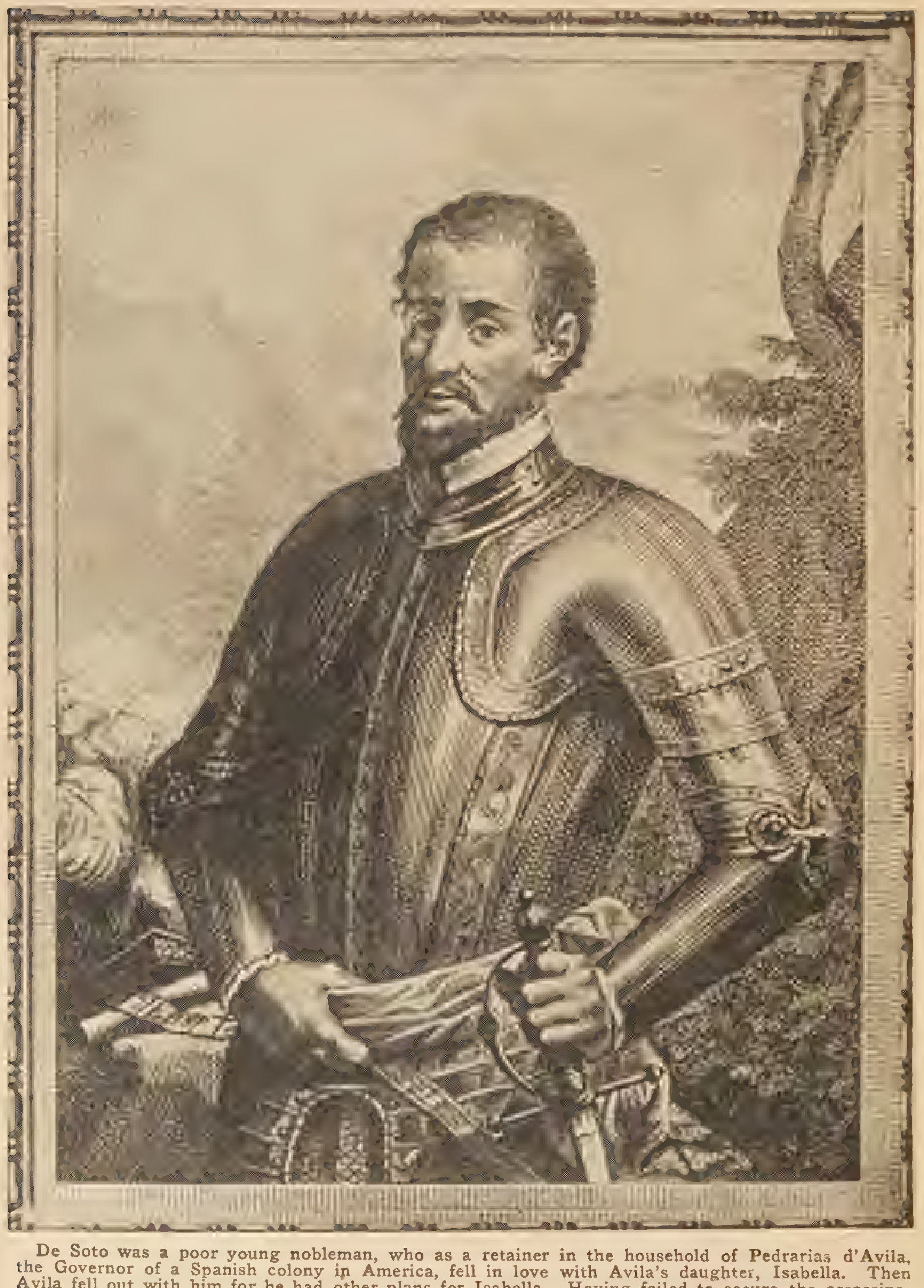
1609, one hundred and seventeen years after Columbus sailed from Palos, Spain.

The exploration of America was far from being finished, but a new era had opened. In 1600 neither England, France nor Holland held a foot of soil in the Western Hemisphere. With the exception of Brazil, which Portugal held, Spain claimed both continents and was in actual possession of two-thirds of the land. But Northern Europe was determined, if not united. A small colony was established by the English at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607. In 1609, Champlain entered the St. Lawrence River and planted the golden lilies of France at Montreal; Henry Hudson sailed up the Hudson River for the Dutch, and an Englishman, Captain John Smith, explored the coast of New England. All of these explorers were searching for the Northwest Passage to China. Not one of them dreamed of the extent or riches of the continent, whose water gates they had entered, or that a new age of colonization had opened.

How Columbus Landed at Taunton

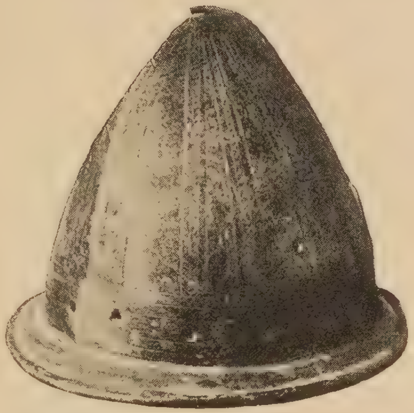
The school children of Taunton, Mass., gave a pageant in which they acted out the landing of Columbus. Here we see Columbus approaching the new shore, welcomed by a wondering Indian. He landed, you know, "richly clad and bearing a royal banner of Spain, on Watling Island, called by him Saint Salvador." Notice the "F. Y." on the banner. This stands for Ferdinand and Isabella, for in Spanish, Queen Isabella's name began with a "Y."

De Soto and His Romance



De Soto was a poor young nobleman, who as a retainer in the household of Pedrarias d'Avila, the Governor of a Spanish colony in America, fell in love with Avila's daughter, Isabella. Then Avila fell out with him for he had other plans for Isabella. Having failed to secure the assassination of De Soto he readily consented to his coming to America in the hope that he would be killed or disgraced in the fierce struggles for wealth in the new country. But, instead, as we know, De Soto won fame and fortune in the New World. Isabella waited for him faithfully and when he returned to Spain, fifteen long years afterward—Avila, in the meantime having died—they were married and lived happily in Seville for two years, when De Soto embarked on the expedition for which he is chiefly noted and which cost him his life.

The Spanish Gold Seekers and Their Rule of Ruin



The Spanish Soldier's Iron Hat and Its Air Holes

When Cortez led his little force against the great Aztec citadel, he defeated the Aztecs but sacrificed most of his own men. This helmet was lost by one of the Spanish soldiers who died there and was found many years afterward. It is not one of the headpieces worn by mounted knights in full armor, as you see, but probably belonged to a foot soldier who was either a gunner or archer. It is hardly more than a peaked iron hat but it was a good deal of protection to the soldier's head against the heavy wooden or stone weapons of the Indians. Foot soldiers did not wear full suits of mail at any time during the Middle Ages when armor was worn, for it was too heavy for a long march or for quick movement on foot, and it was too costly for a poor man to buy and keep in repair. During the long marches in the hot sun and over the Mexican mountains, the soldiers of Cortez wore no more armor than was absolutely necessary, you may be sure, because it was so uncomfortable. The holes were for ventilation. Imagine wearing a hat like this in the broiling sun!

How Spain Won Wealth and Ruin

NO time in the history of the human race furnishes a more interesting and instructive study than that of the colonization of America by Spain, France and England. Here, on a continental scale, is illustrated the fact that the destiny of a nation is determined less by its outer circumstances than by the character and ideals of its people. In the settlement of America, Spain had all the advantages of time, location and natural wealth. She preceded France and England in the New World by a century, had the most favorable trade route, and found gold and silver with which to develop her possessions in the rich American tropics. It is true that she came in contact with, and was opposed by the two most civilized and highly organized of Indian nations—the Aztecs of Mexico and the Incas of Peru — but she was equipped to conquer them speedily and had no long, harassing Indian wars. So one might reasonably expect to find Spanish colonies the most flourishing and progressive. The reverse is true. They sank steadily into poverty, disorder and ruin as the English colonies rose to prosperity, responsibility and freedom.

Presently we shall discover that American colonies failed or succeeded according to the worth of the ideas upon which they were founded. The Spaniards were gold seekers, caring nothing for the lands of their discovery, except what they could take out of them. The French were adventurers, missionaries and conscious empire builders, the success of their plans depending upon the intelligent co-operation of the mother country, which was not always given. The English alone were self-reliant, home builders and defenders. They depended on themselves.

Greek and Roman Ideas of Colonization

We must remember that to the peoples of Europe of that day, emigration was an experiment. Since the fall of the Roman Empire there had been few large movements of the population, or undeveloped lands open to settlement. So all their ideas of colonies were got from the histories of ancient Greece and Rome. The Greek colony was founded by a band of voluntary exiles like the Pilgrims of the Mayflower. A brave little company of families departed from their old home, taking seeds, tools and cattle with them. They expected to make a living by their own labor, and to govern and defend themselves. Loyal citizens of Greece, they were ever ready to fight for their parent city, and to her they looked, with a confidence that was seldom abused, for help and protection. On this ideal, a wide community of rich farming lands and commercial cities spread around the islands and shores of the eastern Mediterranean Sea and flourished for a thousand years.

The Loyal Greek Colonists

The Roman Empire was built up by conquest. Conquering her colonies by the sword, she held them with garrisons of soldiers, but only until lands could be allotted to Roman citizens, who emigrated with their families. The Roman colony was not self-governing. It was always ruled by appointment from the capital. In the settlement of America this Roman idea of centralized power was held by every court of Europe. The new lands were the property of the Crown, to be given or withheld at the pleasure of the king, and it was his right to appoint the governor. But while this theory of the colony was held in all countries, the practical workings of it differed widely.

How Europe Copied Rome

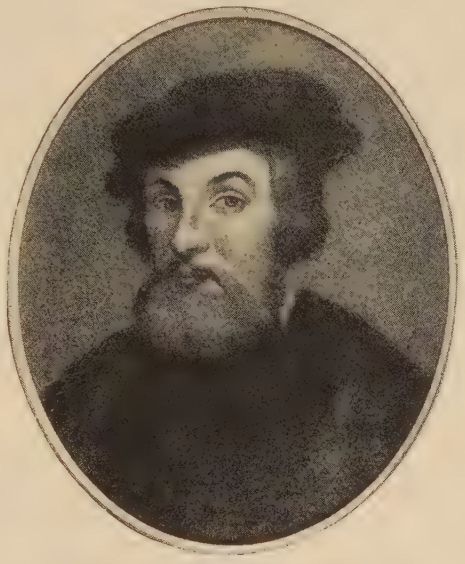
In England, where there was a measure of political liberty and a surplus of industrious, independent people, emigration was encouraged, and some colonies were granted charters to govern themselves. Only ill-advised monarchs interfered much with colonial liberties or imposed unpopular governors or unjust taxes. Thus the English colony was a mixture of the Greek and Roman. It was protected and fostered, and at the same time learned to be self-reliant. The French colony was purely Roman, but lacked strength and definite policy. The Spanish colony was the conquered Roman province at its worst. Captured and ruled by the sword, it was held for three centuries by an army of occupation, while it was systematically parceled out, robbed and oppressed. It existed for no people, but solely to fill the king's treasury. The only redeeming feature was the devotion and self-sacrifice of the missionary monks whose ruined mission villages still dot the landscape of our southwest.

How the English Differed

Spanish Men and Methods

Now the early Spanish explorers should be given due credit for their heroism and very great discoveries. They braved dangers and endured hardships such as no English and few French ever faced. And they were not all plumed, mailed and mounted knights, like Cortez in Mexico, and Pizarro in Peru, leading victorious armies into treasure-filled capitals. Lured on by the hopes of rich rewards from the king, or by phantoms and fables of lands of gold and fountains of youth, they were cruel and relentless, but they failed miserably as often as they succeeded. Graybearded grandees of old Aragon and Castile were captured and tortured by savage tribes. They sank in the poisonous swamps of Florida, and found graves in the tawny flood of the Mississippi. We see them afoot and dying of thirst in the cactus desert of Arizona, freezing in the eternal snows of the Andes, and stung to death in the venomous jungles of Panama, which they opened for their treasure-laden pack trains.

The Conqueror of Mexico



At sixteen, Hernando Cortez chose a life of adventure as his career. He went to Cuba and from there he led an expedition to explore Mexico. The stories of the wealth and power of the Aztec emperors made him determined to conquer them, so he burned the ships which brought his force, in order to teach his soldiers that they must conquer or die. By his cunning and his bravery he succeeded in subduing the whole of Mexico for Spain, though his rule was one long tale of torture and oppression. Great wealth and honor were his for a time, but he died disappointed and neglected by the king whose territory he had so greatly increased.

It is because of such men as these that Spain was able to explore and occupy all of South America (except Brazil), Central America, Mexico, the southern third of the United States, and the larger islands of the West Indies, within thirty-five years after the first voyage of Columbus. But when the lands were secured, and these early actors were off the stage, Spain ceased to explore, and spent all her energies in establishing strong military rule, and in draining her American colonies dry.

Plunder of the Treasuries

The rapidity and extent of the Spanish conquest is explained by the fact that the precious metals, in varying quantities, mined and unmined, were found nearly everywhere; and each new colony, without help from Spain, furnished the wealth to conquer the next. The island of Hispaniola (Hayti) where Columbus built his first fort of the timber from one of his wrecked ships, alone furnished $2,000,000 of gold. Cuba outfitted ships to explore Florida and conquer Mexico. Mexico, in turn, sent fleets to Panama and the Philippines, and Panama furnished men and ships for the expedition against the Incas of Peru. Mexico and Peru poured rivers of silver and brooks of gold across Panama and the Atlantic into the Spanish treasury.

Long before France and England had any foothold on the continent, Spain had built fortified cities at Havana, St. Augustine, Florida. Vera Cruz, Mexico, and Panama, and had erected forts, garrisons, prisons, governors' palaces, cathedrals and monasteries in numerous seaports and colonial capitals. Before the middle of the sixteenth century, she had set up nine widely scattered governments, in Perù, Argentina, Chili, New Granada (now Colombia and Panama), Venezuela, Guatemala, Yucatan, Mexico and Cuba, under viceroys or captains-general, and had complete control of well-established trade routes.

Cortez in His Iron "Dress Suit"

In the sixteenth century when Cortez and the other Spanish explorers were making their conquests in America, armor had almost outlived its usefulness. But it was still worn on state occasions as a sort of full dress. The portrait opposite shows Cortez in a very handsome suit of dress armor. The ornamental armor of Cortez' day was of thin steel plates inlaid with gold and silver, trimmed with those ridges and engraved in various designs. The short skirt of old-fashioned chain mail which Cortez wears, came into use in the latter part of the fifteenth century. Over this are the tuilles, a series of jointed plates that look like hip pads and swing as the warrior walks. The breastplate of this suit is beautifully decorated, and you can see the origin of the modern epaulets worn on officers' uniforms, in the heavily ornamented shoulder plates. The succession of band-like plates on the upper arm, at the elbow and around the neck, allowed the poor overloaded knight some freedom of movement. Cortez' helmet does not protect his face as the earlier and more useful helmets did. Its great crest of feathers is in keeping with the gorgeousness of his armor, and no fully armed knight would have been ready for battle without his steel gauntlets, like those lying on the table beside Cortez.

Why don't we wear armor nowadays? It isn't altogether because bullets have taken the place of arrows and spears in warfare, though of course a knight's armor would not be proof against modern rifles. By the end of the sixteenth century, armies were no longer made up of steel-encased knights, fighting hand to hand, because the medieval custom of fighting in solid, immovable masses changed. Rulers began to organize armies that they could move rapidly from place to place for surprise attacks and quick raids into the enemy's territory. This required long marches and rapid transportation, something that was impossible for the cumbersome, heavily-armed knight who couldn't even get to his feet without help if he had the misfortune to fall down.

Spain's Only True Colony

In that time the Spanish planted only one true colony after the English pattern. This was at Santa Fe, New Mexico. This second oldest city in the United States was founded by an American-born Spanish-Mexican, Juan de Onate. Taking 200 soldiers, and as many colonists, men, women and children, with seeds, tools, cattle and sheep, and a band of missionaries, he built a self-sustaining town and the Church of San Gabriel in our mountain and desert country. Santa Fe is proof that the Spaniards might have been useful colonists had the right classes been permitted to emigrate, and had they not been corrupted by finding too much "easy money." This colony was the model of the later mission towns of California. Nominally they were under Mexico, but in reality were too far away to be interfered with.

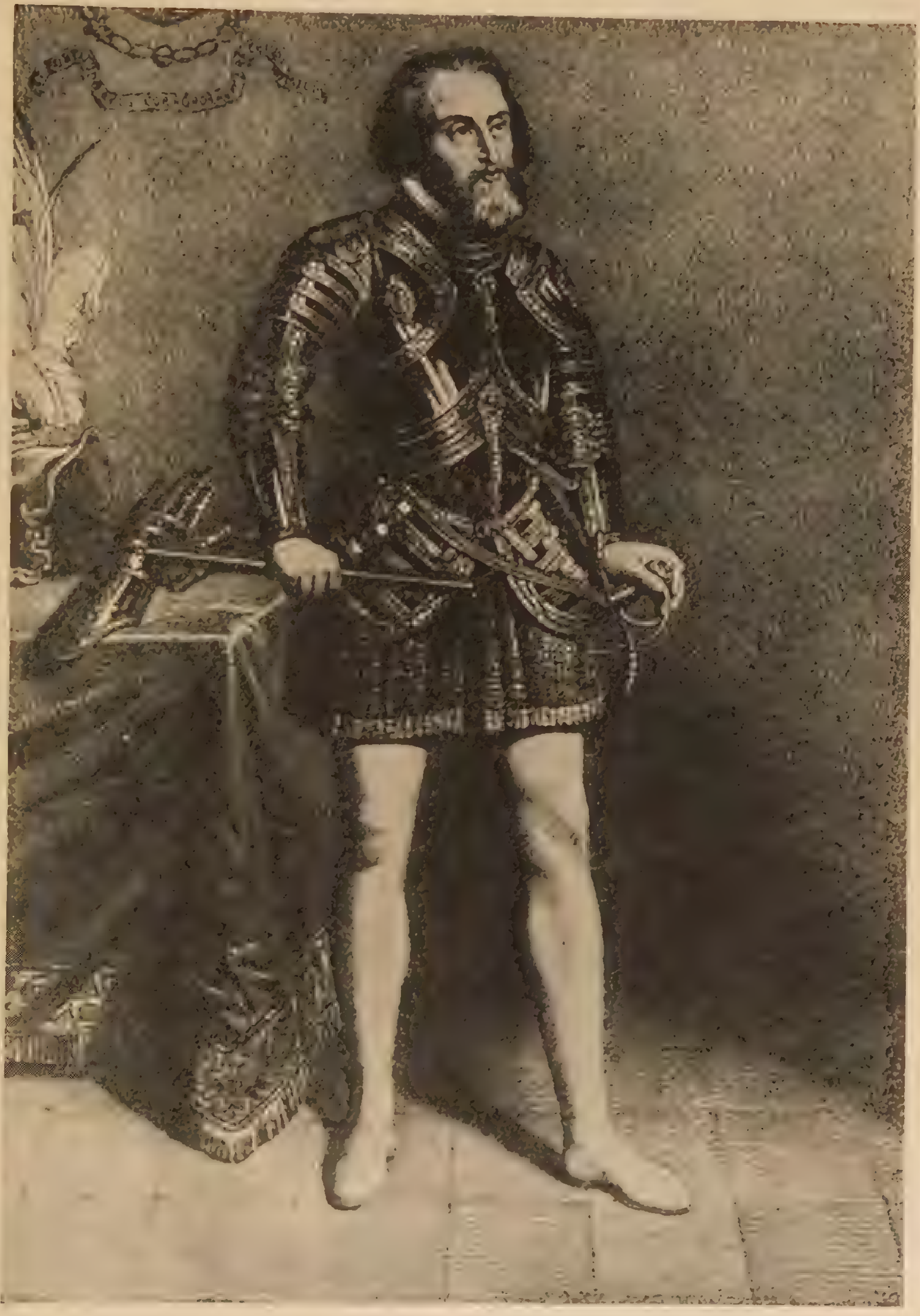
In all her other colonies, Spain kept everything in her own hand—people, lands, revenues, courts, administration, religion and trade. The viceroy or captain-general, was sent out from Spain, and represented the royal ruler. He was supported by troops from home, and had the power of life and death. The very first governor appointed, arrested Columbus and sent the great navigator home in chains. Balboa, who discovered the Pacific Ocean from a mountain-top in Panama, was put to death by a viceroy, who was jealous of his growing fame. Spain's best and bravest were betrayed and ruined.

Squeezing the Colonies Dry

The System of Extortion

No Spanish colony ever cost the mother country a penny. Each one not only paid its own civil and military expenses, but showed a handsome profit for the Crown. To many offices no salary was attached, but appointments were eagerly sought, for the holders were privileged to grow rich on what could be squeezed out of the colony after the royal treasury was satis-

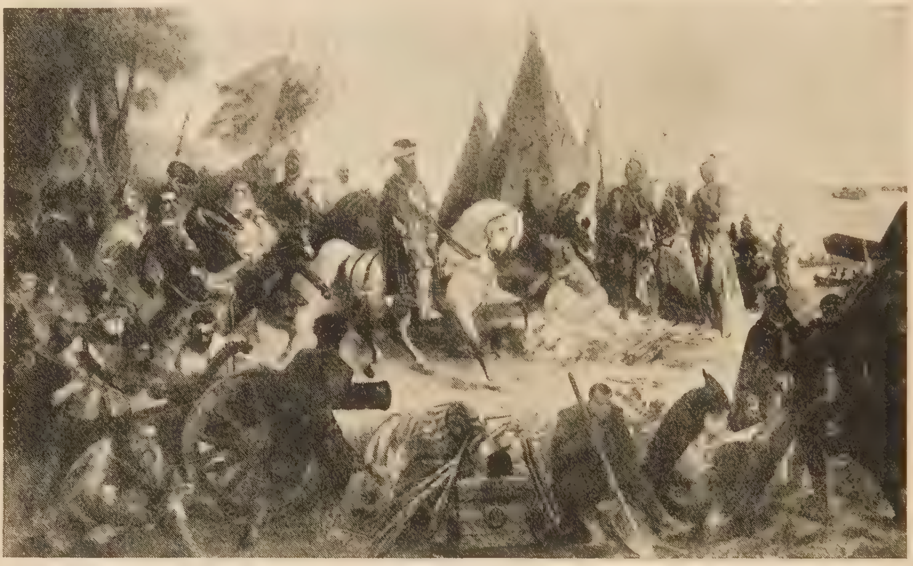
Cortez in His Iron Dress Suit



"In the sixteenth century when Cortez and the other Spanish explorers were making their conquests in America, armor was still worn on state occasions as a sort of full dress."

fied. Lands were allotted to nobles, explorers and colonial officials for service to the Crown. The only exception to this was the lands that were given to religious orders for churches, missions and monasteries.

The Story of the Spanish Conquests



Although this painting, the original of which is in the Capitol at Washington, is called "The Discovery of the Mississippi by De Soto," it is rather a summary of the Spanish conquests in America, than a true picture of the historical event. As a matter of fact, De Soto did not discover the Mississippi. It was first sighted by Penedia who sailed a short distance up stream from its mouth in 1519, while De Soto did not reach the Mississippi in his search for the gold that was not there, until 1541. He was an extremely handsome man and it would be hard to conceive a more striking figure than he represents here in his plumed hat on his white charger.

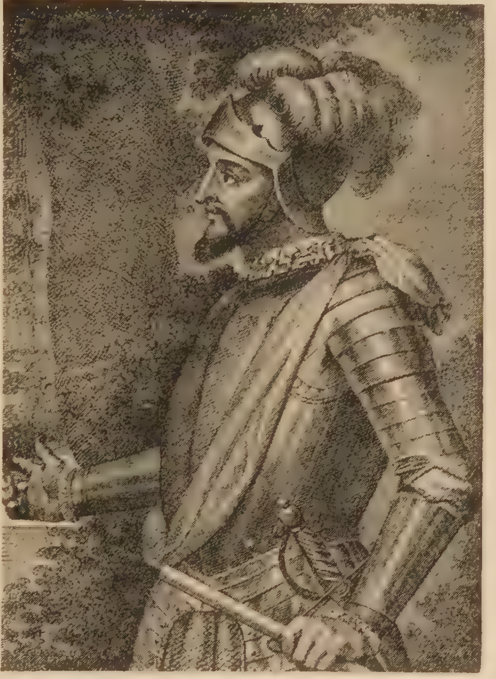
Before him you see, considerably idealized, the Indian maidens and the Indian men with their weapons at their feet and peace pipes in their hands in token of subjection. Behind him are his soldiers with their armor and their serpent-handled cannon, the culverin. In the foreground is a chest typifying the wealth Spain took from her possessions, and further to the right, the priests blessing the cross about to be elevated in the new land. Such pictures, while they do not represent real historic scenes, are very useful. Fix them in your mind and you will be surprised to see how easily you can recall whole periods of history and their lessons for us.

Spanish farmers and mechanics—the best of all classes for true colonists—were discouraged, and even forbidden to emigrate to America. Spain is not a country of skilled industries, and never had any skilled workmen to spare. Besides, more could be made at home, supplying Toledo swords, armor, Cordovan leather for the trappings of cavalry horses, and even woolen cloth, olive oil and wine, to the colonies, which were not allowed to grow or make anything that Spain could produce. The only colonial industries encouraged were the building up of large cattle ranches and mining properties, and for the working of these the owners had the free labor of enslaved Indians and imported Negroes.

The Grandees and the Jail Birds

And while men who would have made useful colonists were kept at home, Spain forced her undesirables to emigrate. Criminals and paupers were drafted into colonial armies, or shipped as crews of the "flotas" or treasure fleets. Columbus was given such a crew of rascals for his first voyage, and was threatened with mutiny. Every colony, of course, had its devoted missionaries, for the Cross went with the sword into every wilderness conquered by Spain. But beside the Brotherhoods we find in all Spanish colonies only the dregs and froth of society — beggars, jailbirds and degraded slaves, and over them the cruel, indolent, greedy and haughty grandees of Spain. So perfect was that organization of tyranny and corruption, so relentless its grip, that it endured for three hundred years; and Cuba freed herself at the end of another century, only with the help of the United States. We can study the colonial system of Spain in the unhappy story of this big, beautiful island near our southeastern shores.

Balboa the Adventurer



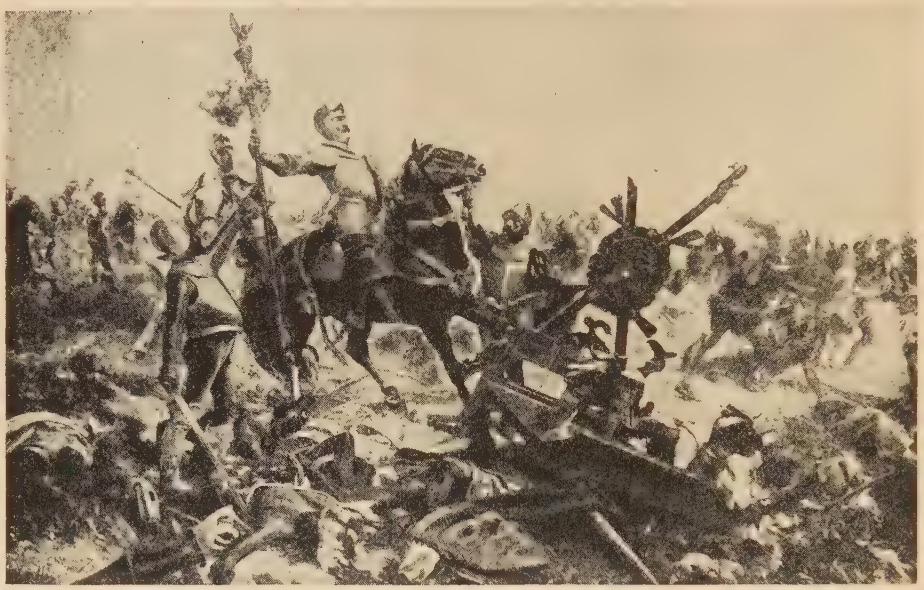
Vasco Nuñez de Balboa was a typical adventurer. Soon after coming to the West Indies he involved himself so heavily in debt because of his recklessness, that he had to flee the country in order to avoid arrest, so, taking with him only his armor, he hid himself in a cask of provisions, and was loaded on board a vessel embarked upon an exploring expedition to Central America. He soon rose to be first in command and was counted the strongest lance and the surest shot in the company. Prodigal, generous, and good-natured, he was loved by his men and had more success in dealing with the Indians than any other Spaniard of the period, except De Soto. Under his command the spoils of war were divided equally among all the soldiers, irrespective of rank. It is said Balboa never commanded his men to GO but always asked them to COME with him.

Story of Cuba as a Type

Cuba was discovered by Columbus on his first voyage. A curving bow of land, ninety miles wide and nearly eight hundred long, it had all the appearance of a continent. When he had passed through the fringe of small islands and coral reefs on its north coast, he was struck by the grandeur of its airy mountains and long lines of bold headlands. And no less was he impressed with its tropical forests, fertile valleys, many bright streams and broad coastal plains. Certain that this was a part of the mainland of China, he sent envoys to greet the Emperor. But he found here only friendly natives. In Hayti and other neighboring islands there were tribes of cannibal Caribs, but the Koo-bans of Cuba were far advanced and peaceable. They had a simple religious belief, without barbarous ceremonies, lived on fruit, fish and corn, wove cotton cloth, made baskets, pottery and golden ornaments, and built such good huts of grass, bark and palm leaves, that their model is still used by the Spanish-Cubans of today. Columbus called Cuba the Fortunate Isle. Its misfortunes began with the coming of the Spaniards.

The island was not occupied, however, until Hayti, where a greater quantity of gold was found, had begun to run dry of treasure. By that time the Koo-Bans had become alarmed, for news of Spanish methods had been spread. They resisted, but were speedily conquered, and put under a tribute of gold or cotton. Those who failed to pay were enslaved, or branded as cannibals and put to death. No Indian was ever able to endure slavery. Hard labor, disease and despair reduced the native population so rapidly that it practically disappeared in one generation. Their scanty accumulation of gold was also soon exhausted.

Cortez and the Wreck of the Aztec Gods



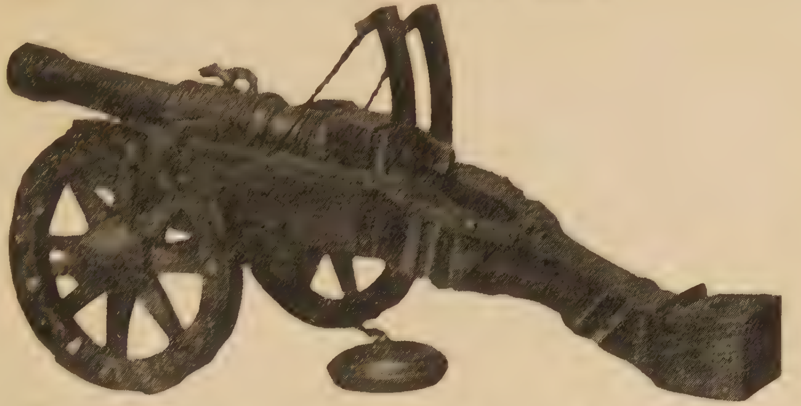
During the conquest of Mexico, Cortez and his soldiers were driven from the city of Mexico and forced to flee for their lives. At Otumba a great Aztec army blocked the way. They vastly outnumbered the Spaniards and though the Spaniards had a tremendous advantage in their armor, horses, and cannon, the Indians were getting the better of them when Cortez decided he must capture the Aztec commander in order to save the day. This commander was a royal personage, and was directing the battle from a hilltop, borne in a litter by his nobles. The Aztecs thought their royal family the highest representatives of the gods on earth and worshipped them as such. Cortez succeeded in cutting his way through the mass of warriors surrounding their chieftain. The litter was overturned, and the king and his nobles slain. As the Aztec chief fell, a Spanish soldier seized the sacred standard from his hand and gave it to Cortez who was on horseback. When the Aztecs saw the litter, with its sacred emblems, overturned, and the royal banner captured, they were struck with superstitious terror and fled in all directions. It was this victory which decided the fate of Mexico.

The picture shows Cortez just after receiving the banner from the soldier. In the foreground is the overturned litter, the images of their gods that the Indians carried into battle, and the Indians themselves can be seen fleeing in all directions.

A Monopoly of Robbery

Cuba's wealth was in its soil, but the island was permitted to grow only sugar, coffee, cotton and tobacco, which Spain could not produce. Nobles grew rich on their big plantations, by the use of negro slaves. But all around them fertile lands lay uncultivated. Not only were the working classes of Spain forbidden to emigrate, but all foreigners were refused admission. Trade was restricted by high tariffs and by the government's custom of selling the monopoly of it to one city, first Santiago, then Havana, and

A Muzzle-Loading Cannon



This is the heaviest gun of the sixteenth century in use in the New World and threw a shot of fifteen pounds. It takes its name, culverin, from a French word, meaning serpent, on account of those crooked handles, on the top, with which the gunners lifted up the gun when loading and which are supposed to look like serpents. You see cannon in those days were muzzle-loaders, like the rifles. When first invented, these cannon threw round stones. In a Turkish cannon, a 600-lb. stone shot was used in the siege of Constantinople. In Dover Castle, England, there is still to be seen a culverin which is known as "Queen Elizabeth's Pocket Pistol."

every necessity had to be imported from the mother country. Commerce with foreign lands, and even with neighboring Spanish colonies, was not permitted. Evasion of this law was punishable by confiscation of property and death. All trade was by "flotas" or royal fleets under convoy of Spanish war ships. Vessels of other nations were even denied refuge from storms in Cuban ports.

Some of these regulations were, no doubt, necessary in the sixteenth century. Spain had many enemies who disputed her arrogant claim to the whole western hemisphere. Her "flotas" were attacked on the Atlantic by the English, Dutch and French. And, as all Spanish ships, to and from the Colonies, stopped in the fortified harbor at Havana, Cuba became the storm center of a wild and lawless century on the sea. Her coasts were raided, her towns burned, her slaves captured, and her many fringing islands and snug harbors furnished hiding places for pirates. But when these dangers no longer threatened, Spain did not relax her grip on Cuba, although all the conditions had changed, and the island could quickly have risen to prosperity.

In spite of all Spain's precautions and restrictions a native-born white population was growing up. Some nobles had chosen to remain; or had left their rich estates to younger sons who married in the island and brought up families. These Spanish-Cubans asked for schools, but were refused any except those kept by religious brotherhoods. None but devotional books were allowed to be imported. The native-born were not permitted to travel abroad, or to send their children to foreign countries to be educated. And, although of pure Spanish stock, they were excluded from office. Rulers from Spain thus formed a privileged caste, a class apart, foreign in feeling and habits, and with no interest in the island. They looked upon the natives as inferiors; on the land as something alien that existed only to be plundered. In four hundred years there were one hundred and thirty-six captains-general of Cuba, most of whom were greedy politicians who went home rich.

This state of affairs bred exasperation, desperation and contempt of the law in the very people who should have been building up a prosperous country and stable government. Smuggling became a flourishing industry. The Cubans needed the salt-fish, meat and lamp-oil of the English colonies, and the North needed sugar, molasses, tobacco, coffee and cotton. So the sailing vessels of good Puritans and Quakers slipped into island bays and carried on a profitable if dangerous trade. The children of rich planters often "disappeared," returning after being educated in Boston or Philadelphia. Discontent seethed under the surface while the burden grew heavier. Spain was never a manufacturing country and could not supply the growing needs of Cuba. She bought of England, France, Germany and even the United States, and reshipped cargoes to Havana. Many a vessel load made two voyages across the Atlantic, Cuba paying double freight, giving a profit to some Spanish merchant, and then paying high import duties. The cost of every imported necessity was doubled. At times Cuban ports were opened to foreign trade, but extra duties and port and tonnage dues made this unprofitable. Export duties were assessed on all the products of the island. Industry was slowly bled to death.

Throwing Off the Spanish Yoke

Early in the nineteenth century all the Spanish colonies in America rose in revolution. Taking advantage of the Napoleonic wars in Europe, in which Spain was conquered and her King lost his throne, every colony from Cape Horn to the Rio Grande River threw off the Spanish yoke and formed republics. Cuba and Porto Rico rebelled also, but before they could win their freedom the old line of monarchs was restored in Madrid. From one of the greatest and richest powers in Europe, Spain had sunk to one of the poorest and weakest, but was still strong enough to hold her West Indian islands. Needing money desperately and with four colonies left from which to obtain it, Cuba was squeezed to the last bitter drop.

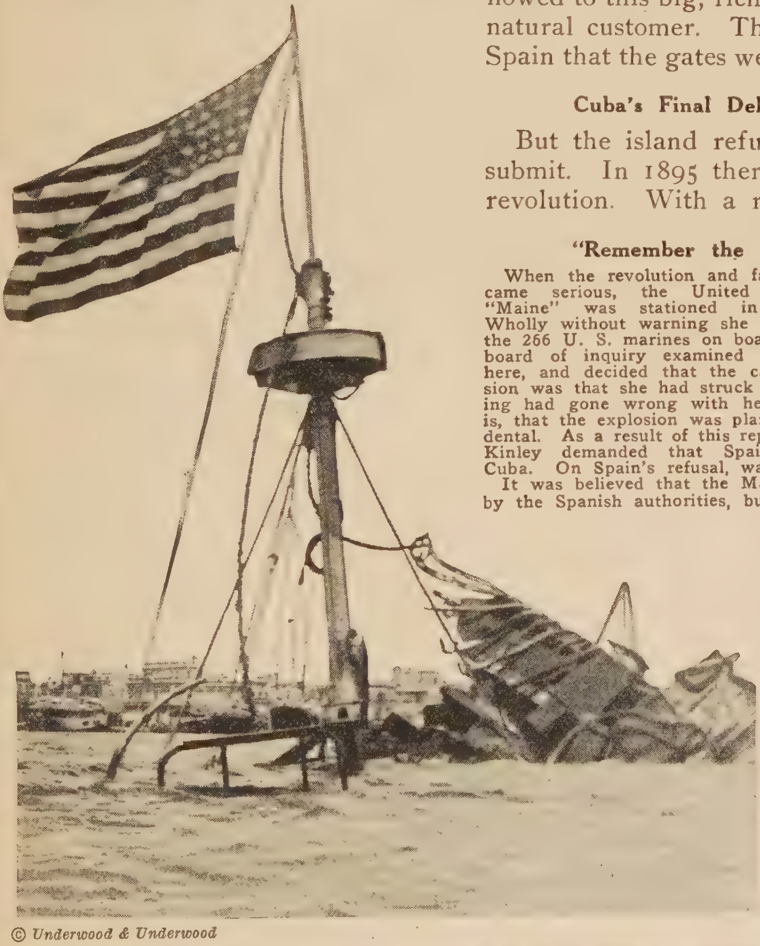
Cuba Still Enslaved

Beside the old trade restrictions, monopolies and duties, every industry, trade, profession and art was taxed. Real estate paid 12 percent, so that any Cuban who owned his home bought it again of the government every eight years. There were taxes on the farmers' plows and the workmen's tools, on every beef sold in the market, on the surgeon's instruments and the carrier's cart. Every bill, account, check, note, court claim, deed, will, contract and license had its stamp tax. Printed legal forms had to be bought of the government, the price per sheet running from three to forty dollars, according to the money value of the business transaction. Tax collectors, working on commission, were interested in over-valuing everything. This led to bribery and every form of political corruption. All of Cuba's profits and savings were automatically absorbed into the treasury and the official pockets of Spain. There was no capital for business, no revenues for schools, roads, public buildings or for health. Havana and other seaports became pest holes of yellow fever, festering and rotting under the tropic suns.

There were four rebellions in the half century after 1817. In 1868 a ten years' guerrilla warfare was begun that was one long nightmare of massacre, starvation, epidemic diseases and destruction of property. In making peace, Spain promised every reform that was asked for, but she did not keep faith and Cuba staggered up from its devastation to find itself saddled with a war debt of $300,000,000. Spain had borrowed money on Cuban bonds, with which to subjugate the unhappy islanders. After paying the interest on this debt, and supporting a fleet and army of occupation, and the civil expenses, there was now a deficit. Another hundred million of debt was slowly piled up. In 1890 Cuba owed $300 for every man, woman and child of its population, counting the recently freed slaves. Then the island was given a little taste of prosperity. For three years Cuba was permitted to buy and sell freely in the United States. Trade immediately, and to her great profit, flowed to this big, rich neighbor, her natural customer. This so alarmed Spain that the gates were again shut.

Cuba's Final Deliverance

But the island refused longer to submit. In 1895 there was a fresh revolution. With a real leader, in



© Underwood & Underwood

"Remember the Maine"

When the revolution and famine in Cuba became serious, the United States battleship "Maine" was stationed in Havana harbor. Wholly without warning she was blown up and the 266 U. S. marines on board were killed. A board of inquiry examined the wreck, shown here, and decided that the cause of the explosion was that she had struck a mine, that nothing had gone wrong with her mechanism—that is, that the explosion was planned and not accidental. As a result of this report, President McKinley demanded that Spain withdraw from Cuba. On Spain's refusal, war was declared.

It was believed that the Maine was blown up by the Spanish authorities, but it was also suggested that Cuban revolutionists might have laid the mine, hoping to bring about war between Spain and the United States which would result in freeing Cuba from Spanish rule. There are also those, even in the United States who think that perhaps the explosion was accidental and was from inside, not outside, the vessel. "Remember the Maine" became the battle cry of the American soldiers.

Weyler's Horrible Rule

Maximo Gomez, who formed an insurgent government, and whose intelligent plan was to destroy all of Spain's sources of revenue, Cuba was in flames from end to end. The revolutionists soon held all the land outside the garrisoned cities. Unable to cope with this situation, General Weyler, who had won fame, or rather, infamy, as "The Butcher of the Philippines," was sent to Havana as Captain-General. He was not a soldier, and, in any case, had too few troops for the task, but he could at least punish the helpless "pacificoes." On the ground that they were feeding and sheltering the scattered bands of revolutionists, he gathered the old men, women and children of the country into concentration camps in decaying cities. There, to the horror of the world, the population of Cuba began to perish of starvation and epidemic diseases.

Our War with Spain

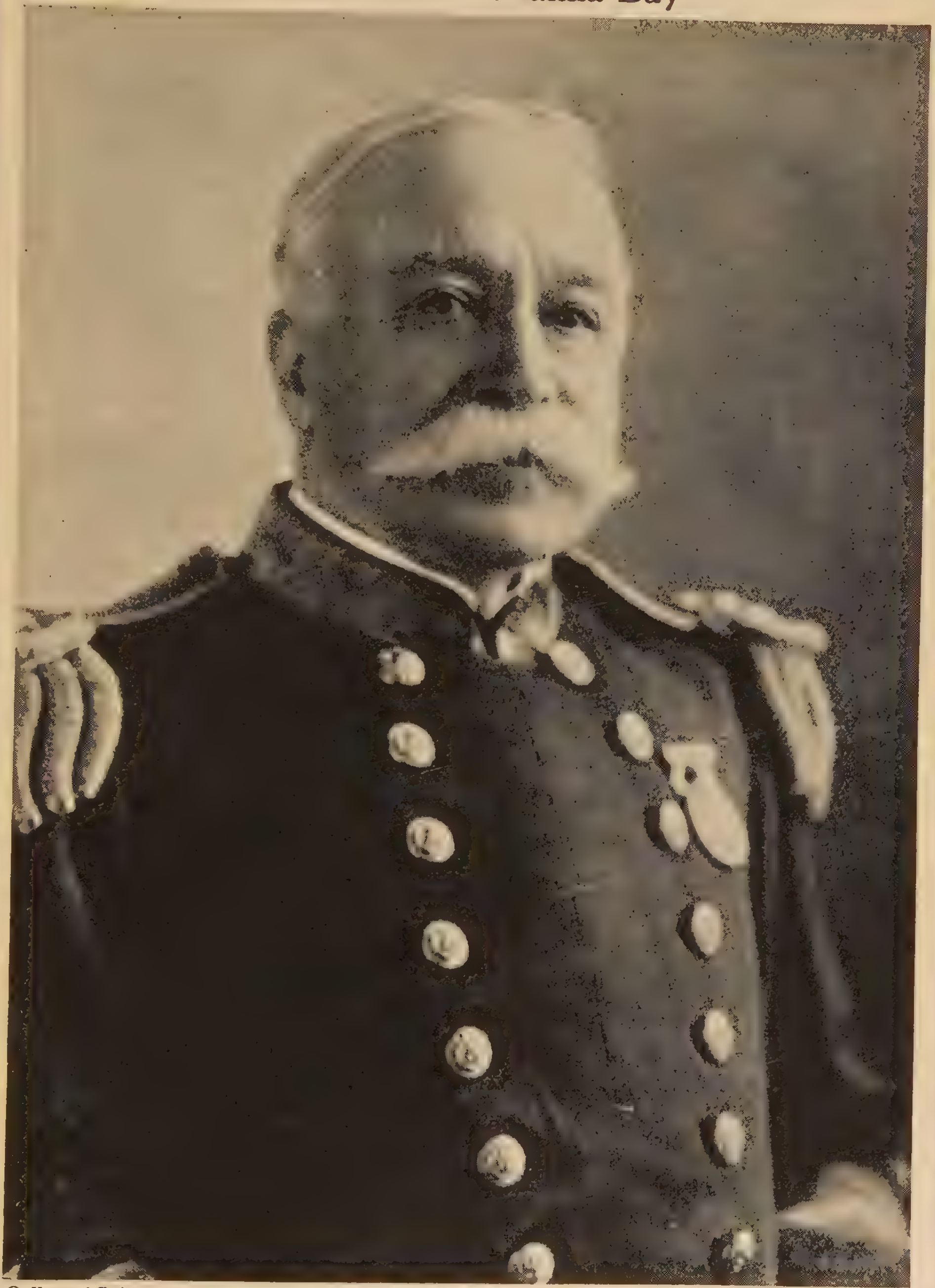
This aroused the anger of the people of the United States. We had stood these horrors long enough. By buying Florida and Spanish possessions on the Pacific, annexing Texas after that state had separated from Mexico, and giving the protection of the Monroe Doctrine to new and struggling Spanish-American republics, we had helped drive Spain from the continent. Then eighty years longer we had had this piteous little island neighbor at our doors, pleading for mercy and justice. Now, on threat of interference, our government demanded the recall of General Weyler and the release of the "pacificoes." Then the U. S. Battleship Maine, lying in Havana harbor, was blown up with a loss of 266 United States marines. Congress recognized Cuban independence and declared war on Spain. With the cry: "Remember the Maine," our armies were in the field, our fleets on the sea. Admiral Dewey captured Manila in one short naval battle, and freed the Philippines. Admiral Sampson sank the Spanish fleet at Santiago, and our "rough riders" swarmed up San Juan hill. The war, beginning in April, was over in August.

We had colonies, almost for the first time in our history. We annexed little Porto Rico, to the general satisfaction of its people. The Philippines we undertook to keep and protect until the people could learn to govern and defend themselves. Every government in the world, very likely, thought we intended to annex Cuba. Many Cubans thought so, too, for they had no reason to trust anyone. But we announced our intention to remain only until the island republic could be put on its feet. The Cubans had earned their freedom by four hundred years of oppression and a hundred of struggle.

What We Did for Cuba

Within six months the whole country was under American military rule, with General Leonard Wood as governor. The dead were buried, the sick cared for in hospitals, the starving fed, the idle put to work cleaning the cities. Out of Santiago and Havana, four centuries of accumulated filth was dug and destroyed. Water works and sewers were put in, and yellow fever stamped out. Then a police force and health department were organized. Money for all this work was found in customs' offices, official palaces and garrisons. Hospitals and

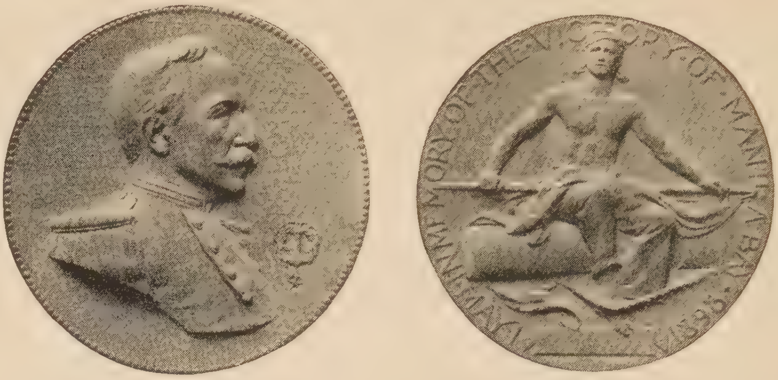
The Hero of Manila Bay



© *Harris & Ewing*

For his brilliant work, Dewey was made an admiral, the highest office in the American navy, and became the hero of the hour. Here we see him in his admiral's uniform, the most marked feature of which is the epaulet of heavy gold cord on each shoulder. These queer ornaments were at one time worn by all soldiers alike. Later they were confined to officers only, and in the last century their use has been more and more restricted to the navy.

In Honor of the Heroes of Manila Bay



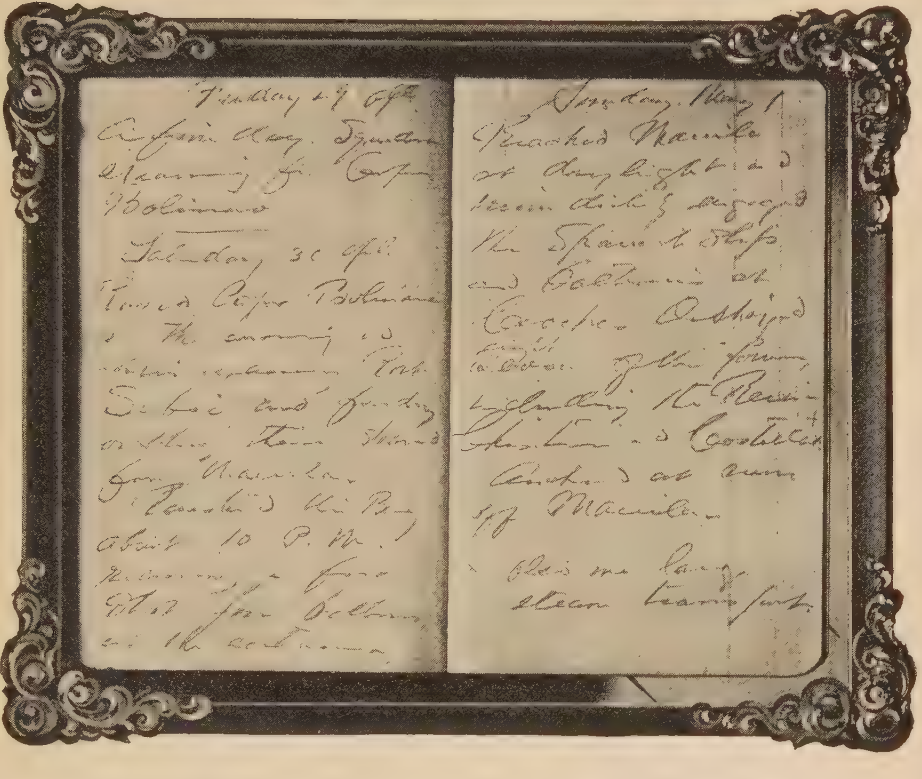
This is the famous Dewey medal ordered by Congress to be struck in honor of the victory won by Dewey in Manila Bay. On one side is his portrait and on the other an American naval gunner stripped for action, seated on a gun. Around the sailor is the inscription, "In Memory of the Victory of Manila Bay, May 1, 1898." Around the relief of Dewey's keen and powerful face, this: "A Gift of the People of the United States to the Officers and Men of the Asiatic Squadron under the Command of Commodore George Dewey." Underneath the inscription is an anchor with the laurel wreath and a single star. The medals were the work of the eminent sculptor, D. C. French.

schools were built without extra taxation. People were returned to their farms, with seeds and tools; the press was made free, and the people had the right of free speech and peaceable assembly. The effect was wonderful. Cringing fear held up its head; the ruined took heart and began to build up their businesses; the children, clothed and fed, forgot their misery in clean, bright schools. No laggards there! School was a novelty. "Shining morning faces" were seen on every street. Within four years there were 3,300 public schools in the island, with 143,000 pupils. Civil service was applied to the customs and post office, police, health and fire departments and finances were put into such shape that Cuba could live in self-respecting, progressive ways, build up her industries, and still, in time, with reduced taxes, pay off her debts.

Our motto was "Cuba for the Cubans." A disinterested friend of a ruined and distracted neighbor, we held the island in trusteeship for two years, leaving it clean, well, on its feet and with a million and a half in its treasury. After seeing these newly enfranchised people through an honest election, with a government of their own choosing installed, the United States withdrew. In 1906, when there were charges of election frauds and threatened revolution, we were obliged to interfere and restore order. Three years later we withdrew our forces again, and the island flag flew over the now peaceful and prosperous little republic.

By its action in Cuba the United States gave the world a new idea of a colony. We rebuked the Roman system of gaining and holding lands by conquest, and improved on the liberal system of the Greeks. Our own country founded on the system of "government by consent of the governed," we drove Spanish armies out, put Cuba in order and then restored her to full freedom. And so, a little more than four hundred years after Columbus, Spain's flag disappeared from our hemisphere.

Such a Big Battle in Such a Little Book!



Friday 29 Apl
[illegible] Bay. Squadron
steaming for Cape
Bolinao

Saturday 30 Apl
Passed Cape Bolinao
[illegible]
[illegible] into
Subig and finding
no ships there steamed
for Manila.
Entered the Bay
about 10 P. M.
receiving a few
shots from batteries
at the entrance

Sunday, May 1
Reached Manila
at daylight and
immediately engaged
the Spanish ships
and batteries at
Cavite. Destroyed
eight of the former
including the Reina
Christina and Castilla
Anchored at noon
off Manila.
*Also one large
steam transport.

Dewey was in Hong Kong with the Asiatic fleet when war was declared and he was ordered to destroy the Spanish fleet at Manila. Under "Friday 29 Apl" and "Saturday 30 Apl" he has recorded in his little pocket diary the progress of his squadron toward Manila. At the bottom of the left-hand page, he says: "Entered the Bay (Manila) about 10 P. M., receiving a few shots from batteries at the entrance." The next page reads, "Sunday, May 1. Reached Manila at daylight and immediately engaged the Spanish ships and batteries at Cavite (a village having a battery and arsenal). Destroyed eight of the former, including the Reina Cristina and Castilla.* Anchored at noon off Manila. *Also one large steam transport."

The battle of Manila, which really secured the Philippines for the United States, though further fighting was necessary before the Americans were in full possession, was won without injury to any of the American vessels and with the loss of only seven men wounded, out of the 1748 Americans engaged. All the Spanish ships were either burned or sunk, and 167 Spaniards were killed and 214 wounded, out of 1875 engaged.

Think of the hero of a great battle, jotting down in three sentences with a pencil the story of how he sank eight men-of-war and a transport. And at first he forgot all about the big transport! That is the way with military men. When they do a big thing they report it in few words. That is why Caesar's Commentaries have that brevity which has made them famous. Every sentence is just packed with important facts and great events.

The Lotus-Eaters

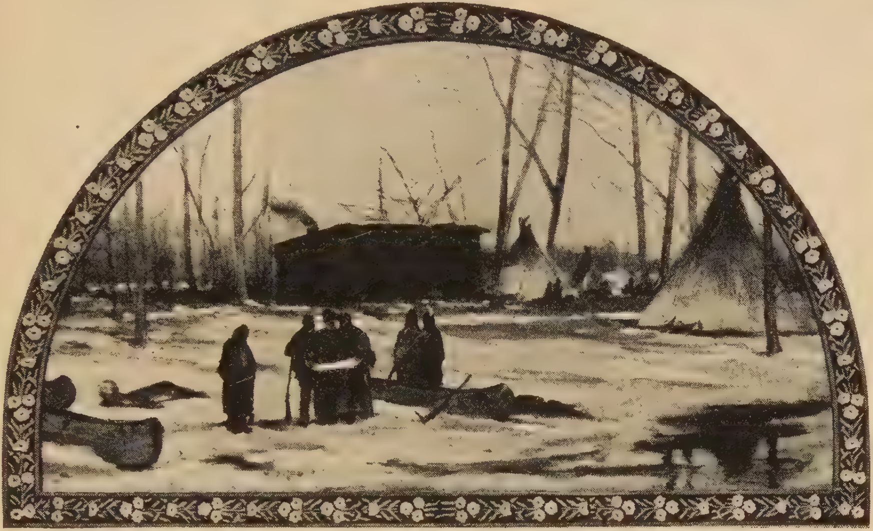
"Courage!" he said, and pointed toward the land,
"This mounting wave will roll us shoreward soon."
In the afternoon they came unto a land,
In which it seemed always afternoon.
All round the coast the languid air did swoon,
Breathing like one that hath a weary dream.
Full-faced above the valley stood the moon;
And like a downward smoke, the slender stream
Along the cliff to fall and pause and fall did seem.

A land of streams! some, like a downward smoke,
Slow-dropping veils of thinnest lawn, did go;
And some thro' wavering lights and shadows broke,
Rolling a slumbrous sheet of foam below.
They saw the gleaming river seaward flow
From the inner land; far off, three mountain-tops,
Three silent pinnacles of aged snow,
Stood sunset-flushed; and, dew'd with showery drops,
Up-clomb the shadowy pine above the woven copse.
The charmed sunset linger'd low adown
In the red West; thro' mountain clefts the dale
Was seen far inland, and the yellow down
Border'd with palm, and many a winding vale
And meadow, set with slender galingale:
A land where all things always seemed the same!
And round about the keel with faces pale,
Dark faces pale against that rosy flame,
The mild-eyed melancholy Lotos-eaters came.
Branches they bore of that enchanted stem,
Laden with flower and fruit, whereof they gave
To each, but who so did receive of them,
And taste, to him the gushing of the wave
Far, far away did seem to mourn and rave
On alien shores; and if his fellow spake,
His voice was thin, as voices from the grave;
And deep-asleep he seem'd, yet all awake,
And music in his ears his beating heart did make.

They sat them down upon the yellow sand,
Between the sun and moon upon the shore;
And sweet it was to dream of Fatherland,
Of child, and wife, and slave; but evermore
Most weary seem'd the sea, weary the oar,
Weary the wandering fields of barren foam.
Then some one said, "We will return no more";
And all at once they sang, "Our island home
Is far beyond the wave; we will no longer roam."

ALFRED TENNYSON

The French Dream of Empire



Father Marquette's Headquarters in Chicago in 1674

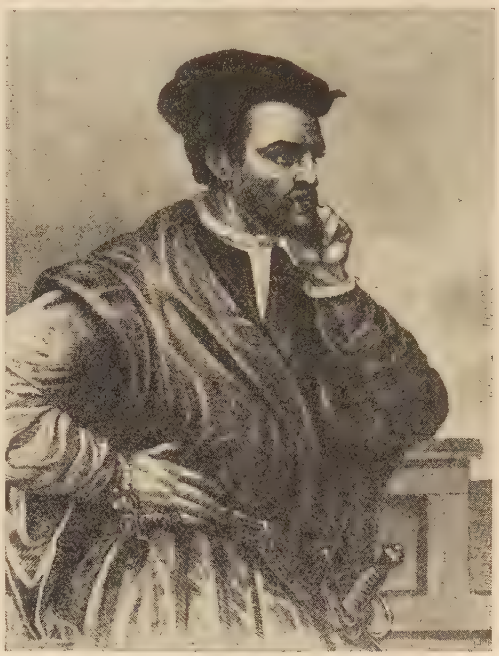
Did you ever see a more inhospitable and dreary winter landscape? And yet this is how a portion of Chicago looked in the year 1674 at the point of the Chicago River where the devoted missionary spent the winter. He had with him, Joliet, two coureurs de bois, and a little band of faithful Pottawattomies whose canoes you see drawn up on the beach and their wigwams clustered about the cabin. The hut is supposed to have been left by a trader in furs who built it and made it his headquarters.

IN the year 1634 a French explorer reached Green Bay, Wisconsin, on the western shore of Lake Michigan, fifteen hundred miles from the ocean. This was fourteen years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth. His name was Jean Nicolet. He made the six weeks' journey from Montreal in the birch-bark canoes of Huron Indians. Expecting to find the coast of China over these fresh water "Western Seas," he wore the robe of a Chinese mandarin, embroidered with golden dragons and with brilliant birds and flowers.

As he leaped ashore among the startled Winnebagoes, he fired a pair of dueling pistols in the air. Thus he was clothed in mystery, splendor and power, as was Spanish Cortez in Mexico. But he had no soldiers with him, nor any hostile intentions. His genuine friendliness, trust and charming manners captured the affections of this savage tribe. For two years he remained with his "*frères sauvages*" (wild brothers) as he called them, adopted their dress and habits, learned their speech and went on voyages with them. Once he was within fifty miles of the "Messassibi, Father of Waters," and he carried news of the Great River back to Montreal.

The whole episode is typical of the French in America. All their fur trappers, explorers, missionaries and empire builders, who, for one hundred and fifty years, passed in a splendid, historic pageantry over our two great inland waterways, from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico, were spectacular and romantic, and endeared themselves to the Indians. They were the first, and long the only ones, to reach the heart of North America.

The Discoverer of Canada



Jacques Cartier was the son of humble fisher folk in the French village of St. Malo. This portrait was painted in 1839 from sources which are now lost and is the only authentic picture we have of him. It shows this earliest explorer of the mainland of Canada, on the deck of a ship, looking ahead with a tight-set jaw and searching eyes. His face is firm and strong; it is that of a man of earnest purpose and iron will. Jacques Cartier's clothing shows us the costume worn by a sea captain of 400 years ago. His thick cloak is gathered in at the waist by a belt which supports a sword and also a dirk, the hilt of which can be seen near his right hand. He wears the tufted Breton cap common among the seafaring men of France. He has no ruff and his shirt is finished with only a small ruffle at the neck and wrists, for Jacques Cartier is dressed for action and rough work, not for a state occasion.

Secret of French Discoveries

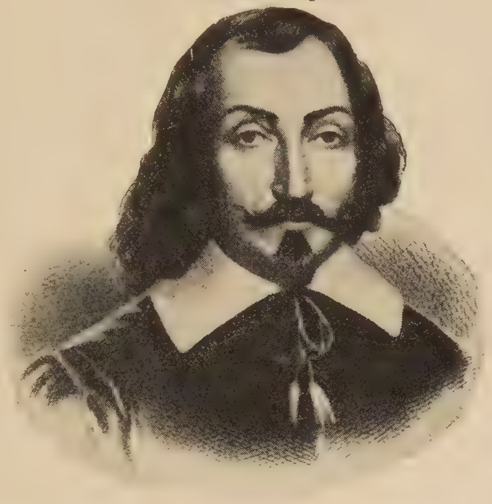
A glance at any map of the continent will tell you why. In the discovery of the St. Lawrence River by Jacques Cartier, in 1534, the French found the widest water gate on the Atlantic, and possessed a long water highway into the interior, while the English and Dutch colonists, on the Atlantic seaboard, had a mountain wall at their backs, from New England to the Carolinas. But, while their fishing fleets continued to come to the Grand Banks, the French made no attempt at colonization until 1609, when Samuel de Champlain arrived at Quebec, to search for the Northwest Passage to India and China, and to develop the fur trading of the Canadian forests.

Picturesque French Life

The French soon had their settlements in Nova Scotia (then Acadie) on the islands in the Gulf, and along the St. Lawrence between Quebec and Montreal. There are French villages today in Canada and Louisiana that are much like the Grand Pré of Longfellow's Evangeline. They consist of a single, long street fronting the river, and with the narrow farms marching in line back to a bluff or belt of woods. Montreal and Quebec had stone forts, log trading posts, water mills and Catholic churches; and there was plenty of social gayety, and all the comforts of Old France in the cozy dormer-windowed, piazza-fronted log cottages that had their gardens and orchards, and cattle grazing on a common pasture. But the small village farms were not expected to support families. In the winter the men were in the woods with the Indians, hunting and trapping, and bringing their furs into the beaver fair at Montreal in the spring.

The life just suited these Frenchmen, many of whom were blue-eyed, brown-haired descendants of the old Norse sea-rovers. They loved the voyages in frail canoes, over leagues of wild, uncharted waters; the days of stalking bears and moose in the unbroken forests, and the nights by campfires, when they played the violin for the delighted Indians. They often took squaws for wives, with the blessing of the church. Every one of them wanted to be a hero, and dreamed and talked of doing some brave deed for "la belle France." They soon knew every Algonquin dialect, and were as hardy, as skilled canoeists, snowshoe "wood-runners" and hunters as the Indians.

The Founder of Quebec



Champlain

Like Captain John Smith and Sir Walter Raleigh, Samuel de Champlain was not only an explorer but he added to the value of his explorations by the interesting books he wrote about them. His VOYAGES give much valuable information about the customs and habits of the Algonquin Indians as well as about the region he explored.

It was Champlain's daring and perseverance that gave the French their foothold in America. But, on the other hand, it was Champlain's alliance with the Algonquins which turned the Iroquois against the French, and so materially aided the English cause in the long conflict for the possession of America, which followed.

Like most of the French explorers, he was more deeply interested in discovery and in winning converts for the Catholic church than in colonization, though it was almost wholly due to his perseverance and good management that Quebec became a permanent settlement.

This is how it happened that, as early as 1625, Jean Nicolet was living with the Hurons on Lake Nipissing. Hearing there of the "Western Sea" and fired by the hope of reaching China, he got the mandarin's robe of Champlain, made his will, confessed his sins, and started on his perilous voyage to Green Bay.

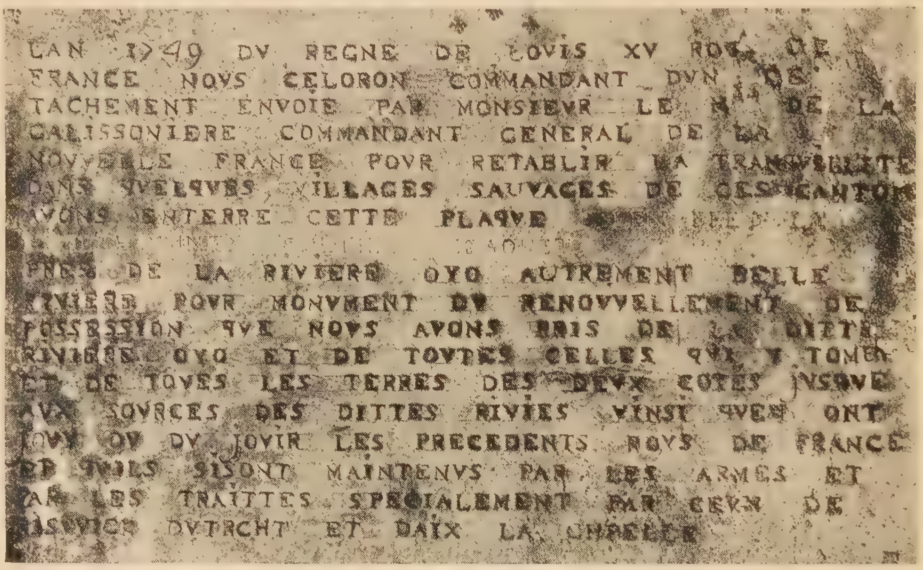
The French had no choice but to go westward. They were hemmed into the narrow, rocky valley of the St. Lawrence, on the north by thick woods and Arctic plains, and on the south by the English and Dutch settlements, and by the warlike Iroquois. They had won the enmity of the "Six Nations" in western New York State by allying themselves with the much more numerous, but weak and unorganized Algonquins. They had, besides, poetic imagination. As Champlain stood on the forest-crowned bluff at Quebec, three hundred miles from the ocean, and watched the St. Lawrence pouring its exhaustless flood out of the wooded wilderness, he realized the colossal scale on which the continent had been planned. He thought that across some distant divide the headwaters of the Great River might be found, and with it a passage to India and an empire for France. With this end in view he built the fort and trading post at Montreal, just below the rapids, as far as vessels from France could ascend the river.

Through these rapids the Algonquin tribes did not go, nor did they often venture on Lake Ontario. That lake was claimed by the Iroquois, and above it there was a thirty-six mile portage to be made around the thundering waters of Niagara. Instead, they paddled up the Ottawa River, and, by many forest-walled water courses, won their way into Lake Huron. Thence they went to the head of Lake Superior and brought back furs and copper arrow-heads. It was over this route that Nicolet reached Green Bay.

The Mississippi must soon have been discovered from the upper lakes but for the fact that the Iroquois Indians waged unceasing war on the Algonquins and their French allies for the next thirty years. They drove the tribes to the upper lakes and shut the French colonists in their forts. In 1660 there were only three settlements and three thousand French in the St. Lawrence valley. Then Adam Daulac, known as

Dollard's Test by Fire

Story Told by an Old Lead Plate



LAN 1749 DV REGNE DE LOVIS XV ROY DE
FRANCE NOVS CELORON COMMANDANT DVN DE
TACHEMENT ENVOIE PAR MONSIEVR LE M DE LA
GALISSONIERE COMMANDANT GENERAL DE LA
NOVVELLE FRANCE POVR RETABLIR LA TRANQVILLITE
DANS QVELQVES VILLAGES SAUVAGES DE CES CANTONS
AVONS ENTERRE CETTE PLAQVE [illegible]
[illegible]
PRES DE LA RIVIERE OYO AUTREMENT BELLE
RIVIERE POVR MONVMENT DV RENOVVELLEMENT DE
POSSESSION QVE NOVS AVONS PRIS DE LA DITTE
RIVIERE OYO ET DE TOVTES CELLES QVI Y TOMB
ET DE TOVES LES TERRES DES DEVX COTES JVSQVE
AVX SOVRCES DES DITTES RIVIES AINSI QVEN ONT
JOVY OV DV JOVIR LES PRECEDENTS ROYS DE FRANCE
ET QVILS SISONT MAINTENVS PAR LES ARMES ET
PAR LES TRAITTES SPECIALEMENT PAR CEVX DE
RISWICK DVTRCHT ET DAIX LA CHAPELLE

If you should ever visit the Museum of the Virginia Historical Society, one of the interesting things they would show you would be this old lead plate. It was buried by French explorers at the foot of a tree and claims for the French King, Louis XV, all the territory drained by the Ohio and the streams entering into it. As you see, it is written in French and the carving was probably done in the soft lead with a hunter's knife. Time and the acids of the soil have eaten away a good many of the words, but it is still legible, and the English of it is:

"In the year 1749, during the reign of Louis XV, King of France, we, Céloron, commander of a detachment sent by Marquis de la Gallissoniere, commander-in-chief of New France, to restore tranquillity in some savage villages of these districts, have buried this plate at the confluence of the Ohio and . . . this . . . near the river Ohio, alias Beautiful River, as a monument of our having taken possession of the said river Ohio and of those that fall into the same, and all the lands on both sides as far as the sources of the said rivers, as well as of those of which preceding kings have enjoyed possession, partly by the force of arms, partly by treaties, especially by those of Ryswick, Utrecht, and Aix-la-Chapelle."

Those queer little figures at the top that look like a flight of ducks are the lilies of France. If you could see the original plate you would notice that it was carefully ruled with a knife point before the words were cut into the lead. Other plates were buried at other points and two of these were found in recent years sticking out from the river bank by boys.

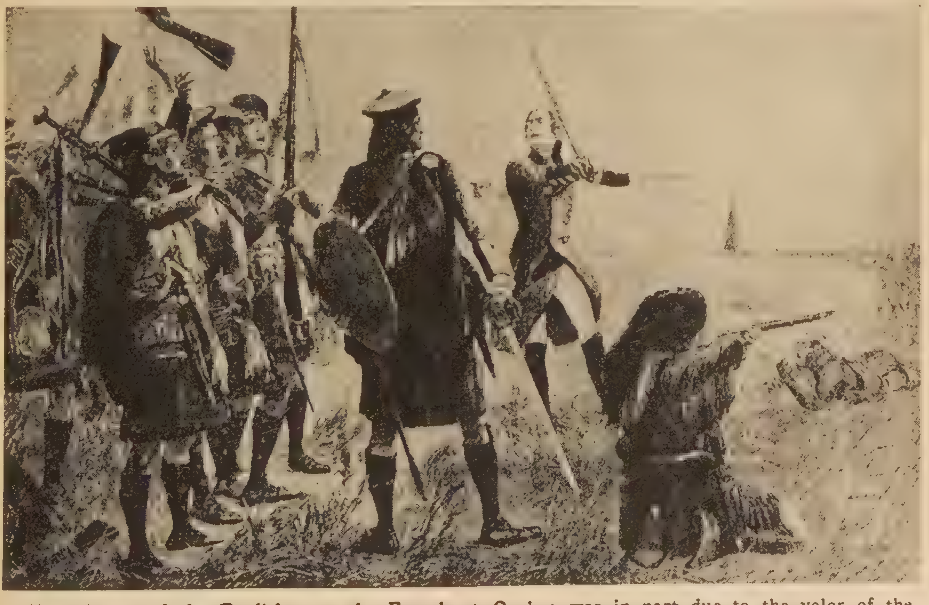
Champlain's "Gift of God"

© *Underwood & Underwood*

Three hundred years after Champlain sailed up the St. Lawrence to Quebec for the first time, Quebec celebrated his coming with a grand pageant and many impressive ceremonies. Here is a reconstruction of Champlain's ship, the Don de Dieu, manned and equipped as it was in Champlain's time, and surrounded by the canoes of curious Indians. It was one of the most striking features of the Quebec celebration.

"Don de Dieu" means gift of God. The vessel was a small one, as you see, to brave the stormy Atlantic. It was 80 feet long and 20 feet wide, with a draft of 12 feet when fully loaded.

General Fraser and His Highlanders at Quebec

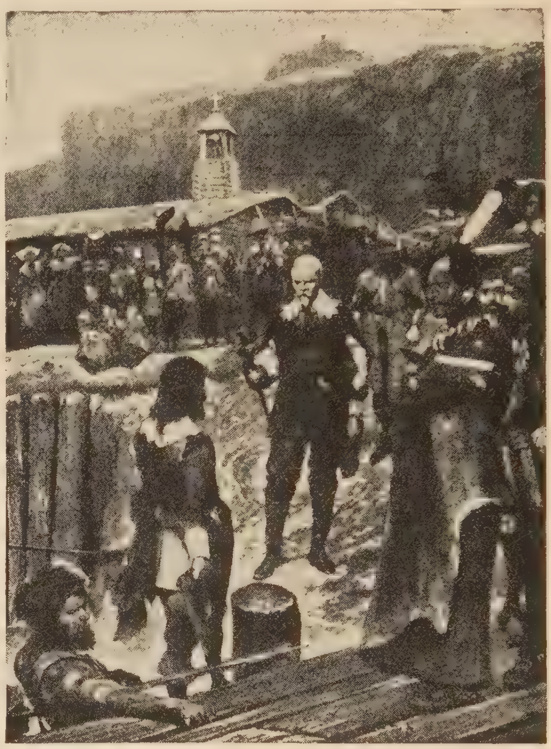


The victory of the English over the French at Quebec was in part due to the valor of the Scotch-Highlanders under General Fraser. In the picture the General is pointing to the enemy and calling on his men to charge. You see with what enthusiasm the order is received. General Fraser himself was a Scotchman and entered the British Army at an early age. He served with distinction in Holland and Germany and accompanied General Wolfe to Quebec. He always showed as great skill in conducting a retreat, as in making an attack.

"Dollard," commandant at Montreal, convinced the Iroquois that the French were unconquerable. With seventeen Frenchmen and four Indians in a little log fort on the Ottawa, he held off 700 warriors for days and killed a third of them before he and his little band were overpowered.

All through that generation of warfare, too, French missionaries had been in the woods with every harried band of Algonquins. They lived on roots and berries, slept on the snow, listened for the midnight alarm, comforted dying warriors, and took squaws and papooses to their scattered kindred. In many a wild island and hidden retreat around the upper lakes they gathered bands of starving fugitives, built bark chapels, and set up the portable altars which they managed to bring in safety through every peril. There they lit their tall wax candles, burned incense and used the sacred vestments and communion service, in the darkest hours bringing the mystery, splendor, and consolation of religion to despairing tribes. After the war was over, it was missionaries, such men as Nicolet and the defenders of the little fort on the Ottawa, who carried the cross and the lilies of France down to the gulf of Mexico.

The Surrender of Champlain

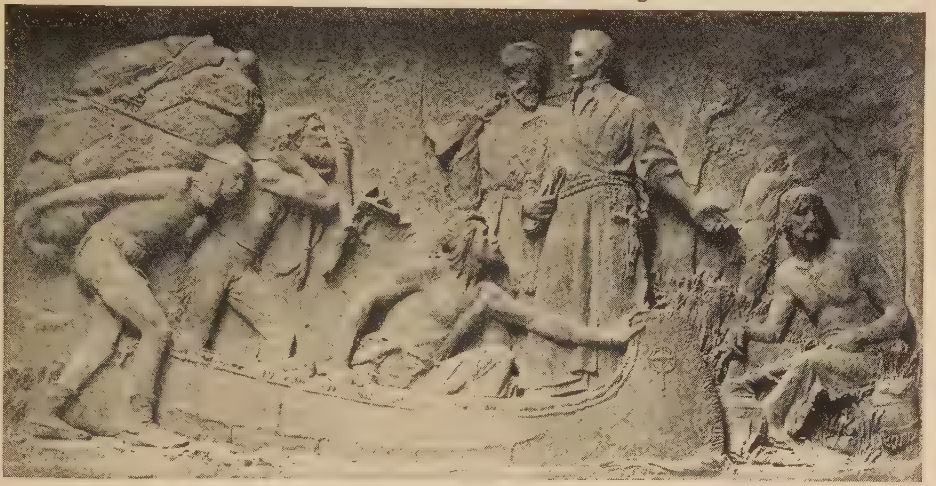


Champlain, surrounded by his soldiers and the Indians who, you remember, were always friends of the French, is here shown handing his sword to the leader of the British Naval forces, Admiral Kirke. In the background is one of the little Catholic chapels with which the French dotted the wilderness. Kirke, although an Englishman, was born in Dieppe, France, in 1596, where his parents were temporarily located. He was the eldest son of a Scotch merchant. Accompanied by his two brothers, one of whom, Lewis, became the first Military Commandant of Quebec under English rule, he led an expedition of three vessels, in 1627, to break up the French settlements in Canada and Nova Scotia. When he first ordered Champlain to surrender Quebec, the latter concealed his weakness by a defiant answer which so deceived Kirke as to his strength, that Kirke withdrew. When later he attacked the French squadron near Gaspe, capturing all the arms, ammunition and stores intended for Quebec, and again appeared before the town with his squadron, Champlain gave up the struggle.

Père Marquette and His Work

Père Marquette, a frail young priest of such zeal and consecration that white men and red alike looked upon him as a saint from heaven, had a mission among the Hurons at Mackinac, when in 1671, the sovereignty of France over the Great Lakes was declared at Sault Ste. Marie. Every voyager and Indian stopped at his chapel, in passing, for a blessing. Among them was Louis Joliet, returning from the copper mines empty handed, turned back by the warlike Sioux. Père Marquette told him of a band of Illinois Indians who had made a thirty days' voyage from the south, to beg him to come to their villages on the Illinois, near the "Messassibi," and found a mission. He was awaiting the permission of his superiors in Montreal to carry the Cross to the banks of the Great River.

Joliet and Marquette at a Portage



This picture shows Joliet and Marquette at the portage from the Fox to the Wisconsin rivers. Father Marquette, as you can see, was a young man; he was only thirty years old when he died, and his character was as beautiful as his face. His whole life was given up to his religion and to doing good. The man on his left is Louis Joliet. French woodsmen and Indian converts carried their canoes and baggage over the portages; that is to say the places where it is necessary to cross the land to get from one river to another. Notice how the Indian at the right carries the baggage strapped to him. Beyond him is a woodsman bringing in a deer.

Marquette and Joliet

Thus the way southward was opened to the French. Joliet made a swift return to Mackinac, with the joyful news that he had been commissioned to find the Great River, and that Père Marquette was to go with him. To that saintly soul on his forest and wave-girt rocky point, this news was an answer to two years of ceaseless prayer.

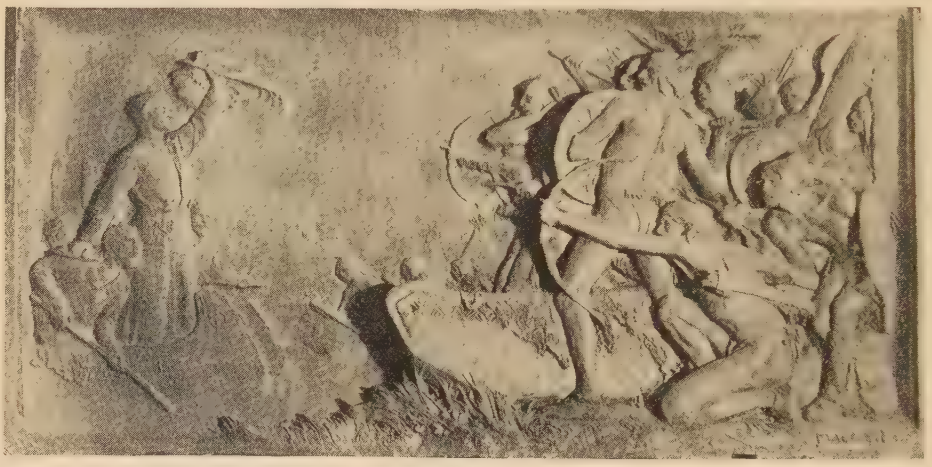
These two, with five Indians, set out in a big canoe, armed only with the Cross, the banner of France, and a peace pipe. Going by Nicolet's route to Green Bay and down the Fox River they entered the Mississippi at Prairie du Chien, Wisconsin, and floated to the Illinois. The year was young; bluff and prairie and tender woods enchanted them. Marquette's journal reads like a romance. The mission was planted at Utica, Illinois. Then, over streams populous with canoes, bordered by fields bright with corn, they were guided to the Chicago River. Joliet returned to Montreal, losing his records in the rapids of the St. Lawrence by the upsetting of his canoe. Père Marquette went back to Illinois, spent one winter on the Chicago River and died. Mournful Pottawattomies carried his body north, to some disputed point—perhaps to Glen Haven, Michigan; perhaps to lay him under the floor of his chapel at Mackinac. His spirit was long invoked by the Indians to still the tempests on the Great Lakes.

La Salle and His Dream of Empire

Now appeared the greatest man that France sent to the New World. He was Robert Cavelier, Sieur de la Salle, poor, unknown, of middle-class birth—a handicap in those days of privilege for nobles—when he appeared in Canada. But he won a grant of land by his services, and built Fort Frontenac at the foot of Lake Ontario. He was there when Louis Joliet returned from his amazing voyage of discovery, and saw his records before they were lost in the rapids. For years he had dreamed of the great empire in America to be won for France. With the knowledge now gained he went to Paris, aroused the enthusiasm of the French court, and secured a commission from the King to explore, fortify, colonize and trade in the Mississippi Valley.

But he got very little money. He sold his estate on the St. Lawrence for funds to build a sailing vessel at Niagara. For permission to build it he sought out Iroquois chiefs in their villages in western New York. He cut green timbers in the woods, mounted cannon on his floating fort, and spread the first sails to the winds of the Great Lakes. It was 1679 when the Griffin dropped anchor in the midst of a hundred canoes at Mackinac, and La Salle went ashore in a scarlet mantle, gold lace, powdered hair and delicate ruffles, to pray at the grave of Père Marquette. No humble petitioner was he, but a man of imperial vision, ambition and resource. To the Indians he was magnificent, for, in triumph or defeat, he trod the wilderness like a king. He had with him but one friend and faithful lieutenant, Henri di Tonty, but the Algonquins gathered around him for protection and helped him set up cannon on Starved Rock—a lordly bluff on the Illinois at Utica, where Marquette had founded his mission. He built another vessel at Peoria, with which to descend the Mississippi.

An Encounter With Hostile Indians



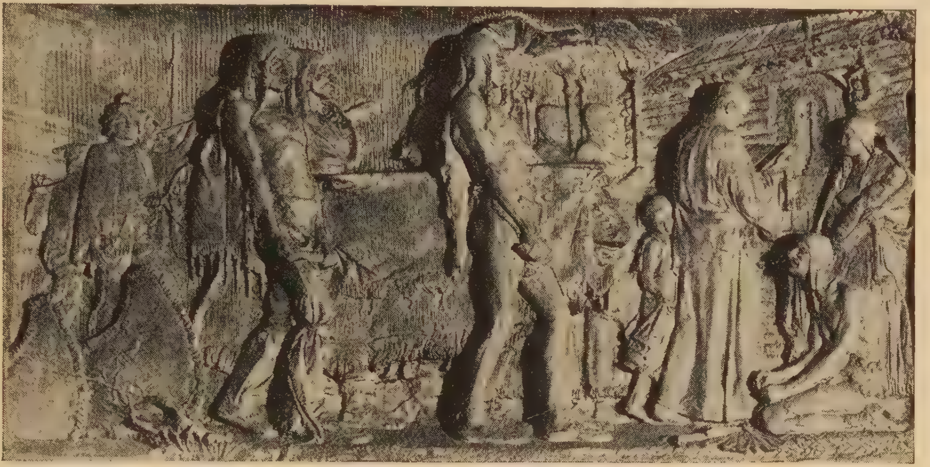
The Indians among whom he worked and who knew his saintly character were very devoted to Father Marquette, but the enemies of these Indians were hostile to him. This relief pictures an encounter with the Sioux, one of these hostile tribes. Father Marquette is shown standing, holding the peace pipe. A cross is stuck in his girdle but he has no gun, for the missionaries went unarmed among the Indians. Marquette and some French Canadian woodsmen are in the canoe with Joliet.

Misfortune and enmity pursued him. The Griffin, with its rich cargo of furs from Green Bay, was lost on Lake Erie. Count Frontenac, his powerful friend who ruled in Montreal, was recalled to France and help was refused by his successor. Obliged to go to Paris for assistance, he found, on his return, that his Indian allies had been scattered by the Iroquois. Again he gathered 20,000 warriors around his fort, while other tribes kept the Chicago portage open. In 1682 he went down the Mississippi to the Gulf and took possession of the valley, which he named Louisiana, in honor of the King of France. He had won an empire, but was discredited, and forbidden even to pay his own expenses out of the profits in the fur trade.

Pursued by Adverse Fate

With all his hopes crumbling into dust, he returned to France again, got the ear of the King, ships, money, soldiers, colonists and authority over Louisiana. But again he was betrayed. His fleet commander landed the expedition on the coast of Texas, four hundred miles west of the mouth of the Mississippi. There he was assassinated by mutineers of his own party

The Final Resting Place of Father Marquette



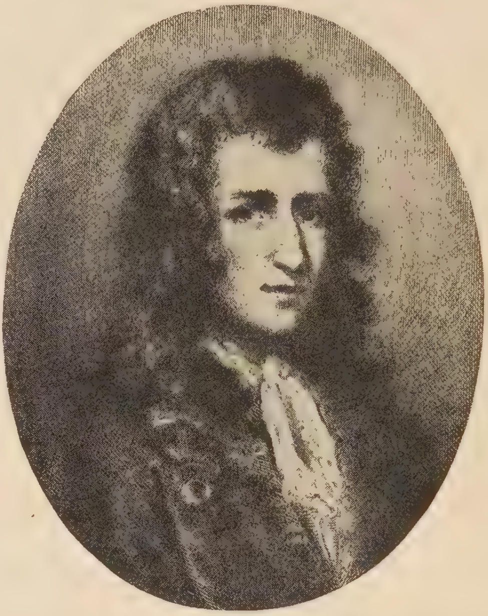
At the right of this bas-relief is Marquette's principal mission, a little log building at Old Mackinac on the south shore of the straits of Mackinac. Father Marquette died when he was only thirty years old, somewhere on the east shore of Lake Michigan. He was buried where he died, but a few years later the Indians took his body to Mackinac and buried it under the floor of his chapel there. The picture shows the funeral procession approaching Mackinac chapel with a priest in the lead, reading the service, and a little girl by his side swinging the censer.

Continuing La Salle's Work

For the next twenty years Tonty held the Illinois country, built forts and kept the trade route to Montreal open, but in 1700 he gave up the struggle and went down to the Gulf, when d'Iberville from Canada was building forts at Biloxi and Mobile. La Salle lay dead on Trinity River, his work lost. Now France proposed to do that task all over again, by pushing up the river from the new capital of Louisiana at New Orleans.

There were still Frenchmen in Illinois, keeping the lamp of religion and civilization burning in the wilderness. Just as missionaries had led harried bands of Indians to the upper lakes sixty years before, so now they went with fugitive tribes down to the banks of the Mississippi, between the Missouri and Ohio. For twenty years they were cut off from the world. But, in a land of peace and plenty, they built up the mission town of Kaskaskia, with a stone mill and chapel, wheat fields and herds of cattle. These were there when, in 1788, a fleet of big pirogues, or hollowed cypress log boats, armed with cannon and floating the lilies of France, came up the river with soldiers to build Fort Chartres, about sixty miles below the site of what is now St. Louis.

Robert Cavelier, Sieur de la Salle



This fine picture of La Salle from the painting by Margry, brings out his character to a remarkable degree. Although his family were not nobles, they were wealthy and with great landed estates. You can see he belonged to the French aristocratic type—self-controlled, self-contained and with a calm exterior that hides great pride and ambition. His mind was always hungry for knowledge and achievement. He was very skillful in making other people see things as he saw them. It is said of him also that he was the first self-made man who ever walked on the land which is now occupied by the busy thoroughfares of Chicago—a city of self-made men. The principal financial street of Chicago is named after him, "La Salle" Street.

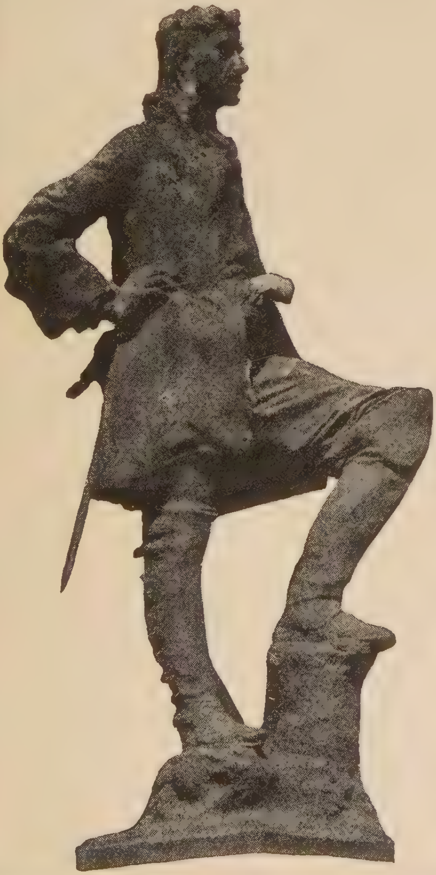
In some way rumors of fabulous wealth in the Illinois country had reached Paris. A company was chartered to develop the mines of gold, silver and precious stones it was supposed to possess. Fort Chartres was built below St. Louis, and command given to the proudest nobility of France. Colonists were sent out and slaves brought from the West Indies to work the mines, but nothing but lead was discovered, in the Ozarks of Missouri, and at Galena, Illinois. The soil, however, was rich, and soon the Illinois bottoms were golden with wheat fields. A dozen farming villages, like those on the lower St. Lawrence and above New Orleans, sprang up. The country sent wheat, furs, pork and lead to the Gulf and to the French West Indies, the garrison was kept in the fort and a new trade route over the Ohio was opened to Montreal.

There was trouble with the Chickasaw and Natchez Indians on the lower Mississippi, but by 1750 the Illinois bank was settled for fifty miles. France had taken root in three places in the New World, and connecting and defending the colonies in Canada, Illinois and Louisiana was a noble line of forts. Louisburg fronted the Ocean on Nova Scotia (Acadie), and Mobile the Gulf of Mexico. Between them were Quebec, Montreal, Frontenac, Niagara, Detroit, Presque Isle (now Erie City), Mackinac, Sault Ste. Marie, Green Bay, St. Joseph, and Fort Chartres below St. Louis.

Defenses of New France

The Struggle for a Continent

Then the French and Indian war broke out, first between New France in Canada and the colony of Virginia. It was really a struggle for the possession of the continent. Soon the war spread to France and England, involved all their colonies in America, and far off India. It was a world-wide contest between England and France for sea power and colonial dominion. In America the French stood on the defensive in their magnificent chain of forts. To British regulars, and New England and Virginia volunteers, was given the task of cutting through tangled forests, breasting wild floods and climbing mountains, and going on long voyages at sea to attack the enemy. No one believed that the French could ever be dislodged from their forts.



But the tide of fortune suddenly turned. Louisburg, Frontenac and Fort Duquesne (Pittsburgh) were taken. Quebec was left defenseless; Montreal was cut off from Illinois. By 1760 the British were in Detroit, Mackinac and Vincennes. In India, also, the courage and genius of a young clerk named Robert Clive, caused France to lose a fabulously rich empire. When the war was over England dictated the terms of peace. To Louisiana and Illinois the end came as a clap of thunder. Their forts had never been invested. Now, with a stroke of the pen the rich empire in the valley of the Mississippi was divided between England and Spain.

During all the nine years' war, but one event had, in any way, disturbed the French farmers, artisans, nobles, priests, lead mine operators and slaves, in the Mississippi valley. After the famous expulsion from Acadie (Nova Scotia) whose story is told in Evangeline, heart-broken refugees, many separated from kindred and friends, found new homes in every French village from

The Story of Evangeline

The Spirit of La Salle Expressed in Stone

La Salle was a bold, determined man who had wider visions and bigger dreams than the other Frenchmen in America. This statue expresses the spirit of the explorer in its resolute, determined pose and eyes that seem to be gazing into the future. The pistol and sword tell of the dangerous work La Salle undertook—traversing a vast, trackless region where white men had never before set foot. La Salle's provisions and supplies were stolen and destroyed more than once in his attempts to reach the mouth of the Mississippi, so we see him here in suitable, durable clothing which would last the length of his journey. His coat is of leather, and probably his breeches are of leather too. The long, flaring-topped leggings that he wears were called "sherryvallies," and are also of leather. His pistol and sword are slipped in a wide leather belt or girdle, at just the right point to always be within easy reach of his right hand. This statue is in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

New Orleans to Cahokia, Illinois, opposite the present site of St. Louis. In her search for her lover, Gabriel, Evangeline went up, "past the Ohio's mouth," westward into the wild Ozarks, up the Ohio and Wabash to Detroit and, after the war, around by water to the convent in Philadelphia.

How eloquent that story is of the entire possession by the French of the St. Lawrence and Mississippi valleys; how secure their hold on scores of tribes of Indians. Nowhere would that wandering damoiselle be in danger. In dozens of little chapels she told her beads, and in the graveyard sanctuaries in the shadow of the cross she

Sat by some nameless grave and
thought that perhaps in its bosom,
He was already at rest, and she
longed to slumber beside him.

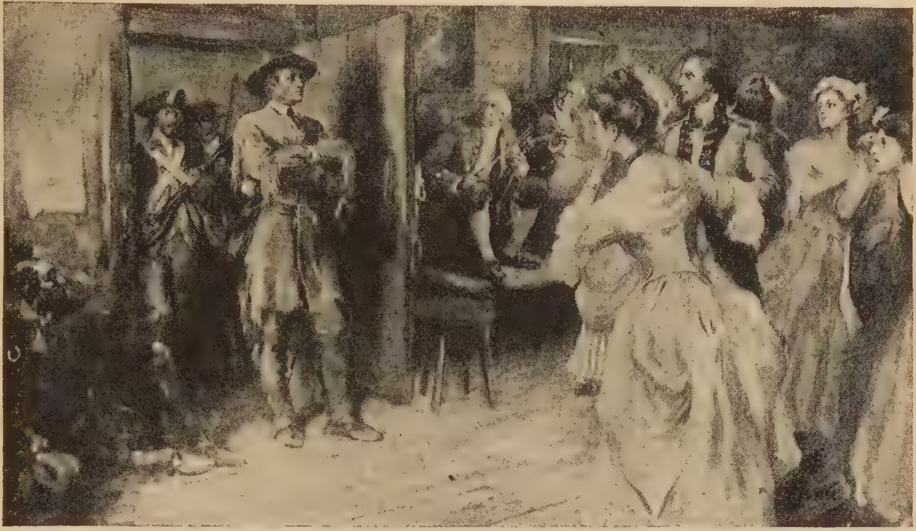
Priest and trader, coureur de bois and friendly Algonquin aided her in her search, watched over her weary footsteps on the wild trails, and carried her in canoes up and down hundreds of miles of waterways. At no later period of pioneer history in that region could a young girl have made such a journey in safety.

It was French people in Illinois who founded the new trading post at St. Louis. This was in Spanish territory on the west bank of the river; but it was settled by the French, named for the King of France, and an ex-commandant of Fort Chartres was made first governor of Upper Louisiana by the Spanish monarch. Later the country was receded to France, and in 1803 Louisiana was bought by the United States.

Memories of the French

The French were thus in America nearly two centuries, furnishing the most heroic and romantic chapter in our history of exploration and colonization. They seem to have vanished, like a dream, but really they are still here. Along the St. Lawrence, in Canada, there are now 2,000,000 French-speaking people, living in their quaint, farm villages: "Such as the peasants of Normandy built in the reigns of the Henrys." In New Orleans, along the lower Mississippi, in St. Louis, and in a few villages in Illinois, are thousands more, and French names are common around the Great Lakes. And on all the waterways traversed by their explorers, missionaries, voyagers and nobles, we find the names of French kings, saints, cities and heroes of the American wilderness.

The Legend of the Kaskaskia Ball



Kaskaskia was a backwoods town in the Illinois country held by a few Creoles and Indians under the command of British officers. The British control of the northwest territory was a constant menace to the Americans during our War of Independence. So George Rogers Clark set out with his little force from Virginia, to drive them from the Illinois country in order to put a stop to the Indian outrages, which were encouraged by the British, as well as to gain the territory for the Americans.

The story goes that the gay Creoles of Kaskaskia were having a dance when Clark's little force came up. Everyone in the village, including the English officers and the guards, were said to be making merry when Colonel Clark walked into the rude log cabin that served for a ballroom, accompanied only by his guide and one or two others. He said nothing, but stood with folded arms looking upon the strange scene before him—handsome Creole beauties in ancient ball dresses belonging to their grandmothers in France, dancing with moccasined backwoodsmen to the tune of the lively fiddles scraped by a couple of old Frenchmen on a platform; swarthy Indians and trim English officers mingling with the French inhabitants; while the rude ballroom with its puncheon floor and rough walls resounded with the music and merriment.

Clark was unobserved for a few moments, so the tale runs, then an Indian saw the stern stranger and suspected who he was, for the people of Kaskaskia had been expecting an attack from the Americans, but since it had not come at once they had forgotten to watch for it. The picture shows the Indian in the background, uttering his war whoop which startles dancers and fiddlers alike. The English officer in the foreground looks very angry. The ladies, naturally, are terrified. Clark's posture is typical of the man—undaunted and determined. The story goes that he calmly bade the people go on with the dance, but to remember that they were now enjoying themselves under the flag of Virginia, not of Great Britain. Before the officers could make any resistance, Clark's men, who were waiting outside, rushed in, alarmed by the Indian's war whoop. The English, of course, were completely overpowered and captured.

The true story of the capture, however, you will find in Clark's Memoirs—how the Americans found the town unguarded and, guided by a friendly Frenchman whom they had captured, went straight to the commander's house and seized him as he was lying in bed, wholly unprepared for an attack. After that the garrison and people, who were at heart friendly to the Americans, surrendered without the firing of a shot.

But the romantic story of the ball serves its purpose in giving us a clearer idea, than any dry account could do, of the nature and customs of the people then living in the Illinois country.

Henry of Navarre

Now glory to the Lord of hosts, from whom all glories are!
And glory to our Sovereign Liege, King Henry of Navarre!
Now let there be the merry sound of music and of dance,
Through thy corn-fields green, and sunny vines, oh pleasant land of France!
And thou, Rochelle, our own Rochelle, proud city of the waters,
Again let rapture light the eyes of all thy mourning daughters.
As thou wert constant in our ills, be joyous in our joy,
For cold, and stiff, and still are they who wrought thy walls annoy.
Hurrah! hurrah! a single field hath turned the chance of war,
Hurrah! hurrah! for Ivry, and King Henry of Navarre.

Oh! how our hearts were beating, when at the dawn of day
We saw the army of the League drawn out in long array;
With all its priest-led citizens, and all its rebel peers,
And Appenzel's stout infantry, and Egmont's Flemish spears.
There rode the brood of false Lorraine, the curses of our land!
And dark Mayenne was in the midst, a truncheon in his hand!
And as we looked on them, we thought of Seine's empurpled flood,
And good Coligni's hoary hair all dabbled with his blood;
And we cried unto the living God, who rules the fate of war,
To fight for his own holy name, and Henry of Navarre.

The King is come to marshal us, in all his armor drest,
And he has bound a snow-white plume upon his gallant crest.
He looked upon his people, and a tear was in his eye;
He looked upon the traitors, and his glance was stern and high.
Right graciously he smiled on us, as rolled from wing to wing,
Down all our line, a deafening shout, "God save our Lord, the King!"
"And if my standard-bearer fall, as fall full well he may,
For never saw I promise yet of such a bloody fray,
Press where ye see my white plume shine, amidst the ranks of war,
And be your oriflamme to-day the helmet of Navarre."

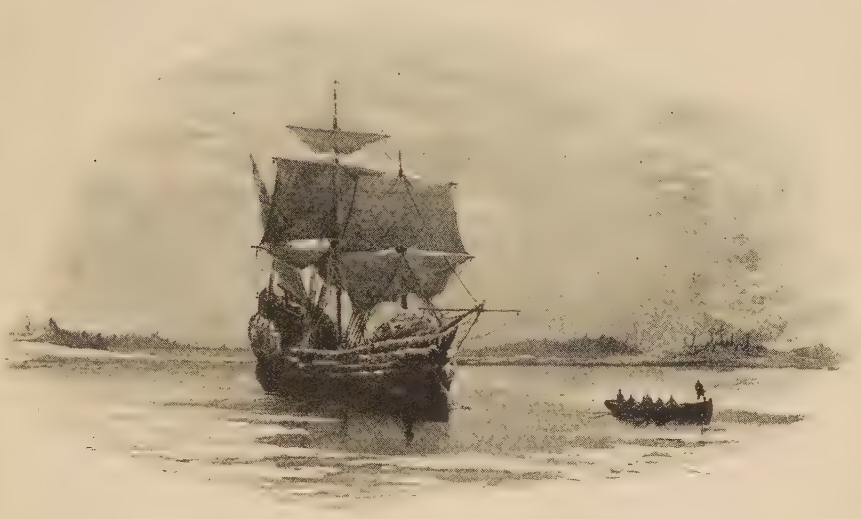
Hurrah! the foes are moving. Hark to the mingled din
Of fife, and steed, and trump and drum, and roaring culverin!
The fiery Duke is pricking fast across Saint André's plain,
With all the hireling chivalry of Guelders and Almayne.
Now by the lips of those you love, fair gentlemen of France,
Charge for the Golden Lilies now—upon them with the lance!
A thousand spurs are striking deep, a thousand spears in rest,
A thousand knights are pressing close behind the snow-white crest;
And in they burst, and on they rushed, while, like a guiding star,
Amidst the thickest carnage blazed the helmet of Navarre.

Now, God be praised, the day is ours! Mayenne hath turned his rein.
D'Aumale hath cried for quarter. The Flemish Count is slain.
Their ranks are breaking like thin clouds before a Biscay gale;
The field is heaped with bleeding steeds, and flags, and cloven mail;
And then, we thought on vengeance, and all along our van,
"Remember St. Bartholomew," was passed from man to man;
But out spake gentle Henry, "No Frenchman is my foe;
Down, down with every foreigner, but let your brethren go."
Oh! was there ever such a knight, in friendship or in war,
As our Sovereign Lord, King Henry, the soldier of Navarre!

Ho! maidens of Vienna; Ho! matrons of Lucerne!
Weep, weep, and rend your hair for those who never shall return.
Ho! Philip, send for charity, thy Mexican pistoles,
That Antwerp monks may sing a mass for thy poor spearman's souls!
Ho! gallant nobles of the League, look that your arms be bright!
Ho! burghers of Saint Genevieve, keep watch and ward to-night!
For our God hath crushed the tyrant, our God hath raised the slave,
And mocked the counsel of the wise, and the valor of the brave.
Then glory to his holy name, from whom all glories are;
And glory to our Sovereign Lord, King Henry of Navarre!

LORD MACAULAY

The Homebuilders of the North Atlantic Seaboard



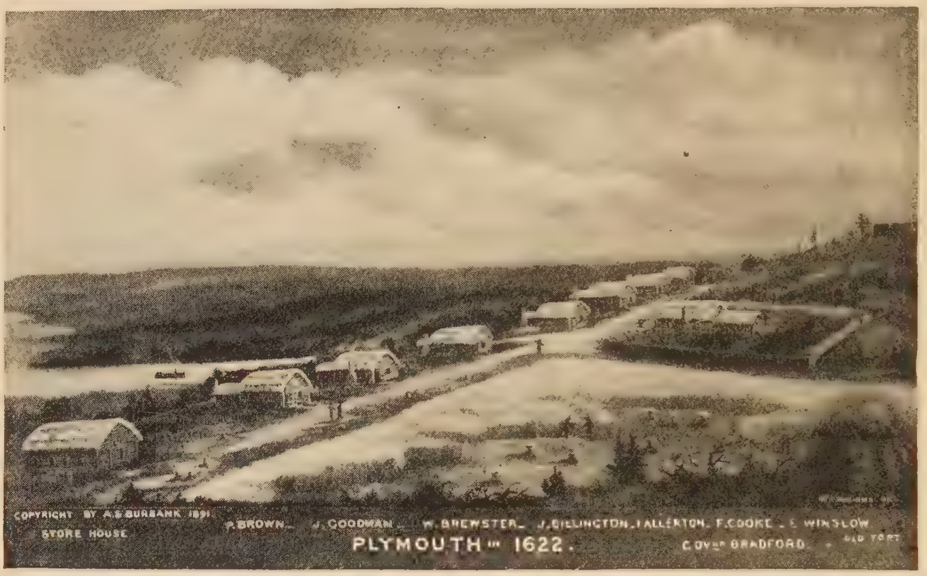
When the Puritans Lived in Their Ship

The Mayflower reached America in the fall of 1620, you remember, but Plymouth, the place decided upon for a permanent settlement, was not found until December 21st, and the Pilgrims did not have houses built on shore so that they could leave the Mayflower for good and all until March 31, 1621. During that long severe winter the Mayflower was home to the women and children who came on shore only during the daytime, while the men were very busy building shelters and defenses for their families.

Here we see a party of men leaving the ship for their work on the land. The Mayflower is encrusted and surrounded with ice, but safely anchored in the protecting harbor of Plymouth. Plymouth beach can be seen in the distance. The Pilgrims chose this place to anchor because the bay was full of crab and lobster and fish. If you have ever visited this bay you will not recognize it from the picture, for today the shores are crowded and busy with shipping and manufactures, not lonely and wooded as in the Pilgrims' time.

WE HAVE seen how the Spanish and French dared everything in the New World, explored far, won vast empires—and lost them. Behind them were no irresistible movements of people to sweep everything before them and possess the continent such as we find in the English colonies. These colonies spread along the North Atlantic seaboard from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Florida. On this shore broke wave after wave of migration, not only from England but from every country of northern Europe. In reading the history of the Thirteen Colonies we find our interest centered, not in kings and their policies or in romantic adventurers, but in people, and how they dealt with their strange and terrifying experiences. It will help us to understand the later history of our country to know something of these colonists—their characters, origins, race traits and ideals, and how they

Modest Homes of the Pilgrims



When you visit Plymouth, Massachusetts, today and walk up Leyden Street, you are going over the only street there was in the town at the time shown in this picture—1622. The house at the extreme left was built first. The food of the colonists was stored in this building and everybody ate and slept there while the other modest little houses were being built. Next to it in order are the houses of Brown, Goodman, Brewster, Billington, Allerton, Cooke and Winslow. Governor Bradford lived in the large house across the street. The stockade around it was made of upright, pointed logs and was a defense against the arrows of the Indians, though it wouldn't have been much protection against bullets. The houses were of rough hewn timber with roofs of thatch and windows of oiled paper. The chimneys of the fireplaces, as you see, ran up on the outside, and were of stones held in place with clay. On the hill can be seen the fort which at first was used as a meeting-house. At the mouth of the "very sweet brook" behind the houses, the shallop of the Mayflower is anchored.

were affected by their experiences and neighbors in America.

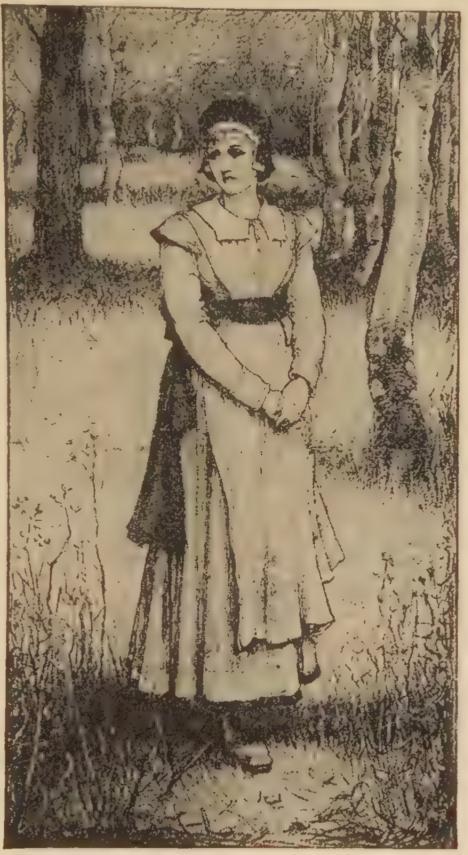
The Anglicizing of Many Peoples

Melting Pot of the Nations

We are apt to think of all the English colonists as Puritans. But there were few Puritans outside of New England, and even there, were many other sorts of people. Pennsylvania was settled by English Quakers; Maryland by English Catholics; Virginia by English "gentlemen"; Georgia by poor debtors ransomed out of English prisons by a benevolent company. Then, New York and the Jersey shore of the Hudson were colonized by the Dutch; Delaware by the Swedes, and the Carolinas first of all by Huguenots—French Puritans. Pennsylvania, the Carolinas and Georgia, when still young colonies, had large migrations of Germans; and into every settlement, from Massachusetts to Virginia, after 1700, poured such numbers of Scotch-Irish that, in many places they outnumbered those of English birth. In the beginning, as it is today, the United States was a "melting pot" of nations, receiving people from many lands. Long before the Revolutionary War these various people had become blended into a new English-speaking nation, quite different from any in the Old World, and were consciously working toward a common destiny, a larger freedom than any of them had ever known.

They all figured in our history, giving us Colonial leaders, Indian fighters, Revolutionary patriots, statesmen, presidents and pioneers. The Adamses and Benjamin Franklin were of New England Puritan, Washington of Virginia "gentleman" stock. Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Patrick Henry and Daniel Webster were Scotch-Irish; Van Buren and Roosevelt, New York Dutch. General Francis Marion was a Huguenot. William Penn was an English Quaker with a Dutch mother. Garfield's mother, that brave lady of the backwoods of Ohio, was the daughter of a Huguenot minister. "Dolly" Madison, the most beautiful and gracious of all the mistresses of the White House, was a Quaker; and one authority says that Priscilla Mullins, the heroine of the pretty story of "The Courtship of Miles Standish," was a French-speaking Belgian. The name sounds English but it may have been corrupted from the French Moulin. The Pilgrims, you know, lived in Holland eleven years before coming to America. And some of the men married Dutch and Belgian wives which they brought over in the Mayflower.

Rose Standish

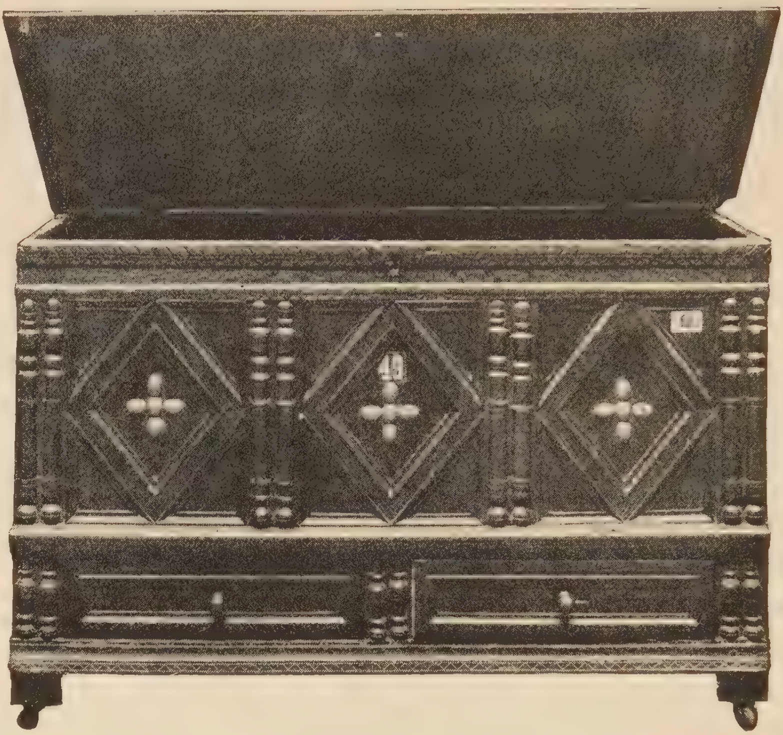


This is Rose Standish, first wife of the famous military leader of Plymouth Colony. After her death Captain Standish married her sister, Barbara. The story of the Courtship of Miles Standish in Longfellow's poems is one of those pretty romances of history that have no foundation in fact.

All these people were as upright and independent as the Puritans, and were marked by the same courage, energy and determination. There was nothing in this wild land of privation and struggle to attract the vicious and weakling. Any but the stoutest hearts would have been daunted by the ten weeks' voyage of the Pilgrims across the stormy North Atlantic. In the pest-hole of a little wooden ship, half the brave company were infected with tuberculosis, and were soon laid away in the forlorn graveyard of Plymouth. And that experience was not unique. Fully half the first settlers at Jamestown, Virginia, died of malarial fever, and the colony was all but wiped out by famine and hostile Indians.

Yet ship after ship full of brave immigrants came to the bleak and sterile coast of New England, and

Where the Standishes Kept Their "Sunday Best"



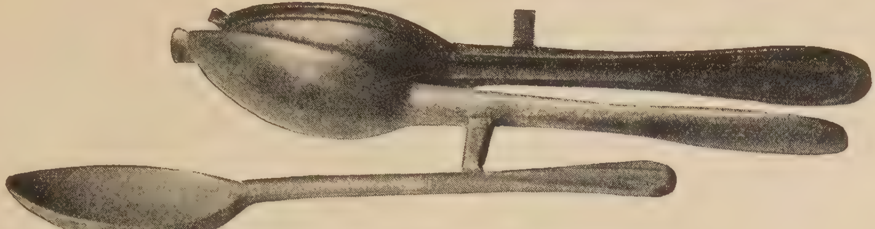
Instead of the plain iron and leather affairs we use today to carry our clothes in when we go traveling, Rose Standish packed the family's best garments in this lovely, carved, oak chest when they came over here in the Mayflower. It is in the style known as "Jacobean." Jacobean furniture and architecture were common in England during the reign of James I, in the early part of the 17th century. This style was marked by paneling, geometric designs, and spindle or pillar decoration, all of which you see on this chest. The split spindles, which show that the chest was made in the latter part of the Jacobean period, divide the face of it into panels, which are ornamented with the geometric diamond-shaped design. You will notice by the grain of the wood that the cover is all in one piece. This and the two drawers at the bottom were also common in Jacobean chests. We may be sure that the casters have been added later—that Miles Standish never possessed such convenient little implements for moving his chest about.

to the low, hot, swampy tide-water belt of the South. Virginia had four thousand inhabitants when Plymouth was settled in 1620, and twenty thousand colonists were landed in Boston and Salem before 1640. All the colonies were settled and the earlier ones became populous, in the seventy-five years between 1607 and 1682.

The Steady Westward March

Unlike the Spanish and French, who returned to Europe oftener than they remained in America, these immigrants turned their backs definitely on the Old World. Wasting little time in exploration or treasure-seeking, they set about the sober business of building homes and getting their living from the soil, the forest and the sea. Settling on every good harbor and navigable stream, they held fast to every foot of ground won by hardship, toil and danger, and pushed steadily westward. It took them another hundred years to gain the crest of the mountains which walled them on the west from Maine to Georgia.

The Pewter Spoons and the Spoon Molds



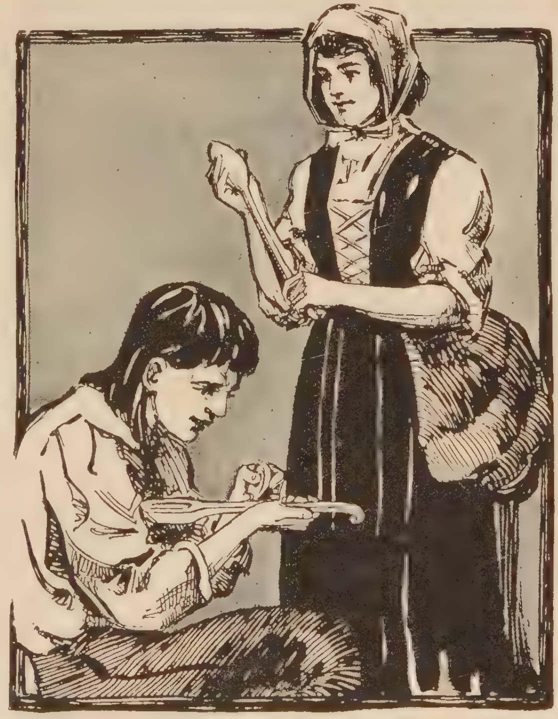
Pewter was a variable alloy of tin and lead or brass. It was used by the Romans, and in the Middle Ages, before china and glass became cheap, nearly all dishes and utensils were made from it. At first it was expensive and only the rich could afford it, but by the time of the American colonial period it was found in every kitchen. Yet by that time china and glass were beginning to be used by those who could afford them. Pewter utensils were made by pouring the molten metal into a mold like this spoon mold and pressing it into shape. Notice what a big bowl and straight handle this old pewter spoon has. Like all true antiques, real old pewter ware is rare and very valuable nowadays.

But, twenty years after the Revolution, the seaboard was crowded with three million people, and the surplus population was swarming through all the water gaps into the Mississippi Valley. And they soon bought Louisiana, and sent their explorers through old French and Spanish territory to their new boundary in the Rocky Mountains.

The Foundations of a Free Land

Most of the early colonists to what is now the Atlantic Coast of the United States, came for the same reason as the Pilgrims: for "freedom to worship God" in their own way. They differed widely in their creeds, but all had suffered persecution for their faith. It was a turbulent time in religious history of Europe. Following the Renaissance, or "New Birth" of literature, art and science in Columbus' day, came the Reformation, when the countries of northern Europe and Switzerland separated from the Roman Catholic Church and set up Protestant churches of their own. In Catholic France there were a half million

A New Set of Spoons



When mother wanted a new set of spoons in the days of the Home Builders, getting them wasn't quite so simple a matter as it is today. Instead of going to a jewelry store, she sent Johnny into the woods, where he got just the right kind of wood for making wooden spoons. Then, as you see, she helped him make them. As you know, we use wooden spoons in the kitchen today. Ask your mother why.

Huguenots, and thousands of Scotch Presbyterians were colonized in North Ireland, a Catholic country. These were the Scotch-Irish, who later emigrated to America in such numbers.

Story of the Sugar Bowl, the Tea Party, and the Prince Who Didn't Know What to Do

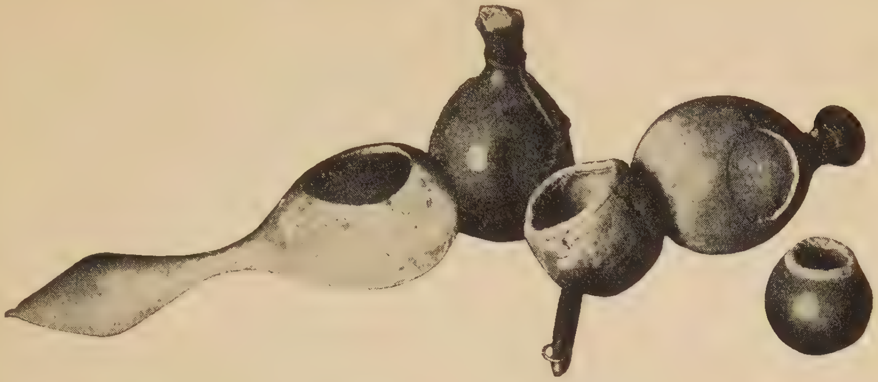
If mother had owned that sugar bowl and those sugar tongs in the days of the Home Builders, it would have meant that you were pretty rich and could give tea parties. Only rich people could afford sugar in those days and loaf sugar was the most expensive of all. Those sugar tongs, you notice, are not like the sugar tongs we have today. They were made for cutting off sugar lumps from the sugar loaf.

The ladies of the Colonies used to give their tea parties in the big front room on the second floor and so it was referred to by fashionable people as the "tea room," while those who were not so fashionable called it "the parlor." When mother gave a tea party she presided at the table while the guests were scattered around the room and the servants took them tea, rusks and cake, and often fruit and wine.

Good manners required that the hostess should keep asking a guest to have more tea, or a helping of anything else, every time a cup or a plate was empty, and it was considered rude for a guest to refuse. This custom used to puzzle foreigners who were not familiar with it and a certain French prince who visited the United States shortly after the Revolution, tells in one of his letters he was invited to dine at the beautiful home of Robert Morris, where he was asked to have his tea cup refilled over and over again. When he had swallowed the twelfth cup, his neighbor, seeing that he was becoming more and more embarrassed, whispered to him that if he had had quite enough he should put his spoon across his cup, or else his hostess would be obliged to go on urging him to drink until the family supply of suger and tea gave out, or the well went dry.

In Europe there were nearly two centuries of religious wars. The kings of Spain and France as "defenders of the faith" of Rome, made war on heretics in their own and other lands. Spain carried the war into her provinces of The Netherlands where dwelt the Dutch and Belgians, and threatened England. Then France took up the quarrel when England drove the Catholic Stuart kings into exile. And when the Protestants split up into many sects and began to persecute each other, there was no security or peace for anyone. Puritans, Catholics, Church of England people, Scotch and Scotch-Irish Presbyterians, Quakers, and Baptists were each, in turn, driven from the British Isles. Moravians and Mennonites were exiled from Germany, and Huguenots from France. In all Europe there was only one small refuge for the persecuted of all sects. This was The Netherlands, or Dutch Republic. Through that little country, northern Europe, for a hundred and fifty

Dippers That Grew in the Garden



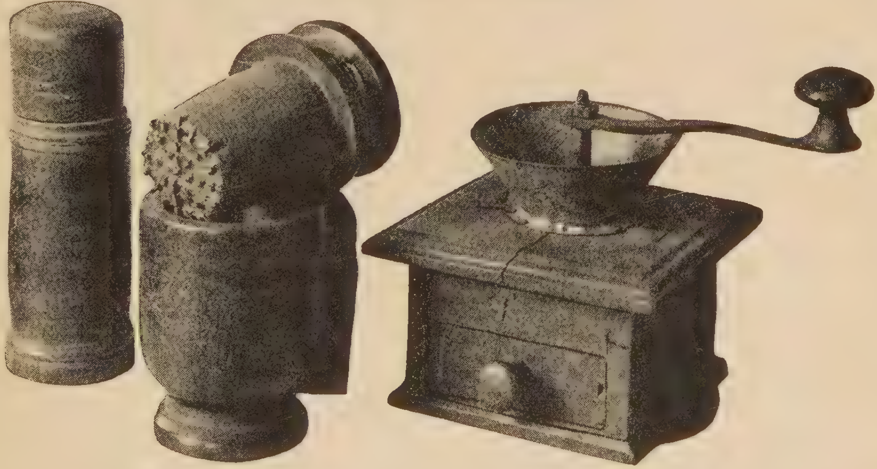
Manufactured articles were at a premium in the rough, new land and every family made as much of its household equipment as it could. Gourds have tough, woody fruit, suitable for dippers when they are hollowed out as you see them here. Some farms still have an old, open well with one of these queer, home-made dippers hanging above it—and oh, how good the cool, fresh water tastes from it on a hot summer day!

years, drained its best and bravest into the English colonies in America.

Learning Toleration from the Dutch

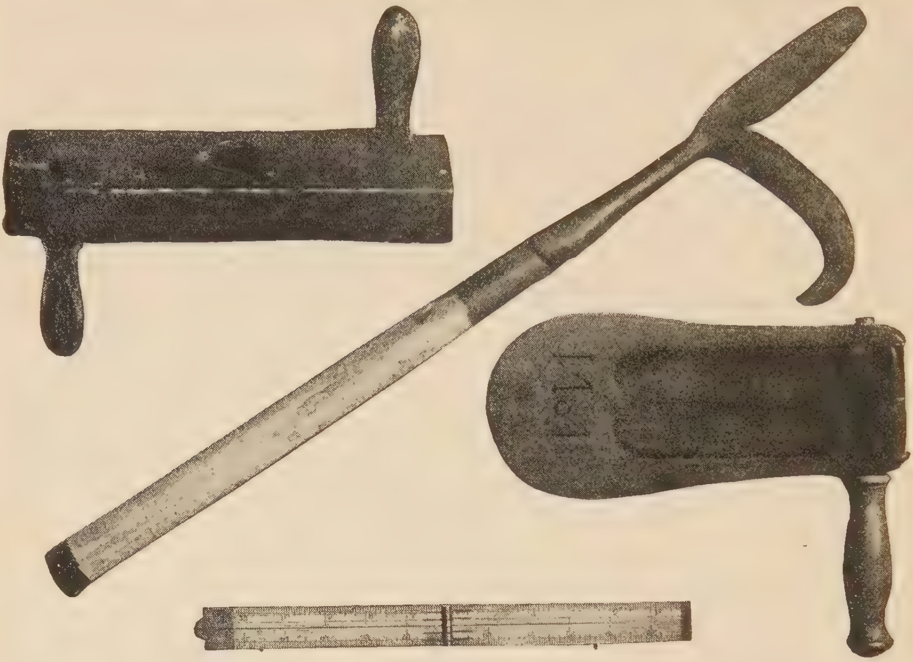
It was in Holland that the Pilgrims and many other colonists learned toleration of other peoples' opinions. As long as the little company of the Mayflower was in control in Plymouth, there was freedom of conscience for all Christian sects. So there was in Connecticut and

The Colonists and Their Spice Mills



During the Crusades, Europeans learned to like Eastern spices, and a lively spice trade sprang up between Europe and the Orient. The spices made their long journey across Asia by caravan and then across the Mediterranean on sailing vessels. The journey was so long that the spices were expensive and only the rich people could afford to use them in food, but they were considered very delicious and were in great demand. So we are not surprised to find these spice mills in the kitchen of a wealthy New England merchant, for by the time the English colonies in America were established, spice was being brought from the West Indies as well as around Cape of Good Hope and by the old caravan route from the East. Two of these old spice mills are metal "querns" similar to the stone hand mill for grinding flour, of which we show you a picture elsewhere. The upper part, corresponding to the upper stone of the quern, has projections for cutting and crushing the spice, as you see. The lower part is a true dish or bowl, instead of the flat, hollowed-out stone we see in the quern. The spice mill on the right is similar to our present day kitchen coffee mills.

From the Outfit of the Night Watchman



Here is a hook and two of the kinds of "police whistles" used by night watchmen in colonial times. It was the duty of these night watchmen to go their rounds, all through the night, to call out the hour from time to time and to add the words, "All is well." But sometimes all wasn't well. There were burglars and street fights in those days just as there are today, and when the watchmen wanted help they called for it by swinging one of those rattles round and round. They made a clattering noise that everybody understood. The hook he carried to defend himself, if necessary, and also to lengthen his arm, so to speak, when he wanted to catch a man.

The Puritans and Public Opinion

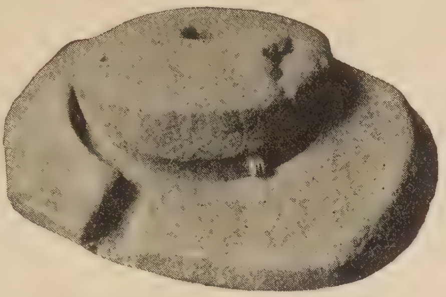
Rhode Island, Quaker Pennsylvania, Dutch New York and English Georgia. The Puritans of Boston and Salem, coming directly from England, denied this principle. Only members of their church were allowed to vote. They persecuted the Quakers and drove out everyone who differed from them. But, in time, the Puritans had to yield to the steady pressure of public opinion. In every colony were people who insisted on liberty of conscience. Old, worn-out notions of European monarchies, tyranny in any form, would not work in America.

The people who came here were tired of being told what to believe and what to do. Besides, they were obliged to act for themselves. There were problems of existence to be solved at once, of which king and parliament could know nothing. The fullest liberty of action was needed if they were not to perish in the wilds of America. In every colony were people who knew just what to do in setting up an orderly, self-governing community, for they had studied the free institutions of The Netherlands. They had seen the seven Dutch states united into a strong republic, with the separate states and cities managing their own local affairs, and securing peace, justice, toleration and prosperity.

Dutch ideas worked like yeast in all the English colonies. The spirit of independence was in the cabin of the Mayflower. Expecting to land in Virginia, the Pilgrims found themselves without authority on Cape Cod. But that did not trouble them. They drew up and signed a proper agreement by which they governed and defended themselves for the next seventy years. While the colony was small, laws were passed and questions decided in the Town Meeting. Later the New England colonies had Assemblies, to which each settlement sent delegates. But they still kept the town meetings for local questions.

The First Town Meetings

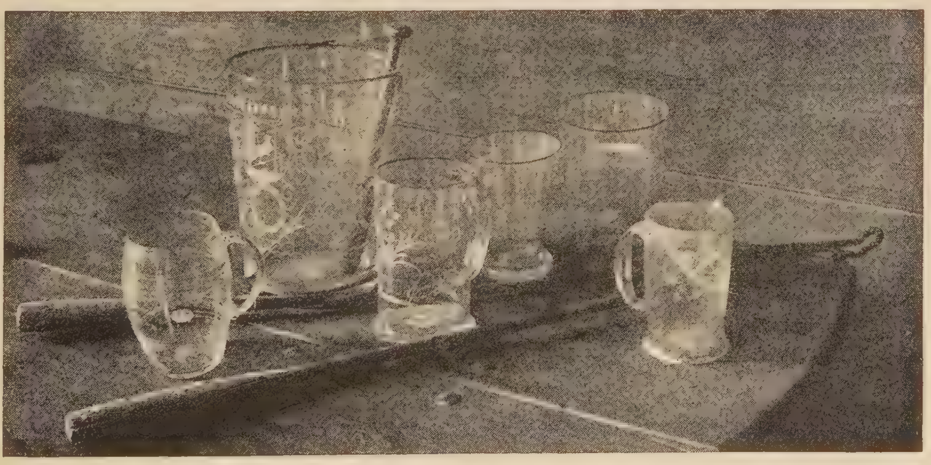
This is a Whole Flour Mill



This is one of the stone hand mills or querns used by the English colonists. Wheat was poured through the hole in the center of the top stone. Two handles were fitted into the holes and the top stone turned upon the lower. The stone was turned back and forth and not round and round. In this way two persons—two of the children, for example—could operate the mill together. The product of this mill was what we today call "whole wheat" flour. Hand mills like this are still in use in out-of-the-way places in Scotland and Ireland.

The colonists who went out from Boston to Rhode Island, at first managed their own affairs, and then secured a liberal charter from the king. The people who walked through the woods from Boston to the Connecticut Valley formed a republic of three settlements and adopted a constitution. All citizens were given the vote, and the monarch's name was not mentioned. The king signed this charter and then, advised that this was dangerous both in method and doc-

The Glassware in Colonial Homes



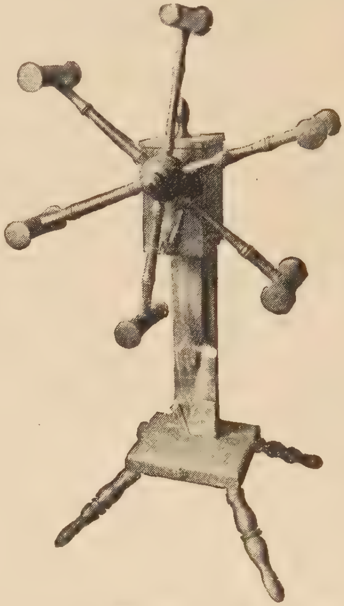
Glass was first made in the Orient and from there it was brought to Europe. For many years Venice led the world in the production of beautiful glass, and even today, in spite of our improved methods of manufacture, old Venetian glass is considered very choice. But England soon developed a thriving glass industry of her own, and English colonists in America were not content to import their glassware from England but set up glass works of their own. The glass in the picture was made in Massachusetts before the Revolution. Some of it is etched with steel or diamond instruments. It is thick, but clear and colorless. The variously shaped glasses were for different beverages—the smaller ones for the drinking of liquors which were taken in small quantities, the large engraved one for toddies. A toddy stirring rod is stuck in this toddy glass. The long iron rods were flip irons, for "flipping" glasses of liquor—that is, heating them by thrusting in the iron heated red hot in the fire.

trine, demanded that the document be surrendered. You know what happened. The paper was hidden in the hollow of an oak tree to be brought out and used again when the king's plan of uniting all the colonies down to Pennsylvania under a royal governor, had to be abandoned. The people of Boston put Governor Andros in jail and shipped him home because he abolished the Assemblies and levied what taxes he pleased. When Governor Andros was gone, Connecticut and Rhode Island resumed their charters.

Resisting the Charter Governors

Clashes with authority were frequent in every colony, and the office of a royal, proprietary, or company charter governor was seldom a pleasant one. A governor could veto measures and even dismiss Assemblies, but the legislatures could bring him to terms by refusing to vote him a salary. The Dutch of New York, under English rule, refused to pay taxes or elect officers until popular government was restored. South Carolina and Maryland both languished and grew turbulent under tyrannical rule, and were revived only by restoring a larger measure of liberty. In Virginia a serious rebellion against Governor Berkeley was led by Nathaniel Bacon. Pennsylvania had a tranquil history because it was founded on the most liberal principles of self-government. Although settled more than sixty years later than Massachusetts and Virginia, Pennsylvania rapidly caught up with them in population and prosperity, and before the Revolution Philadelphia was the largest city in America.

A "Clock" That Counted the Skeins



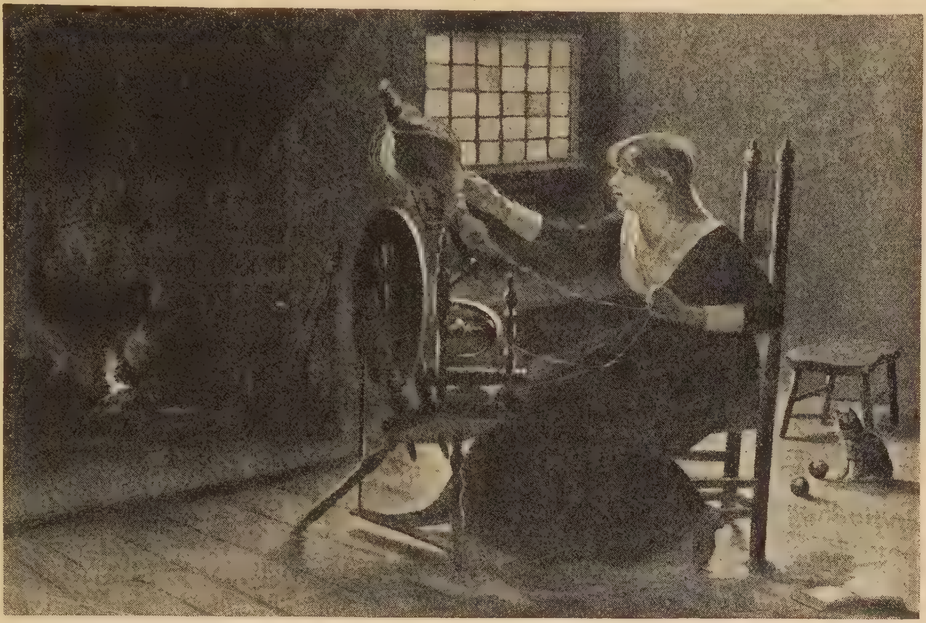
In the days when every housewife spun the yarn which was later woven or knitted into clothing for the family, this device for measuring and keeping track of it was used. It was called a "clock" reel because the number of revolutions of the reel, as the skein was wound, were recorded by that hand pointing to numbers on the circular face.

Now there was no conspiracy on the part of the separate colonies in this matter or in any other. Scattered along two thousand miles of seaboard there was, at first, little communication between them, and settled by widely differing people, who had quarreled bitterly in the Old World, they had, or thought they had, few interests in common. Each was isolated in a wilderness of woods and waters, and obliged to supply its own needs. But common experiences made them all more alike, and created sympathies. Practically all colonists were obliged to cultivate small farms which, for protection and for co-operation in many kinds of work, were cleared around a village of log houses, and a little stockaded fort. And, of course, there was always a church or two.

The Growth of Industries

All the grains and forage crops of Europe were grown, with the In-

Priscilla at Her Wheel



Do you remember how John Alden

"Heard, as he drew near the door, the musical voice of Priscilla
Singing the hundredth Psalm, the grand old Puritan anthem,

* * *

Then, as he opened the door, he beheld the form of the maiden
Seated beside her wheel, and the carded wool like a snow-drift
Piled at her knee, her white hands feeding the ravenous spindle,
While with her foot she guided the wheel in its motion.

* * *

She, the Puritan girl, in the solitude of the forest,
Making the humble house and the modest apparel of home-spun
Beautiful with her beauty, and rich with the wealth of her being!"

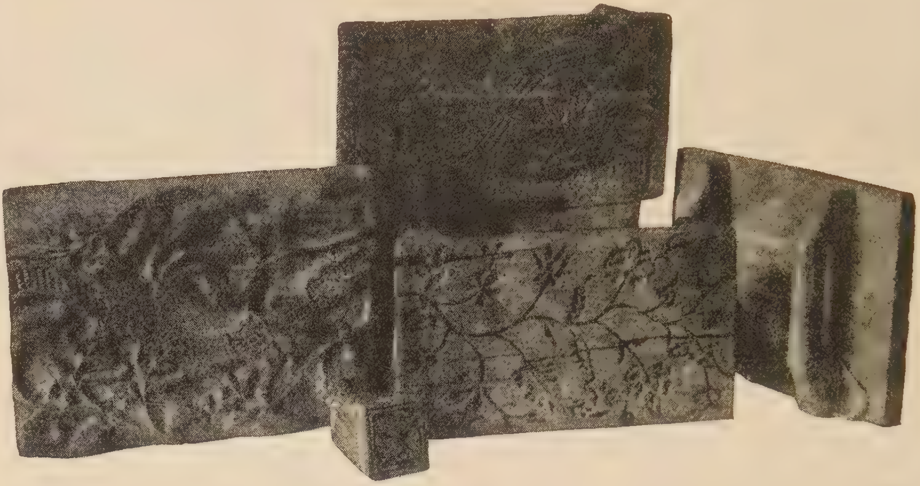
Longfellow: The Courtship of Miles Standish.

dian plants of corn, potatoes, pumpkins and tobacco. There were soon gardens and orchards and domestic animals. Sheep were imported into New England and Pennsylvania very early; and flax was grown in the North and cotton and hemp in the South. It was not long anywhere before spinning wheel and loom were busy in every cabin. But on every frontier, men and boys long wore the Indian hunting suits of deerskins.

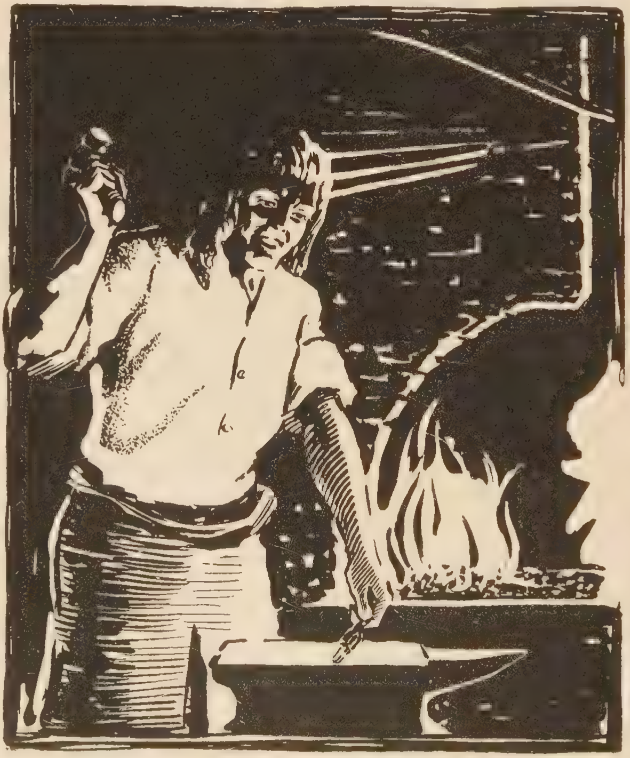
What Busy Homes Were These

Water and wind mills ground the grain and sawed logs into timbers and lumber, but most of the manufacturing was carried on in the homes, as was also the case in the Old Country. Until long after the Revolution all the commoner cloths, even heavy sail-cloth, were woven on hand looms, dyed and made into garments by the women of each household. Even such mansions as Mount Vernon had its weaving room managed by the mistress. Soap was made of waste fats and lye leached from wood ashes; sea-water was evaporated for salt; stone and oyster shells were burned for lime. Every village had a cooper and a tanner, but barrel staves were split out of white oak in the forest, and boots

How They Printed the Calico Prints



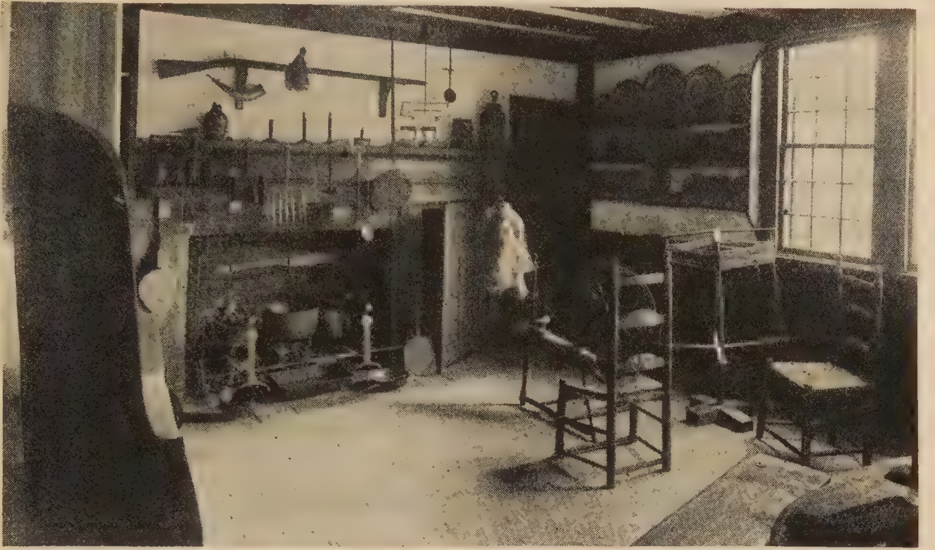
Ages ago the Egyptians printed calico by means of carved wooden blocks like these. The practice was brought to Europe from India in the seventeenth century. Many of the designs used in America in the early days of its settlement came from France and were very artistic indeed. In printing the cloth, it was stretched over a padded table and marked with chalk to indicate where the print block was to be applied. The blocks shown in the picture were dipped in the dye, then pressed on the cloth. The print block was squared with the pattern already printed each time and tapped smartly with a small mallet to make sure that it left a firm clear impression on the cloth.



Making Nails by Hand

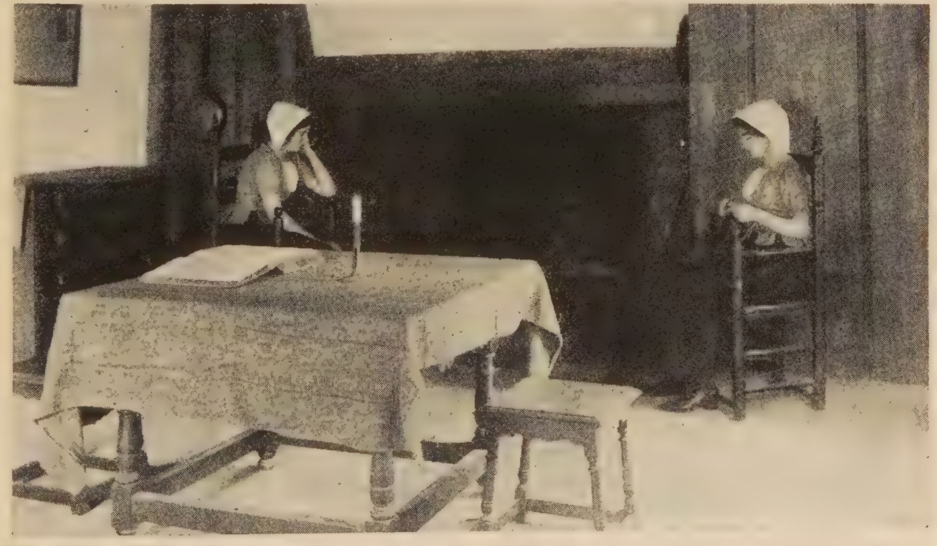
Whatever they didn't have in colonial days, people made for themselves, provided they needed it badly enough. Here you see a boy in a blacksmith shop, hammering out a nail. Nowadays nails are made from long rods which a machine chops up into proper lengths. They have their heads hammered on them, but this is done by machines that turn out nails at the rate of 1,000 per minute. The perfection of nail-making machinery is due largely to American invention and it was in colonial times when boys got so much "manual training" in the blacksmith shops and elsewhere that they developed the ingenuity that made us the great nation of inventors that we are. The first American patent for nail-making machinery, by the way, was taken out not so very long after the period when the blacksmith's apprentice used to shape them on the anvil.

In Great Grandmother's Kitchen



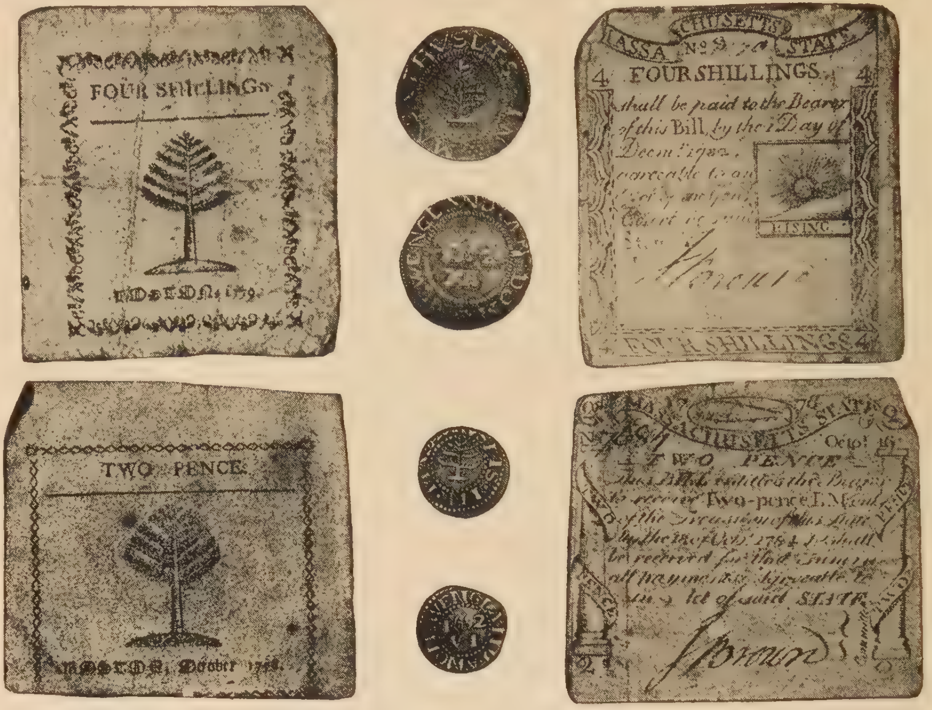
An American kitchen of 1750 looks quite different from a modern one, doesn't it? Instead of a gas jet or electric light, the 1750 kitchen was lighted by candles. The lantern on the mantel shelf is made of horn. The "flat irons" are brass shells into which the irons were thrust after having been heated in the coals. Above the flat irons are toasting irons for holding the bread before the fire. What a long handle that frying pan has! You see why, don't you? The blaze was so hot you didn't want to get any nearer to it than necessary. And, besides, frying things spit grease. At the right of the fireplace is a little chamber with a door to it. That is where mother made the spicy cookies and baked the bread. Leaning against the brick is a "peel," a sort of long, flat shovel for putting dishes into the oven and removing them. A bellows for blowing the fire hangs at the left of the fireplace.

In Mrs. Ward's Parlor



The parlor of the seventeenth century house is shown here exactly as it looked when John Ward lived in it, including the costumes of the two girls who are helping to bring the old scenes back to life. Notice the solid, substantial lines of the furniture, quite different from the slender Chippendale and Sheraton which became the vogue in the next century. The table cloth was called a "carpet" in 1684 and is made of hand-woven "woolsey." The open book is "The Whole Duty of Man," published in London in 1684.

The Money of Our Forefathers

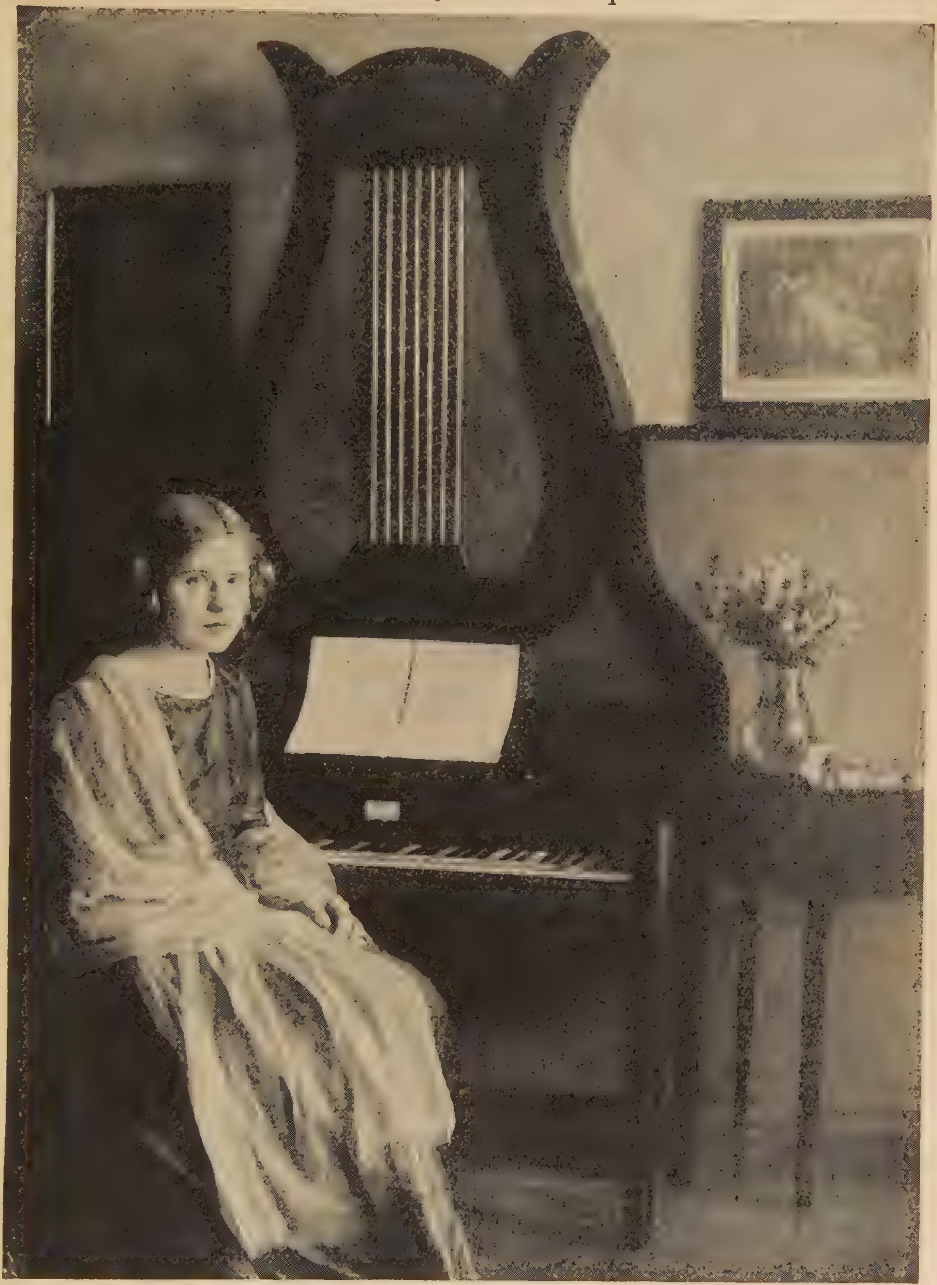


Perhaps you have heard the expression, "not worth a continental." It originated at the time when the paper money shown in this picture was in circulation. The Continental Congress issued this paper money and with it paid the soldiers, bought supplies, and met other indebtedness. Of course, pieces of paper issued by any government are not real money but simply promises to pay real money in gold or silver. Somewhat like promissory notes of a private individual. If the war failed, of course the Continental government would cease to exist and these promises would never be redeemed. As there were many times when it looked very much as if Great Britain would succeed in putting down her rebellious colonies, these promissory notes had very little value. The states also issued paper money. By 1779 when the four-shilling bill, which you see on the left, was issued by Massachusetts, it took twenty-eight of these bills to equal four shillings in coin. At that rate you would have needed a handful of them just to pay your street car fare down town. Those coins shown are made of silver and so are real money; that is to say, they have value in themselves.

and shoes for the family were cobbled on a bench in the chimney corner. All New England farmers had a small forge for hammering out nails and bolts from iron bars and they shod their own horses. No "Yankee," or Scotch-Irishman, or German bought anything he could contrive to make. In New England was developed a genius in the handicrafts that led to many useful inventions.

But these activities did not supply all needs. Every colony was obliged to find something to sell so that they could buy better clothing, furniture and building material abroad; and build churches, schools, roads and bridges. England was exactly like France and Spain in wanting from her colonies only the things which could not be grown or made at home; and to them she wished to sell her surplus manufactures and the luxuries of Europe and the East Indies. Virginia and Maryland found a profitable crop and a steady income in tobacco; the Carolinas in the naval stores of the pine woods—the pitch, tar, turpentine and resin

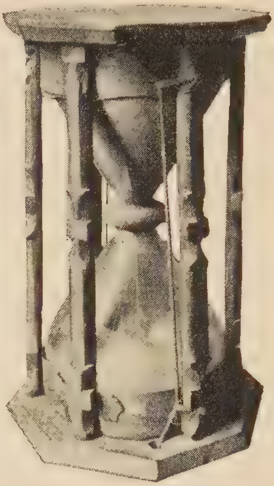
In the Days of the Spinet



The spinet was one of the favorite musical instruments of the time in our history when men wore wigs and ladies dressed their hair very high. The girl in the picture is not a Colonial maiden but a girl of today. The spinet, as you can see, developed out of the harp and was the beginning of our pianos. The strings were picked with a quill or plectrum which was caused to rise and fall as the keys were struck. The strings referred to were not those which you see in the picture which are simply part of the ornamental design.

so much needed in those days of wooden ships. The Carolinas and Georgia grew rice, indigo, and cotton. In all the southern colonies men of birth, wealth and education bought large plantations on the banks of the navigable rivers, and found an outlet for their ability and energy in developing and managing their landed estates. And in the Hudson River Valley rich Dutch merchants and aristocratic Englishmen colonized large grants of land, or "manors." The Dutch were few in number, and did little farming, devoting their talents to the rich fur trade of the Hudson and Mohawk valleys. In Pennsylvania, the Germans cultivated large farms in the Delaware and Schuylkill valleys, and shipped fine cavalry horses to the English army.

How the Preacher Knew When to Stop

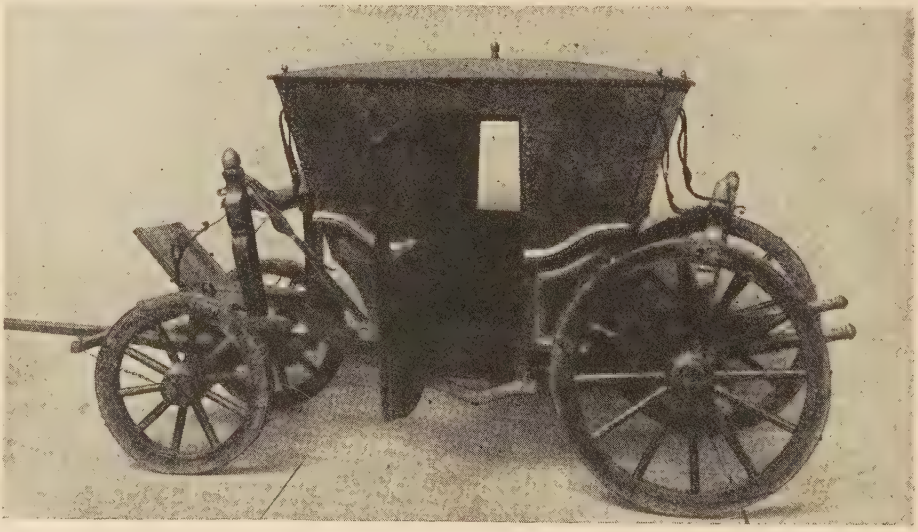


This pulpit glass stood at the right of the minister and told the clerk when the sermon had lasted for two hours. If the sermon was to be four hours long the clerk turned the glass over, but if two hours were all that the minister was to talk, the clerk rapped sharply three times and the minister finished his talk.

What the New Englanders Did

In New England, however, the climate was too severe, the soil too sterile to make farming on a large scale profitable. Living in villages, they cultivated what was needed at home, and some corn and peas to trade with the Indians for beaver skins. They also made wampum beads of shells, and wove woolen blankets. They built glass and salt works and iron furnaces to supply home needs.

The Family Coach in Penn's Day

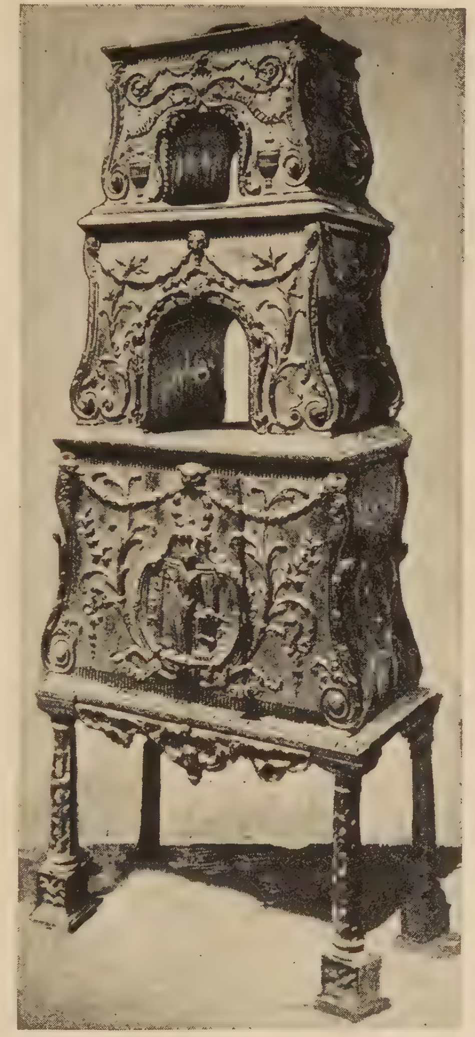


This is William Penn's family coach. You may see it among the historic relics in Independence Hall, Philadelphia. It is not so luxurious as were many other coaches in this time, because Penn was a Quaker and did not believe in display.

Every man, beside his farming, engaged in cod-fishing, whaling in the Arctics, lumbering in the Maine woods, or ship-building. They sold rum, cod-fish, salt meats, whale oil, boards, barrel staves, shoes, straw, fur, and felt hats, all the way from Labrador to the West Indies, and in England and Holland; and they brought back cotton, rice, sugar, molasses, naval stores, indigo, tobacco, and the manufactures of Europe. They also brought Spanish silver dollars from Cuba and melted and recoined them into pine-tree shillings and sixpences. Many of their ships they sold in London.

The growing trade of these bold New England sailors so alarmed the merchants of the mother country, that the English Parliament, in which the colonies had no representation, passed navigation acts. They required that all foreign goods for the colonies must pass through England, and no foreign vessel could trade with the colonies. This was so unjust that it led to smuggling of goods into and out of West Indian ports. And ships from New England sailed to Africa and engaged in the slave trade. Having to take many risks, to evade English laws and to escape capture and confiscation of cargoes by Barbary pirates and Spanish warships, the "old salts" of New England grew to be the most daring seamen and shrewdest traders on the ocean. Theirs were the naval victories in the wars with the French and their Indian allies.

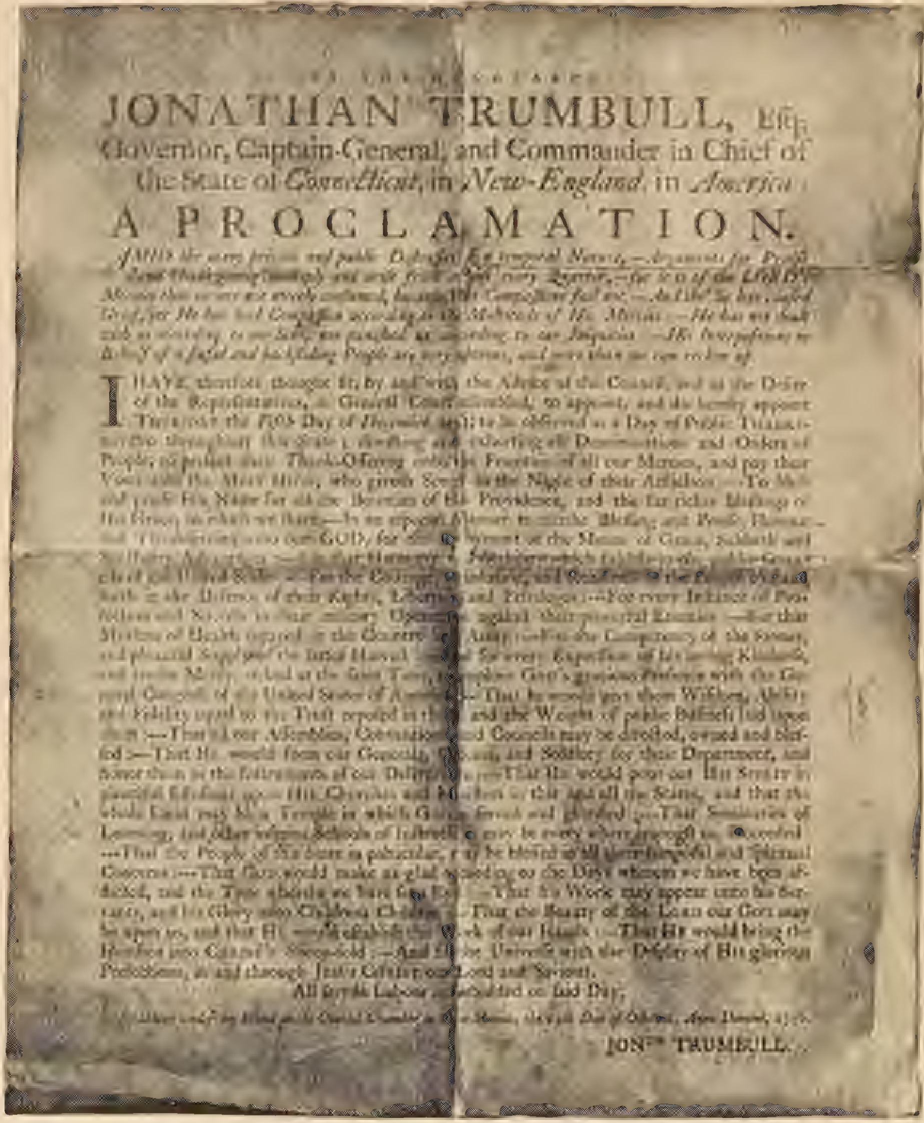
Where Virginia Lawmakers Warmed Themselves



In Colonial days most houses and public buildings were heated by enormous fireplaces in which great logs were burned, letting half the smoke out into the room and half the heat up the chimney. Stoves were rare and very expensive. This stove stood in the Virginia House of Burgesses. It is very highly ornamented, like a modern base-burner. It is a Dutch stove and has a hollow fire box opening into the bridge arrangements on top. The fire rests on iron bars at the bottom, through which the draft enters. This kind of stoves often became red hot and the heated air, passing from them out into the room, was full of poisonous gases, the products of combustion and contact with the heated iron.

The colonies of the North and South were settled by different breeds of men, in the first place. More peo-

An Old Thanksgiving Proclamation



JONATHAN TRUMBULL, Esq;
Governor, Captain-General, and Commander in Chief of
the State of *Connecticut*, in *New-England*, in *America*:

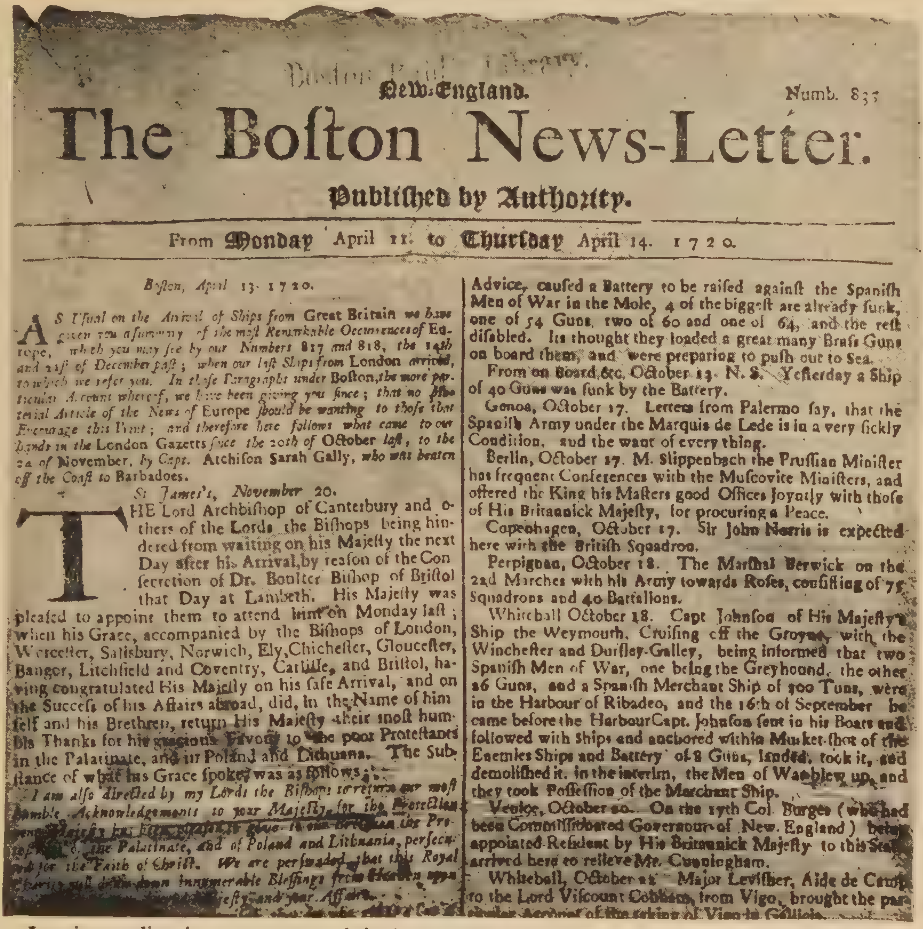
A PROCLAMATION.

JONᵀᴴ TRUMBULL.

As you see by this proclamation issued by Governor Trumbull of Connecticut in 1776, Thanksgiving Day was not observed on the last Thursday in November at that time as it usually is today. Plymouth Colony celebrated the first Thanksgiving after the harvest in 1621 and Thanksgiving Days were appointed after this at different times in New England and New York. Congress recommended a Thanksgiving Day yearly during the Revolutionary War, but there was no national appointment of the festival, each State issuing its own proclamation. At first Thanksgiving was observed almost exclusively in New England.

ple of the leisure class, of high birth, wealth and social distinction had gone into the region below Pennsylvania. Into the northern colonies had poured college-bred professional men, skilled workmen, farmers, and merchants. Climate, soil, and industries, made all these

What Colonial Newspapers Were Like



New-England. Numb. 835

The Boſton News-Letter.

Publiſhed by Authority.

From **Monday** April 11. to **Thurſday** April 14. 1720.

Boſton, April 13. 1720.

AS Uſual on the Arrival of Ships from Great Britain *we have given you a ſummary of the moſt Remarkable Occurrences of* Europe, *which you may ſee by our Numbers* 817 *and* 818, *the 14th and 21ſt of December paſt; when our laſt Ships from* London *arrived, to which we refer you. In thoſe Paragraphs under* Boſton, *the more particular Account whereof, we have been giving you ſince; that no Eſſential Article of the News of* Europe *ſhould be wanting to thoſe that Encourage this Print; and therefore here follows what came to our hands in the* London Gazetts *ſince the 20th of* October *laſt, to the 24 of* November, *by Capt.* Atchiſon Sarah Gally, *who was beaten off the Coaſt to* Barbadoes.

St James's, November 20.

THE Lord Archbiſhop of Canterbury and others of the Lords the Biſhops being hindered from waiting on his Majeſty the next Day after his Arrival, by reaſon of the Conſecration of Dr. Boulter Biſhop of Briſtol that Day at Lambeth. His Majeſty was pleaſed to appoint them to attend him on Monday laſt; when his Grace, accompanied by the Biſhops of London, Worceſter, Saliſbury, Norwich, Ely, Chicheſter, Glouceſter, Bangor, Litchfield and Coventry, Carliſle, and Briſtol, having congratulated His Majeſty on his ſafe Arrival, and on the Succeſs of his Affairs abroad, did, in the Name of himſelf and his Brethren, return His Majeſty their moſt humble Thanks for his gracious Favour to the poor Proteſtants in the Palatinate, and in Poland and Lithuania. The Subſtance of what his Grace ſpoke was as follows:

I am alſo directed by my Lords the Biſhops to return our moſt humble Acknowledgements to your Majeſty for the Protection [illegible] *Majeſty has been pleaſed to give to our Brethren the Proteſtants of the Palatinate, and of Poland and Lithuania, perſecuted for the Faith of Chriſt. We are perſwaded that this Royal Charity will draw down innumerable Bleſſings from Heaven upon* [illegible] *Majeſty and your Affairs.* [illegible]

Advice, cauſed a Battery to be raiſed againſt the Spaniſh Men of War in the Mole, 4 of the biggeſt are already ſunk, one of 54 Guns, two of 60 and one of 64, and the reſt diſabled. Its thought they loaded a great many Braſs Guns on board them, and were preparing to puſh out to Sea.

From on Board, &c. October 13. N. S. Yeſterday a Ship of 40 Guns was ſunk by the Battery.

Genoa, October 17. Letters from Palermo ſay, that the Spaniſh Army under the Marquis de Lede is in a very ſickly Condition, and the want of every thing.

Berlin, October 17. M. Slippenbach the Pruſſian Miniſter has frequent Conferences with the Muſcovite Miniſters, and offered the King his Maſters good Offices Joyntly with thoſe of His Britannick Majeſty, for procuring a Peace.

Copenhagen, October 17. Sir John Norris is expected here with the Britiſh Squadron.

Perpignan, October 18. The Marſhal Berwick on the 22d Marches with his Army towards Roſes, conſiſting of 75 Squadrons and 40 Battalions.

Whitehall October 18. Capt Johnſon of His Majeſty's Ship the Weymouth, Cruiſing off the Groyne, with the Wincheſter and Durſley-Galley, being informed that two Spaniſh Men of War, one being the Greyhound, the other 26 Guns, and a Spaniſh Merchant Ship of 300 Tuns, were in the Harbour of Ribadeo, and the 16th of September he came before the Harbour Capt. Johnſon ſent in his Boats and followed with Ships and anchored within Musket-ſhot of the Enemies Ships and Battery of 8 Guns, landed, took it, and demoliſhed it. in the interim, the Men of War blew up, and they took Poſſeſſion of the Merchant Ship.

Venice, October 20. On the 17th Col. Burges (who had been Commiſſioned Governour of New-England) being appointed Reſident by His Britannick Majeſty to this State arrived here to relieve Mr. Cunningham.

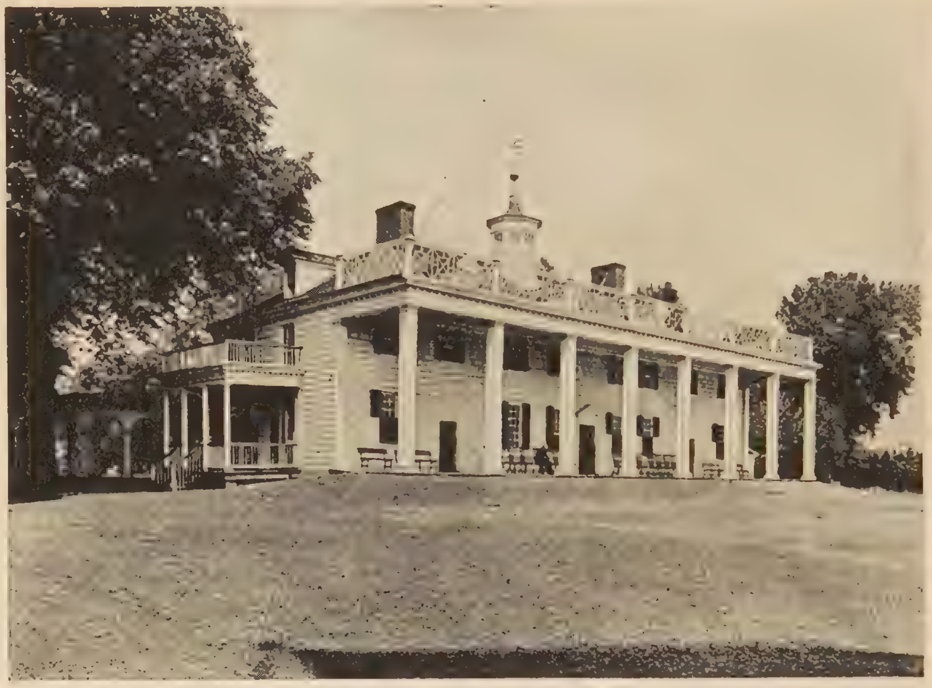
Whitehall, October 21. Major Leviſher, Aide de Camp to the Lord Viſcount Cobham, from Vigo, brought the particular Account of the taking of Vigo in Gallicia.

Imagine reading in a newspaper of April 14th about what happened in London on the 20th of last November! In 1720 all the news from Europe was brought across the Atlantic in slow sailing vessels which sometimes took several months to make the voyage. Even the best and biggest newspapers in America came out only three times a week, and consisted of only four small pages. They were printed with blurry type on coarse, brown paper. There was not much news in any of them. A good deal of space was filled up with advertisements for runaway slaves and stray horses. Much space also was given to letters written from distant places to friends of the editor, who, by the way, usually printed his own paper as well as editing it. Instead of short editorials, such as we have today, there were long essays on politics and morals, by prominent men who signed a high-sounding Roman name to their articles. But news of the outside world was so scarce that people welcomed these meager sheets eagerly, even when they were many weeks old.

differences more marked. Slavery, perhaps, was the deciding factor. To be sure there were slaves in every colony—50,000 of them north of Maryland before the Revolution. But the Negro did not thrive in a cold climate, and could not be used profitably in the many complicated tasks of small farms and shops. The African laborer was used to the greatest advantage on the large plantations of the South, in cultivating single crops, such as tobacco, cotton and rice.

This slave labor made the South rich, and caused a scattering of the population. Men of wealth built up

The Home of the Washingtons

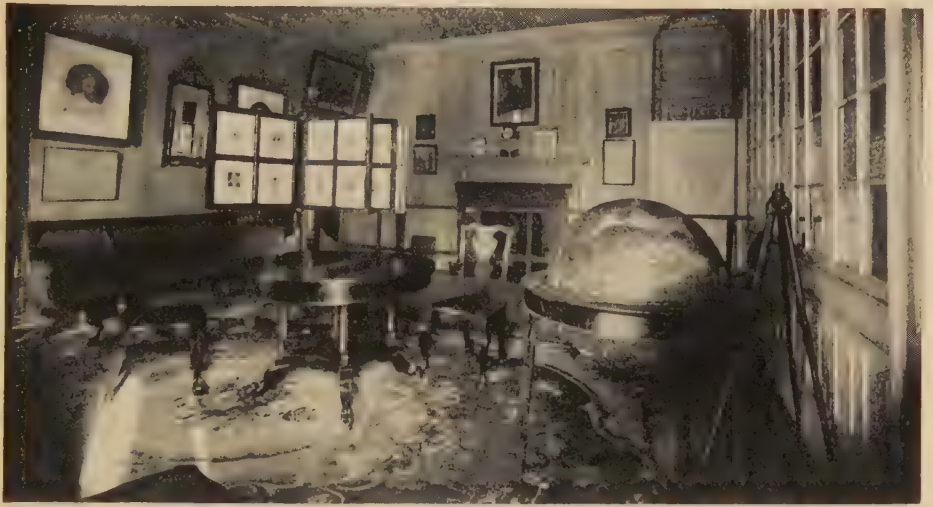


This is the attractive home of the Washingtons at Mount Vernon as it appears today. It stands on a bluff overlooking the Potomac. It is entirely of wood, but the siding, you will notice, is of thick boards and is divided up so as to give it somewhat the appearance of stone work. Mount Vernon gets its name from Admiral Edward Vernon of the British Navy under whom Lawrence, George Washington's half-brother, served. Lawrence owned the house, but provided that at the death of his widow it should pass to George Washington. The house, or villa, as it originally stood, forms the middle portion of the present mansion house, George Washington having built an addition at each end. In 1860 the house, which was showing the effects of time and neglect, was purchased by the Mount Vernon Ladies' Association on behalf of the nation. The purchase price was $200,000, which included the buildings and 200 acres of the original estate.

The Garden at Mount Vernon

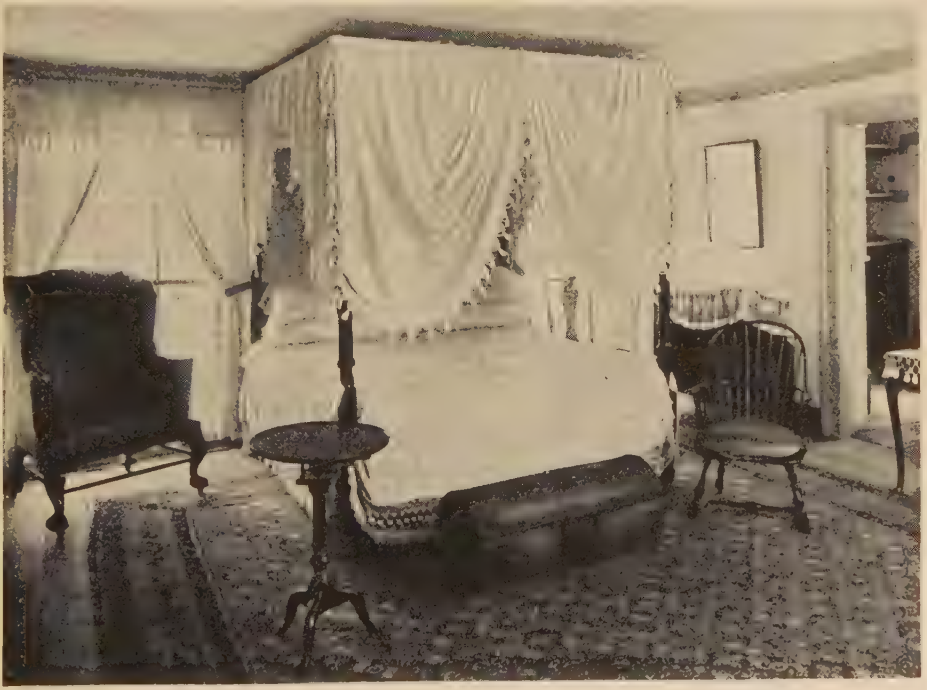
President and Mrs. Washington were people of exquisite taste and, as you see, even the part of the estate devoted to the raising of vegetables for the table was beautifully laid out and cared for. From each end of the mansion at Mount Vernon was a colonnade with a paved walk underneath it, leading through a beautiful lawn with shaded drives along which were trees planted by Franklin, Jefferson, Lafayette and other famous men who were connected with the Revolution.

In George Washington's Study



This is the study in Washington's home at Mount Vernon as it looks today. On the right you see the tripod, the three-legged stand for his surveying instrument, and near it a globe. Globes became very popular after Columbus discovered America and in 1507 a German mapmaker made a globe on which the map was printed in separate pieces or gores and pasted on the globe. You can plainly see the sections in this one.

The Bedroom of Washington



Here we are looking into the bedroom of Washington at Mt. Vernon. The chair near the window on the left is his mother's and one in which she used to sing him to sleep. The old round trunk is of the type that was used in Washington's day and for a good many years afterward.

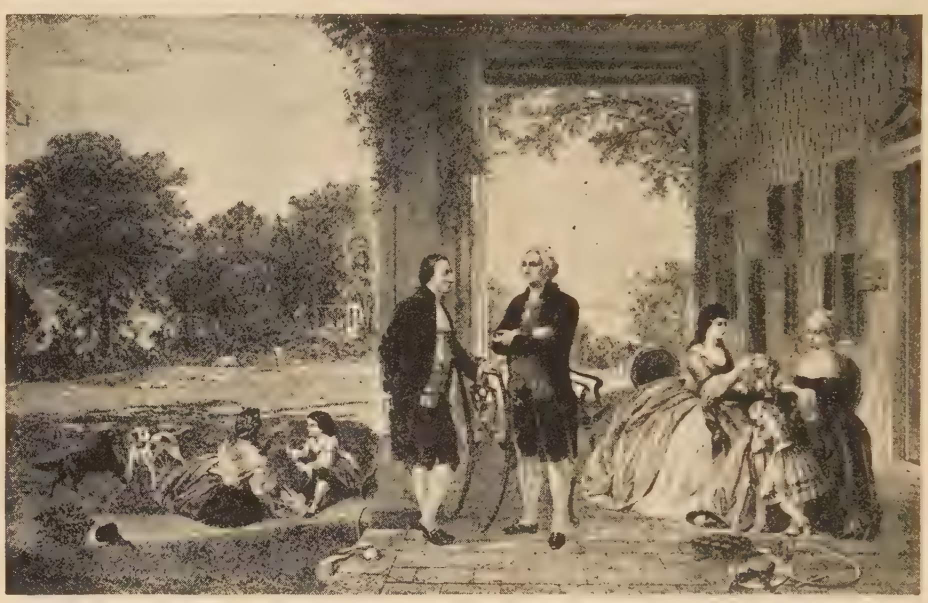
large landed properties like the ancestral estates of Old England. Every river up to the falls was lined with plantations, each with its private wharf where vessels from London called for the staple crop and unloaded every luxury of living.

The Southern Country Gentry

Washington was a typical planter, and beautiful Mt. Vernon, his home on the Potomac, a typical plantation. These wealthy proprietors cultivated all the refinements of living, in their houses, dress and lavish entertainments. They rode and danced, read Shakespeare and other British classics, sent their sons to English universities to be educated, and devoted their leisure to politics. With much property at stake and a keen sense of their personal worth, they were natural leaders in public life, both in peace and war. William and Mary College was founded in 1688, but with the population so scattered, primary schools were unknown. Every plantation with children had a governess and a tutor.

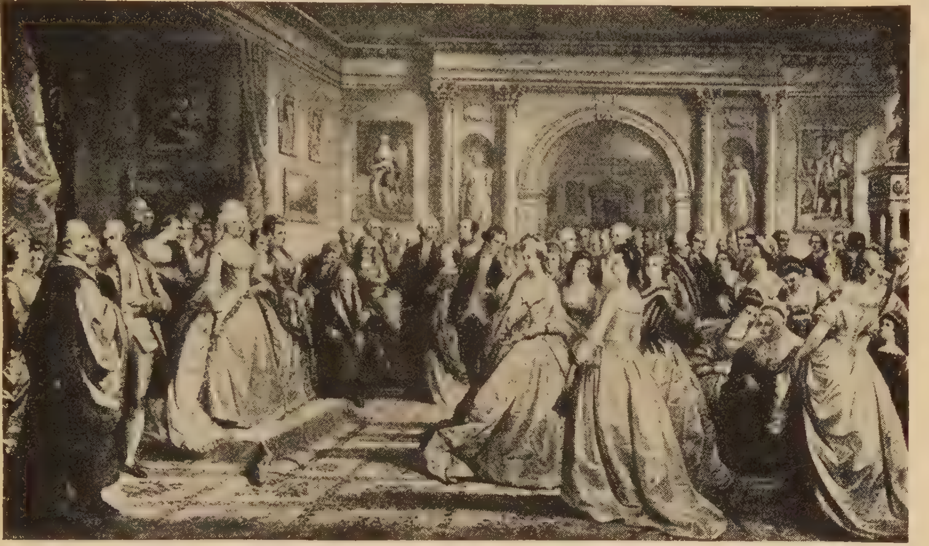
In the North everyone worked, and lived close together. The people crowded into farming villages which rapidly grew into towns and

On the Front Porch at Mt. Vernon



Can you imagine any home more delightful than Mt. Vernon must have been when the Washingtons lived in it? This picture represents Washington conversing with Lafayette when the noble Frenchman visited the United States after the Revolution, and was the guest of the nation. Among the trees in the background you see a little summer house and beyond that, the waters of the Potomac. Seated with Mrs. Washington at the table is her daughter, Nellie Custis. That dear little girl leaning her head on grandmother's lap is Martha Parke Custis, and on the ground near the porch is her brother Jack. You see, boylike, he goes in for toy cannons while his little sister prefers the hoop. The two little dogs have evidently heard that toy cannon go off before and are quite interested, but they don't seem to be quite sure whether they had better wait and hear it "bark," or run away. In the household the children were known as "Jack and Patcy." Washington loved both them and their mother dearly as if they were children of his own blood. In the first invoice of goods shipped to him from London after he became their stepfather, he ordered "Ten shillings worth of toys, six little books for children beginning to read, and one fashionably dressed baby to cost ten shillings." The dressed baby was, of course, a doll. For their mother he bought a "Forte Piano," and later at a cost of $1,000, a very fine harpsichord, and one of his greatest delights was to have her play and sing to him. He was very systematic in everything he did and his ledger shows the cost of constant gifts he made to her. One of these items is, "The Wayworn Traveler," a song for Miss Custis.

At One of Mrs. Washington's Receptions



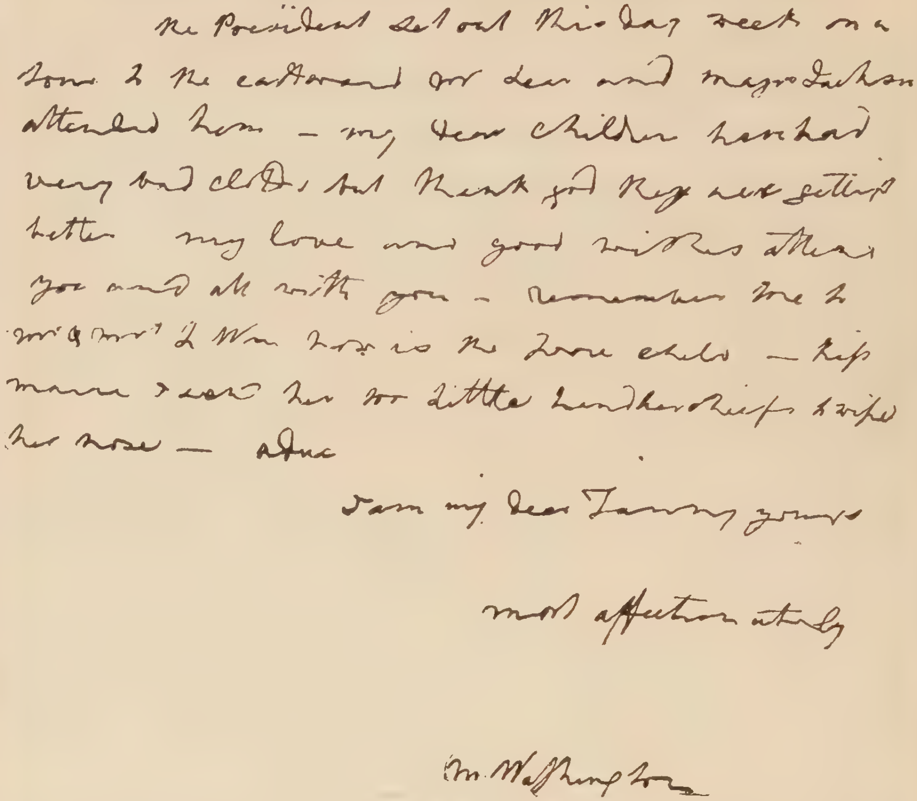
Here we are at a reception at the White House when Washington was President. Of course, we will meet here the most distinguished people in the land. As there are so many we will not try to get introductions to all of them, but one of "those present," whom I am sure you will want to know, is Master George Washington Parke Custis. He is that little boy, with the long hair, on the extreme right. He is the grandson of Mrs. Washington and the adopted son of the President. The lady who has her hand on his shoulder is a Mrs. Randolph, and the one who has turned to speak to him is Mrs. Winthrop. Both ladies were prominent in the society of the time. Assisting Mrs. Washington in receiving are Nellie Custis and Mrs. Robert Morris. (Mrs Morris, you remember, is the lady at whose house the foreign prince was so much embarrassed because he didn't know what to do when she kept urging him to have more tea.) Nellie is standing between Mrs. Morris and Mrs. Washington. Distinguished foreigners were also to be seen at receptions at the White House in those days, just as they are now. For instance, one of the heads you see in the background under the arch is Louis Philippe, who afterward became King of France and reigned for a short time before Napoleon took charge of things. Conversing with Washington, whom you will readily recognize, is the Duke of Kent, who fought on the side of the British during the Revolution. Possibly they are discussing incidents of their campaigns.

At the left of the raised platform on which Mrs. Washington is standing, is a man in a long gown. That is Jonathan Trumbull. He was Chief Justice of the Superior Court of Connecticut, and it is for this reason that he wears the gown. You notice that John Jay, who stands not far from the platform on the right, wears a similar gown. He was Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States, an office to which Washington appointed him. Washington also thought very highly of the abilities of Jonathan Trumbull and the name "Brother Jonathan," as applied to the United States, is said to have originated from Washington's frequent remark when important matters were to be discussed, "Let us hear what Brother Jonathan has to say."

Looking at the picture, it is hardly necessary to add that those were the days of hoops. The ladies' dresses stood out for two feet on each side and were made of gorgeous brocades and taffetas. The gentlemen wore their hair done up in a cue and their hair was always white, no matter what the natural color may have been, because it was thickly powdered. Their coats had silver buttons engraved with the initials of their names.

The cuffs were loaded with lead; and for the same reason that we put "sinkers" on our fish lines—to make them hang straight.

Martha Washington and Little Maria's Nose



the President set out this day week on a tour to the eastward Mr Lear and major Jackson attended him — my dear children have had very bad colds, but thank god they are getting better my love and good wishes attend you and all with you — remember me to Mr & Mrs [illegible] Wm how is the dear child — kiss maria I send her two little handkerchiefs to wipe her nose — adieu

I am my dear Fanny yours

most affectionately

M Washington

Here is a portion of a letter written by Martha Washington to a relative. It sounds very domestic and home-like, and is particularly interesting because it tells about two handkerchiefs that Mrs. Washington made for a little girl and which she sent along with the letter. This reference to the handkerchiefs occurs in the last paragraph which reads in part as follows:

"The President set out this day week on a tour to the eastward. Mr. Lear and Major Jackson attended him. My dear children have had very bad colds but thank God they are getting better. My love and good wishes attend you and all with you.—Kiss Maria. I send her two little handkerchiefs to wipe her nose."

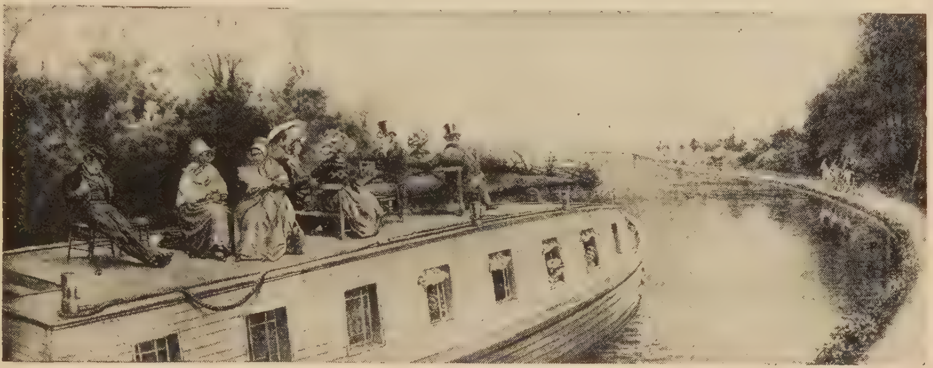
cities. Life was simple and frugal, for no one was rich. Everyone was deeply religious and society was sober. Here was no horse-racing, card-playing, dancing, hunting country gentry as in Virginia. Husking and quilting bees, shooting matches, athletic sports and the militia "training day" furnished the social pleasures. Reading was confined to the Bible, Milton and books of sermons. Boys went to school. Massachusetts voted taxes to help support schools as early as 1640, and Harvard College was founded in 1638.

Life and Culture in the North

All the New England colonies had their men of classical education. There were one hundred graduates of Cambridge and Oxford among the first generation in Boston. There were large private libraries in every northern colony, and distinguished scholars to use them. Yale, Dartmouth, Brown and Pennsylvania Universities, and King's College (Columbia) were all founded before the French and Indian War. Princeton was started by Scotch-

Irish graduates of Edinburgh and Dublin in a log cabin in 1746. Massachusetts gave us our first and best-loved names in American literature; but it was in Philadelphia that Benjamin Franklin found the ablest lawyers and doctors, and men to form societies for the discussion of science and philosophy.

A Pleasant Way to Travel



To go by stage coach used to be the quickest way to make a long journey, but it was so uncomfortable to be jolted about for several days and nights over the rough roads, that people with plenty of time liked to make their trips by water if they could. This is a flat bottomed canal packet with a dining room and bedrooms for passengers. It is pulled through the water by horses on the tow path at the side. See how the people on top seem to be enjoying the fine weather. The Erie Canal, opened in 1825 between Albany and Buffalo, N. Y., was the first important canal in the United States.

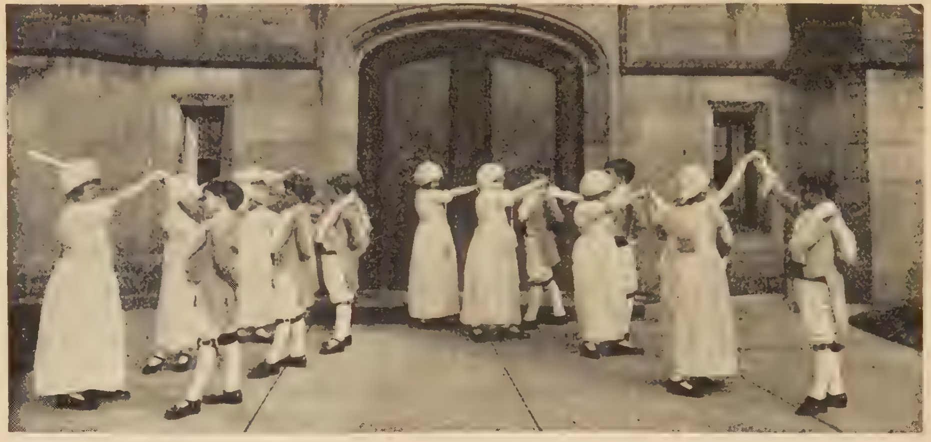
The Colonies in 1760

Now let us see what our country was like in 1760, a little over a century and a half after the first settlement. There were probably about 2,000,000 people, all east of the mountains, with the frontier settlements nowhere more than one hundred and fifty miles from the ocean. Massachusetts, Pennsylvania and Virginia were the most populous. Philadelphia had 16,000 people, Boston 20,000, New York 12,000. Charleston was the only city of any size in the South. Roads were few, bridges poor. Most travel was by water, in sailing sloops and schooners along the coast and up the rivers. Any voyage might take two days or two weeks, depending on the weather. There were stage-coach lines only between Boston, New York and Philadelphia. A post-office and mail routes had been established, and there were hand printing presses and small weekly newspapers in the larger towns. The English Licensing Act, under which no book, pamphlet or almanac could be printed or sold anywhere without permission from the authorities, expired in 1695, and there was now liberty of the press. Virginia had its first newspaper in 1732, the year George Washington was born. The *Boston News Letter* was founded in 1704, and boasted that its European news, received by sailing vessel, was only two months old. Just think of it!

Beginning of the Union Idea

And yet, somehow, news traveled. Philadelphia was the meeting place for planters from the South, local men of science, and professional men and merchants from New England. And there was one topic of conversation of unfailing interest

Dancing Out the History Lesson



These two pictures show you how one of the stately colonial dances is reproduced in the school assembly room. If this is not one of the physical exercises in your school, show these pictures and the following directions to your teacher. Such exercises not only bring fresh color to your cheeks but add greatly to the feeling of life and reality in the history lesson.

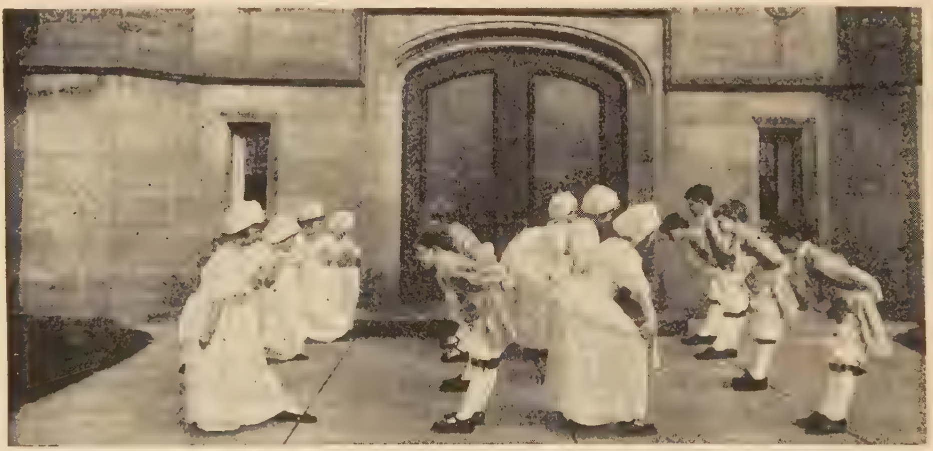
Children enter in rows, girls at the right, holding skirts daintily with right hands, boys holding girls' left hands high with their right. Boys' left hands behind back.

Touch left heel forward, 1. Touch left toe backward, 2. Change step, or catch step, left, 3-4. Touch right heel forward, 1. Touch right toe backward, 2. Change step, right, 3-4. Drop hands and turn left about, grasp inside hands and repeat in opposite direction, 9-15 counts.

Part II. 16 Measures.

At end of Part I all turn left about and finish facing forward, ready for Part II. Same formation as in Part I. All step left sideward, 1. Step right foot over left, 2. Step left sideward, 3. Step right foot behind left, toes pointed downward, right knee turned outward and bend knees slightly. (This is the dip step), 4. Same thing right, 5-8. Repeat all, 9-16. Repeat Part I. 32 counts in all. Finish, partners facing.

Part III. 8 Measures, Picture Number 1.



Partners join right hands and hold high, girls' left hands holding skirts at side, boys' left behind back. All walk forward 4 steps, partners changing positions. On fourth count turn about and make a slight bow, 1-4. Join left hands and repeat, 5-8. Boys take girls' left hands in their right, still facing each other. Boys step sideward left, girls sideward right, all moving front, 1. Point step front (one foot crossing over the other, toes pointed. With opposite foot), 2. Boys step sideward right, girls sideward left, 3. Point step, 4. All turn about away from partners and make a low bow, girls holding skirts with both hands, boys with right hand across chest, left behind back, 5-8. (See the next Picture.) Repeat all, 16 counts. 32 counts in all.

Part IV. 8 Measures.

Partners face each other and join right hands. Boys walk backward, girls forward. 4 counts (on fourth count make slight dip step). Repeat in opposite direction, 4. Drop hands, all step sideward right and bow low, 1-2. Step to position, heels together, not changing position of hands, 3-4. Repeat to left, 5-6. Step to position, 7-8. Repeat the whole dance.

and importance to all—the Indian Wars. New Englanders on the sea and Virginians on the land, they had fought and died and won victories for seventy years. Involved in all of England's wars, they had defended her colonies unhelped, and had profited nothing from the endless strife, not even winning peace and security for themselves. Very slowly another principle of the Dutch Republic took root in the colonial mind: "United we stand, divided we fall."

How First Graders Built a Pioneer Home

The pupils of the first grade in a Franklin, Indiana, school collected and arranged the material for this pioneer schoolhouse after studying pioneers and their primitive ways of living. The "logs" are dowel rods and the "ground" is a sand table. The forest in the background was sketched in charcoal on cardboard, by children in the upper grades. The rods were notched to fit each other and are held in place with clay. The chimney is of sticks stuck together with clay.

It was the French and Indian Wars that knit the thirteen colonies into a compact nation of people standing shoulder to shoulder. That will make another story.

The Pilgrim Fathers

The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast,
And the woods against a stormy sky
Their giant branches tossed.

And the heavy night hung dark,
The hills and water o'er,
When a band of exiles moored their bark
On the wild New England shore.

Not as the conqueror comes,
They, the true-hearted, came;
Not with the roll of the stirring drums,
And the trumpet that sings of fame;

Not as the flying come,
In silence and in fear—
They shook the depths of the desert gloom
With their hymns of lofty cheer.

Amidst the storm they sang,
And the stars heard, and the sea;
And the sounding aisles of the dim woods rang
To the anthem of the free!

The ocean-eagle soared
From his nest by the white waves' foam;
And the rocking pines of the forest roared—
This was their welcome home!

There were men with hoary hair
Amidst that pilgrim band;
Why had they come to wither there,
Away from their childhood's land?

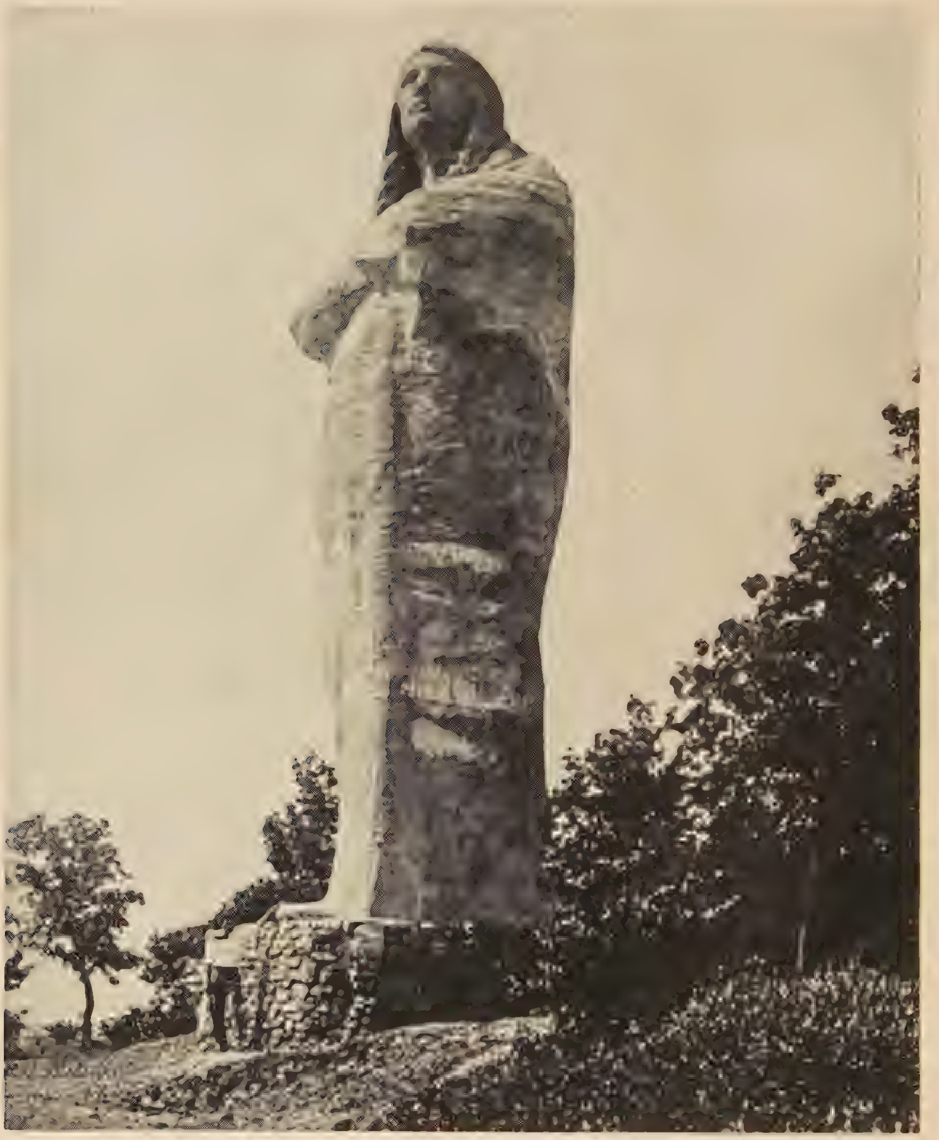
There was woman's fearless eye,
Lit by her deep love's truth;
There was manhood's brow serenely high,
And the fiery heart of youth.

What sought they thus afar?
Bright jewels of the mine?
The wealth of seas, the spoils of war?—
They sought a faith's pure shrine!

Ay, call it holy ground,
The soil where first they trod,
They have left unstained what there they found—
Freedom to worship God.

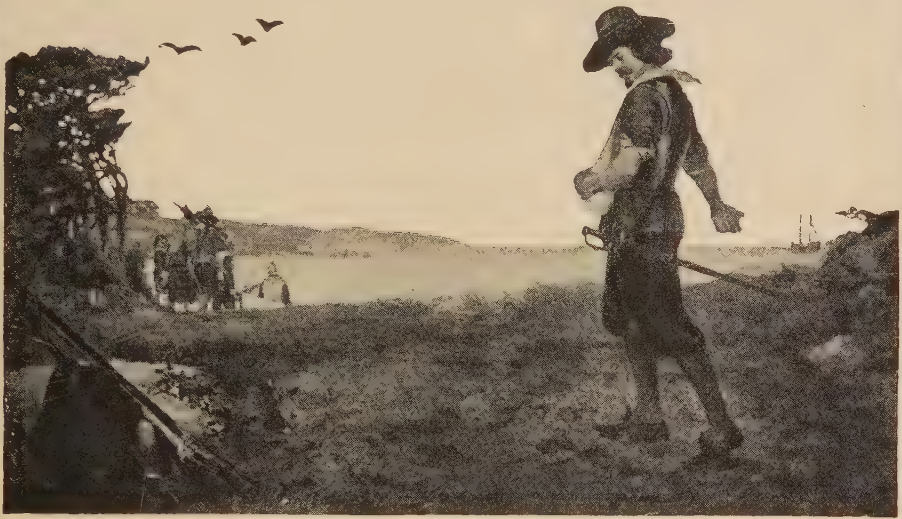
Felicia Hemans

The Story of Black Hawk



This giant work of art stands on a lofty promontory called "The Eagle's Nest," near Oregon, Illinois, and overlooks the picturesque valley of the Rock River. It is one of the best known works of Lorado Taft. It is known as the Black Hawk Statue, although the face is not a portrait of the famous chief but a composite of the features of the Fox, Sac, Sioux and Mohawk tribes. You notice that this giant wears no feathers, or Indian trappings. He expresses in grand simplicity the stern dignity of an Indian chief and his resentment at the wrongs inflicted upon his race by the white man. As grand chief of the Sacs and Foxes, Black Hawk vigorously opposed to a contract between his people and the United States in 1809 by which, for an annual allowance of only $1,000, they give up their rights to something like seven hundred square miles of territory along the Mississippi. In 1823 when, lead by Keokuk, a greater part of the Sacs and Foxes emigrated to a government reservation, Black Hawk and a few followers refused to go. He remained on the eastern side of the Mississippi and lived peaceably until the white man confiscated his possessions. With a few followers he then destroyed several white settlements but all were finally driven west of the Mississippi, and Black Hawk and his two sons were captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe

The Indian Wars and How They Helped to Bring on the Revolution



Sowing Wheat on the Graves

In the first winter in New England only the hardiest of the little band of Pilgrims survived. Quick consumption caused the death of many of them before they reached America, for alternating the foul air of the crowded Mayflower hold in stormy weather with the piercing cold of the northern Atlantic on clear days when they could go on deck, made them particularly susceptible, and the hard life in this country, with no suitable shelter, carried off a great many before the first, long, hard winter was over. Before the end of March nearly one-half of their number had died. They were buried near the sea, on Cole's Hill, and grain was sown above the graves so that the Indians couldn't find them and discover how small was the force of white people left.

The picture shows a Puritan sowing grain over a freshly-made grave as the funeral procession disappears over the hill. Notice how the man in the foreground is dressed. Even at the sad business of a funeral he wore his armor and carried his gun and sword, because the Indians' war whoop might be heard at any moment and it was best to be always prepared.

The Story of Pocahontas

WHO does not know the thrilling and romantic story of how Captain John Smith was rescued from a cruel death by the Indian Princess Pocahontas? The lady did not marry the hero, who was, indeed, a grizzled veteran of wars in The Netherlands and with the Turks. In due time she was wedded to young John Rolfe in the church at Jamestown and went away to London, to be made much of by Queen and Court. Because of this marriage, Captain Smith was able to make a treaty of peace with Chief Powhatan, one that was kept for twenty years. Before that, and afterwards, the colonists of Virginia were constantly in danger of attack by the Indians.

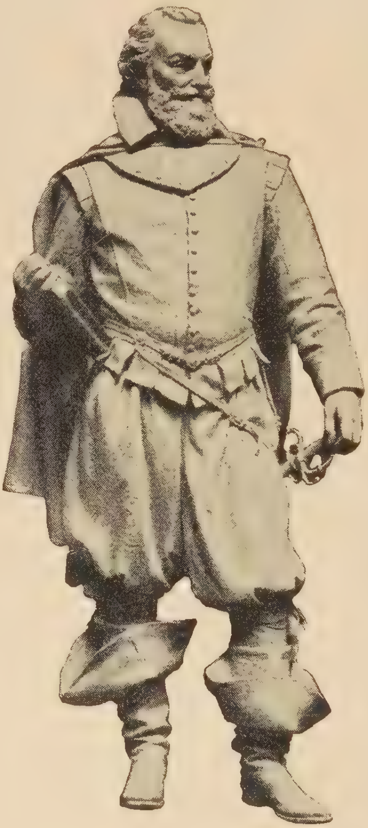
Beginning of the Wars

Many of the early uprisings were too small and brief to be called "wars." Both tribes and colonies were far apart and, with the exception of the Iroquois Nations of Western New York State, the Indians were not organized. Each attack was simply a separate, treacherous raid on a sleeping settlement, led by some warrior of local fame. But by and by, when the white people increased in number and began to crowd the Indians out of their best hunting grounds, the tribes joined forces to resist. Then the French in Canada took advantage of this feeling to organize and arm the Algonquin tribes of the St. Lawrence, and with their help to try to drive the English and Dutch out of America.

To understand these later wars and their very important consequences, we must go back to the early Indian uprisings. We are obliged now to admit that most of them could have been avoided. They were due to the unfriendly spirit of the English people of certain colonies toward their red neighbors.

The English and the Indians

Every European people who came to America made its own terms with the Indians according to its disposition. The Spaniards killed or enslaved them. The French lived with their "wild brothers" and won their undying devotion. The English were unlike both Spanish and French, and those of different colonies differed widely from each other. All Englishmen felt their moral and social superiority to the semi-barbarians of the American forest, and the marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was one of the very few unions of the two races. But the people of some colonies were friendly, and fair in their dealings with the Indians, and were met with friendship and faith. In other colonies contempt and



John Smith, Author, Explorer, Adventurer

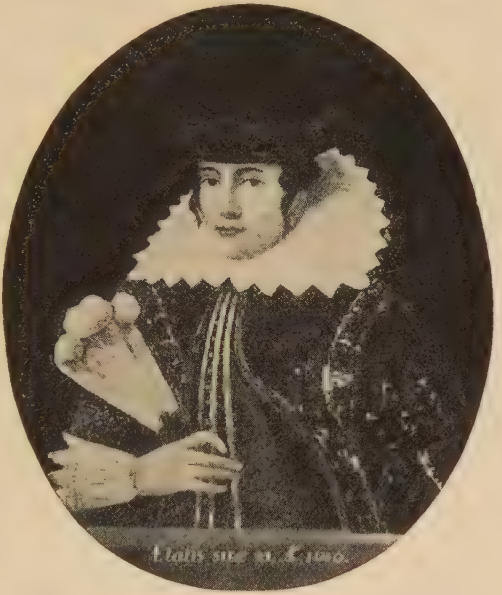
Captain John Smith set out to see the world for himself when he was a very young man. He went first to fight in the Low Countries, in the Dutch wars against Spain. Leaving there he was robbed, by four adventurers, of everything he possessed. In those days many worthy and even noble gentlemen made a business of piracy, so when John Smith turned pirate and helped capture a Venetian ship whose cargo made him wealthy for awhile, he was not doing anything so very disreputable in the eyes of the world. According to his own story of his life, he next joined the Austrians in their battles with the Turks. There he was captured and sold as a slave to a lady who took pity on him and protected him from some of the hardships and sufferings which fell to the lot of Turkish slaves. Then he stole a horse and rode away into Russia with his slave's iron collar still about his neck. There he found some enemies of the hated Turks who gladly filed away his collar, the mark of his slavery, and he set out for home. He made his way through Germany, France, Spain and Morocco, back to England again, with many thrilling adventures along the way. In England he joined the Jamestown expedition and had much to do with making the first permanent English settlement in Virginia successful. John Smith has been accused of being a boaster, and of making himself the hero of hair-breadth adventures which he never experienced, but we must remember that in the age in which he lived, the habit of bragging was much more common than it is today and a modest man wasn't likely to get all the attention and respect he deserved. And John Smith's adventurous career was remarkable, even for those stirring days.

injustice bred hatred and revenge.

Friendship Between Indians and Englishmen

Had the Indians been so disposed, the Pilgrims could easily have been destroyed, for they were in the sorest straits of poverty and sickness. But Indians aided them, taught them how to plant and cook corn, to hunt and fish and make snow-shoes. And the people of Plymouth invited their red neighbors to share their first Thanksgiving feast. This was long remembered, for hospitality is an Indian virtue. Plymouth colony had no trouble until after the arrival of the Boston and Salem colonists.

Princess Pocahontas in Her Court Dress



This shows Princess Pocahontas in her court dress as she appeared when she went to London and was presented to the Queen. Although it is painted in the stiff style of the time, you can see that she must have been a beautiful woman. The painting is now in possession of one of her descendants, Col. Frank S. Robertson, of Abingdon, Va. He kindly loaned it for reproduction for the benefit of readers of Pictured Knowledge. In his letter with regard to it, Colonel Robertson says: "This English painting of my distant grandmother, Pocahontas, my father believed to be the only authentic portrait of her extant, and he looked into the subject very thoroughly."

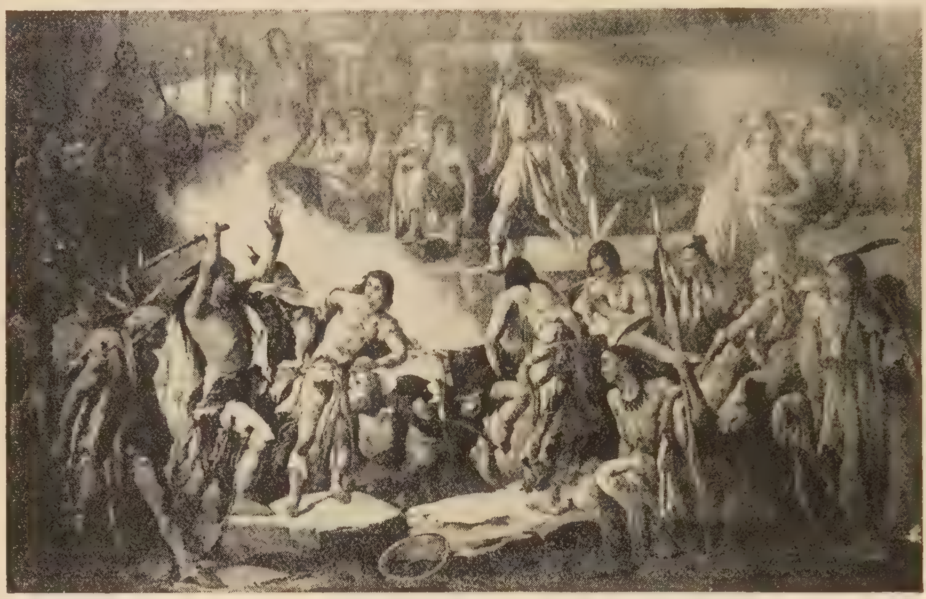
In Rhode Island, Roger Williams bought his land, traded fairly and was unmolested by tribes which waged war against Massachusetts and Connecticut. William Penn and the Quakers of Pennsylvania made the famous treaty of peace that was "never sworn to and never broken" until all the colonies and all the tribes became involved in the French and Indian War of 1754. But the Delawares had already learned to trust white men by living as near neighbors to the fair-dealing Dutch and Swedes for a half century. The Dutch in the Hudson River Valley made a perpetual treaty of peace—the "Covenant of Corlear" with the Iroquois Nations, the most fierce and warlike of all eastern tribes.

Six of the thirteen colonies had no trouble whatever with Indians in their immediate neighborhood. Most of the early "Wars" were in New England and Virginia. Puritan and Cavalier alike felt nothing but disgust and contempt for the red man. They often cheated him in trade, and they thought that a charter from the King gave them a good title to the whole American wilderness. Indian rights to their forest homes and hunting grounds were ignored. Crowded back and reduced to poverty, many tribes were obliged to fight, or to submit and die miserably.

Raleigh's settlement on Roanoke Island was destroyed and only the good sense of Captain John Smith saved Jamestown. After the long peace, Virginia fought an endless succession of border wars back to the crest of the Alleghenies. The Puritans in New England had no security until they had conquered the Pequots and Narragansetts, and looking forward with confidence to peace, began to push back the frontier.

Only eleven years later, however, ended the career of the famous chief, "King Philip," in a swamp. By 1678 local tribes were wiped out or broken up, and New England, all the northern colonies, from New Hampshire to New Jersey, were attacked by French and Indians from Canada. This was a part of the

How Pocahontas Saved John Smith's Life



Captain John Smith was one of a party of Englishmen who set out to explore the country near their settlement. They were captured by the Indians and all murdered except John Smith. His cleverness and presence of mind saved him again, for he made the Indians afraid of him and they treated him with the superstitious respect accorded to their own medicine men. He was taken on a long march through the country to Powhatan, head chief of the Indians of that region. Captain Smith, in his diary written, like Caesar's Commentaries, in the third person, tells the story of how Pocahontas rescued him from death:

"A long consultation was held; but the conclusion was, two great stones were brought before Powhatan. Then as many as could, laid hands on Smith, dragged him to them, and thereon laid his head, being ready with their clubs to beat out his brains. Pocahontas, the king's daughter, when no entreaty could prevail, got Smith's head in her arms and laid her own upon his, to save him from death; whereat the Emperor was contented he should live to make his hatchets and her bells, beads and copper, for they thought him as well trained for all occupations as themselves."

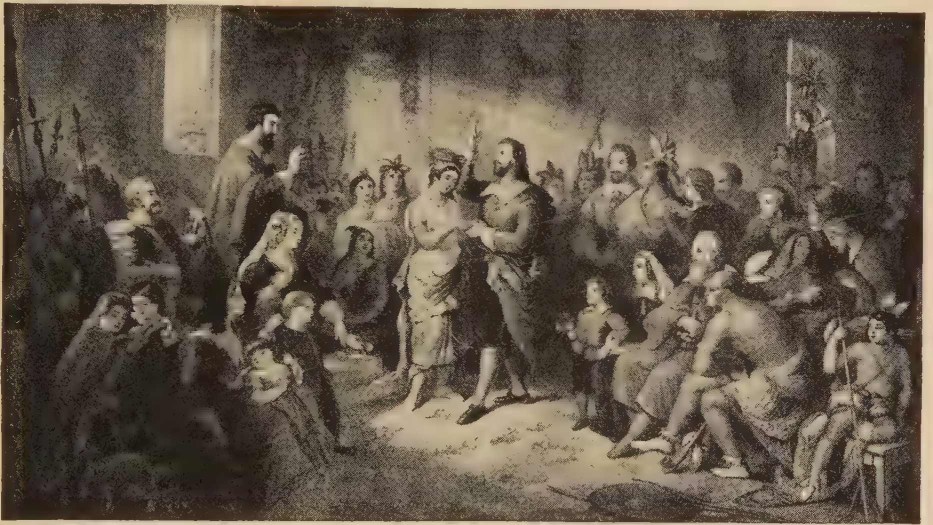
The truth of this story has been doubted, especially since John Smith is known to have loved romance to such an extent that he sometimes exaggerated the romantic side of his adventures far beyond the actual facts in the case. But this story is credited by as great authority as John Fiske, who says that this event was not at all romantic from the Indians' point of view, but was an everyday occurrence. Smith had killed some Indian warriors and consequently, according to their custom, he must pay the blood-debt with his life or be adopted into the tribe. At first it was decided to kill him, but Pocahontas wanted him adopted because she had taken a little girl's fancy to the pale-faced stranger—she was only thirteen years old at the time, and though little Indian girls grow up more quickly than white girls, she was still a good deal of a spoiled child. When her father refused, she ran out and laid hold of him, as any spoiled girl will try to seize what she wants to possess. This time she was successful and Powhatan agreed that John Smith should be adopted as a member of the tribe. It was one of the Indians' customs to adopt a captive instead of killing him if some member of the tribe insisted on it. This picture is fairly authentic. The saving of Smith's life occurred in one end of an Indian long house, as shown here—one entrance to the house is at the left of the picture. Pocahontas is shown as older than thirteen, perhaps, and she is shown as warding the Indians away instead of protecting Smith as he describes, but the Indians are well represented, and the two stones are there, with John Smith's head upon them.

first of the royal wars between England and France in the Old World and of their colonies in the New. In Europe they were known by different names, but in America simply as King William's, Queen Anne's and King George's wars. Beginning in 1689, they ran, with long intervals of peace to 1748. In 1754 they were followed by the French and Indian War which, starting in the colonies, spread to Europe. That war ended in the loss of her American colonies to France and, finally led to the Revolution and the independence of the English colonies.

This is the best time in American history to study the deep-lying and remote causes of all wars, their far-reaching effects, and their permanent influence on the characters and destinies of a people. These French and Indian royal wars had their roots in the past, in both Europe and America. France sought to force back upon the English people the Stuart kings whom they had driven into exile, and the two governments took opposite sides in the wars of Frederick the Great of Prussia upon Austria. Their rivalries were made all the keener by the rich prizes of North America and India to be won by the victor. None of the colonists, of any nation, had broken with their past. They were all loyal subjects of their kings, and thought it their duty to defend and to add to their monarch's possessions. So, although hundreds of miles of trackless forests, wild rivers and mountains, and stormy coasts lay between the settlements on

Family Feuds Among the Nations

The Wedding of Pocahontas



Pocahontas aided the English settlers in Virginia in many ways besides saving Captain John Smith's life. Her marriage with John Rolfe helped to keep the Indians under Chief Powhatan, her father, friendly to the English. She was baptized a Christian, assuming the name of Rebecca, and was then married in the church at Jamestown, April, 1614, with Governor Dale looking on. He is sitting at the left near the minister, with a group of soldiers behind him. The church is decked with vines and flowers and filled with a goodly company of spectators. Pocahontas is wearing a queer combination of English and Indian clothing—Indian moccasins, bracelets and peacock feathers in her hair, while her other garments were undoubtedly woven by some English housewife who perhaps gave them to Pocahontas for a wedding present. The picture shows the ceremony at the moment when Rolfe, with his right hand upraised, is taking the marriage oath, while Pocahontas demurely droops her head.

the St. Lawrence and the seaboard, English and French colonists fought valiantly in three long wars that were not their own. Peace was signed each time, in Europe, without consulting them, and no territory changed hands because of colonial victories.

Why John Smith Broke His Pistol

This deadly-looking weapon once belonged to Captain John Smith. You notice the hammer has been broken, and this is how it happened: Once when Captain Smith was captured by Indians, the Indians brought him his pistol and commanded him to fire it off. Firearms were new to them, of course, and John Smith knew very well that they wanted to learn how to shoot the pistol, and would then keep it to use against the colonists. The habit of quick thinking which had helped him out so often in the past came to his rescue this time and he fumbled with the lock of the pistol, breaking it as you see. Then, of course, it would not go off and he couldn't show the Indians how it worked.

Pistols had only been in use about forty years in Captain Smith's time, and they were long, heavy affairs, you see, quite different from the modern revolvers used in the army. Some of them were very beautifully carved and mounted with silver. The carving on the wooden butt of Smith's pistol is half obliterated by dents and scratches. and the iron barrel is badly scarred.

Fanning the Embers of Ancient Wars

The French and the Algonquins

Now as to the part played by the Indians in the mighty struggle for the continent, that lasted three-quarters of a century. When white men came to America, an ancient enmity already existed between the small but highly organized Iroquois Nations who occupied New York State between the Hudson River and Lake Erie, and the numerous but weak tribes of Algonquins who were scattered along the St. Lawrence from New Brunswick to Lake Superior. The Algonquins, all but conquered, were sadly in need of help when the French arrived at Quebec in 1609. They immediately collected around the French forts and, for the next hundred and sixty years, fought for their faithful friends and protectors with the desperation of despair. They hated and feared the English who were allied with the powerful Iroquois, and gladly joined in every war against them.

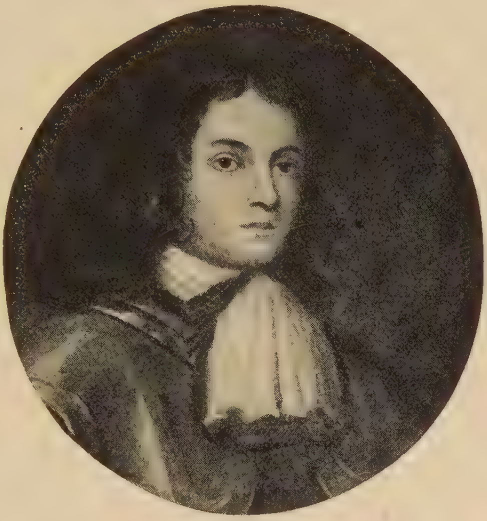
A Little Battle with Large Results

History sometimes turns on very small events. The Iroquois might not have made friends with the Dutch so readily, when they appeared on the Hudson, had they not previously had a little skirmish with the French. The French explorer, Champlain, with Algonquin guides, went south from the St. Lawrence, discovered Lake Champlain, and started across the narrow divide to the valley of the Hudson. There in the woods, near Ticonderoga, they met a band of Mohawk hunters. This was one of the Iroquois Nations, and the Algonquins were trespassers. In the fight which followed Champlain had an easy victory, for he killed a few Mohawks and scared the rest half to death with his guns. The Iroquois had never seen guns before. But the Algonquins fled. Knowing that all the Iroquois would soon be on the warpath they hurried

Champlain back to Canada, to build forts and mount cannon at Quebec and Montreal.

Small as it was, that was one of the decisive battles of American history. When the Dutch soon after appeared at Albany, the Iroquois eagerly filled the holds of their vessels with beaver skins in return for guns with which to punish the Algonquins and their French allies. They succeeded in shutting the French up in their three fortified towns for thirty years, and in chasing the Algonquins to hiding places on the upper lakes. The Iroquois made a treaty of peace and friendship with the Dutch, and when New Netherland was captured by the British and named New York, this treaty was transferred to the English. King and colonists were very careful indeed to keep faith with the powerful Iroquois, and the Six Nations were allies of England until the end of the War of 1812.

Why Young William Penn Doesn't Look Like a Quaker



William Penn doesn't look like a Quaker here, does he—in armor and a fine flowing neckcloth? But then he is quite young, you say, and perhaps this picture was painted before he turned Quaker. You are right, for this picture was painted when he was only twenty-two years old and is the only one we have of him made during his lifetime, though after his death several portraits of him were painted from the descriptions of him by people who knew him. This picture shows him in the costume of a Royalist army officer. We all know how he gave up the idea of being a statesman and courtier in order to preach the Quaker teachings, and how he finally led a band of the peace-loving, simple Quaker folk to a new home in America, but it was only after a struggle with his family that he accomplished it.

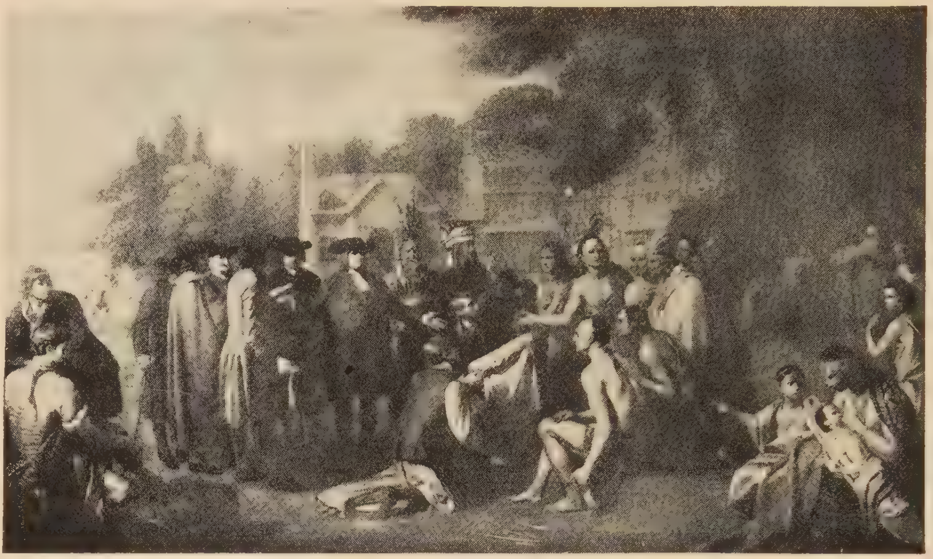
The Penns came from a fine old English family, prominent at court. Admiral Penn, William's father, intended his son to be a statesman, so when he came home from making war on the Dutch, and found William turning Quaker, he was very much displeased. He sent the young man to the court of the Duke of Ormond, viceroy of Ireland and a friend of his, in the hope that he would abandon his Quaker ideas, in the gay life there. Penn joined a local Royalist military organization and took a prominent part in the merry life about him for a time. It was then that this picture was painted.

This English alliance with the Iroquois no doubt decided the ownership of the continent. In colonial days the Hudson River Valley was never thickly peopled or strongly defended. If the French and their hordes of Algonquin warriors could have captured it, they would probably have split the English colonies, taken New England from the rear and then moved down on Virginia.

The Plan of Count Frontenac

This was the plan of conquest of Count Frontenac, who was twice sent to Montreal as Governor of New France. A brilliant and daring leader, he sent Joliet, Marquette and La Salle to explore the Mississippi and lay claim to Louisiana. When King William's War broke out in 1689, his flying columns of French and Indians poured down the Connecticut River and Lake Champlain and ravaged the frontier from Maine to the Delaware. They burned Haverhill, Deerfield and Schenectady, but they were never able to break through

Penn's Treaty with the Indians



The picture was painted by Benjamin West. You know his story, don't you? He was a little Quaker boy and he first showed his talent by painting a picture of his baby sister smiling in her sleep. He was only seven then. His colors were made from berries, and his brush was made of hairs borrowed from the cat's tail.

In his painting of "The Death of Wolfe," he led the way toward the modern idea of accuracy in pictures of historic scenes by showing the figures in the uniforms they actually wore, instead of the classical draperies you see in the pictures of other artists of those days. Yet this picture of Penn's treaty is not accurate. For instance, Penn is represented as an elderly man, say of fifty or sixty, while in reality he was only thirty-eight at the time. And the conference took place soon after the Quakers landed. They had not yet had time to build the houses you see in the background. The Quaker movement was in its infancy at the time of this treaty, and the typical Quaker dress in which the artist clothes Penn and his followers was not introduced until thirty years later.

the wall of Iroquois warriors which stretched from Albany to Lake Erie.

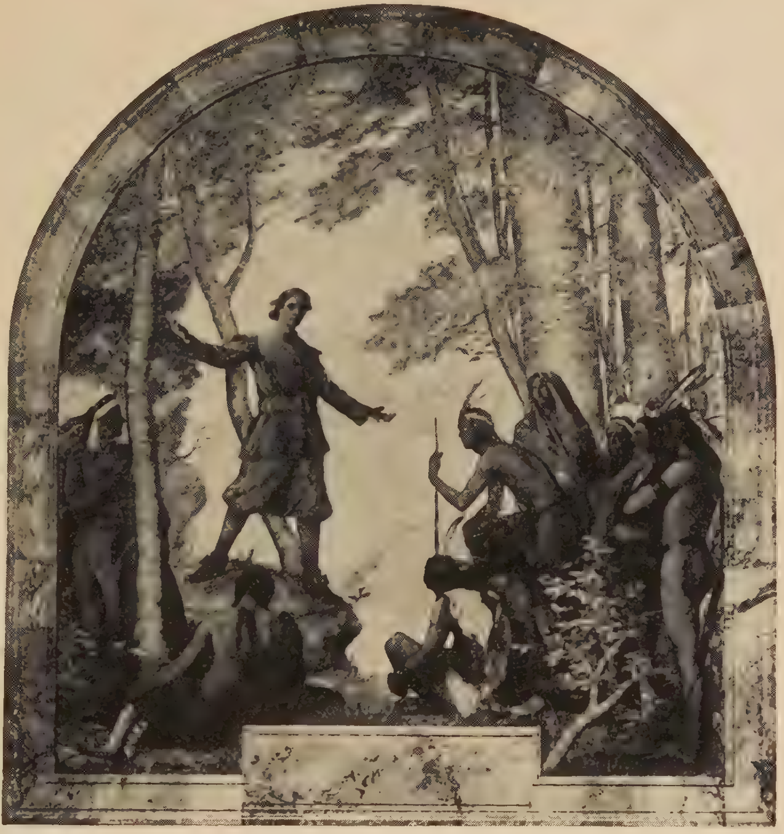
In the three royal wars the northern colonies bore the brunt of the fighting. New York became the battleground on land, and New England sailors three times carried the British flag almost to Quebec. This was not fair, for the southern colonies were thus protected at no trouble or expense to themselves. Besides, had they all joined forces early they might have put an end to French and Indian attacks which, later, imperiled them all. One of the early Dutch governors of New York who had seen how, by uniting, the seven states of the Dutch Republic had driven out the armies of Spain and won peace and independence, urged all the English colonies to unite, and prove the practical wisdom of the Dutch motto: "In union is strength." The New England colonies co-operated to put down the Pequots and Narragansetts, and they joined forces with New York in the royal wars. But the thirteen separate and widely differing colonial governments could not, at that time, be got to act together.

Failure to Learn from History

Threatened by a Common Peril

It was not until after the close of King George's War in 1748 that all were threatened by a common peril. Although no territory had changed hands, the French had, for a half

"The Apostle to the Indians"



John Eliot was a Puritan who came to this country because he couldn't preach what he believed in England. He was the man who began the work of converting the Indians to Christianity. In order to be able to preach to them, he spent a great deal of time acquiring their language, which, as it had never been written down, had to be learned verbally from the Indians themselves. And then, whenever he found a party of them who were willing to listen to him, he seized the opportunity of telling them about the gospel. Meeting these Indians in the depths of the woods—God's first temple—he began exhorting them with all the eloquence at his command. See how eager and earnest he looks as he tells the half-naked savages the message of the Scriptures. And what a contrast their lean, brown bodies and fierce eyes make to the gentle figure of the spiritual Puritan preacher. They are true Indians, you see, not Europeans with dark skins as some historical artists paint them.

This picture, by H. O. Walker, is a mural, or wall, painting in Memorial Hall, Boston State House. Its shape, square at the bottom and arched at the top, makes it just fit the space under an archway between two pillars. Many of the world's greatest pictures have been painted for this purpose, especially some of the work of the early Italian masters, which adorn the great medieval cathedrals.

Strategem of the French

century, been slowly gaining the advantage. In 1669 they had built a fort at Mobile on the Gulf of Mexico. Soon afterwards they were at New Orleans. Then, by fort-building, missions, trading posts, farming and lead-mining settlements, they pushed up the Mississippi almost to St. Louis. They held the upper lakes at Mackinac and Sault Ste. Marie; but, with northern Illinois and Wisconsin held by hostile Indians, communication between New France and Louisiana was over Lake Erie, the Wabash River and the lower Ohio. Their long chain of forts were placed on sites so well chosen that great cities stand on most of them today.

But this line of fortified waterways was a thousand miles back from the Atlantic seaboard, so no attention was paid to all this activity of the French in the heart of America. But it was a different matter altogether when the French decided to make a new route by leaving Lake Erie at Presque Isle (Erie City) and dropping down the Allegheny River to the headwaters of the Ohio. This brought them immediately behind Pennsylvania and Virginia. With no Iroquois warriors to bar the way, they would be able to attack the middle colonies from the rear. They had actually explored the Ohio Valley to the Miami River, taken formal possession of the country, and built forts at Presque Isle and on the Allegheny before the English colonies discovered what was going on.

The Puritan Maidens and the Indians

This picture shows a Puritan maiden teaching an Indian girl how to spin. If you wonder why they happen to be outdoors, with grass under their feet and trees behind them, the answer is that this is from a school pageant given in the suburbs of Boston to illustrate early New England history. The Puritan women, in these kindly relations with their dark-skinned neighbors, really taught two lessons, one related to the household arts and the other human relationships; for if the men folks had been as thoughtful in their treatment of the Indians as the Puritan women were, the continual conflict between the white man and the red might have been avoided.

The Threatened Wall on the West

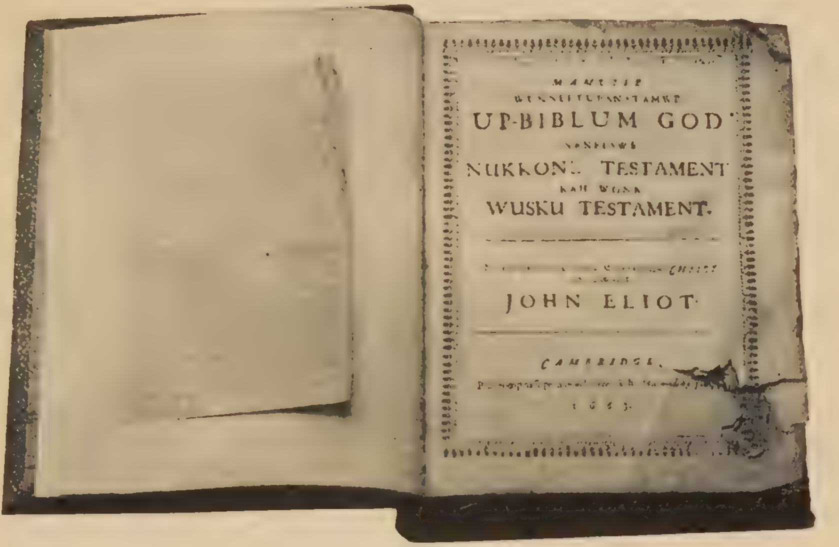
Virginia was wild with anger and alarm. The Ohio Valley was included in her original sea-to-sea charter, and the Ohio Company, formed by Governor Dinwiddie, Lawrence Washington and other wealthy Virginia planters, had a further title to the land by purchase of the Iroquois Indians who had conquered the native tribes. Many sturdy Scotch-Irish settlers had pushed up the Potomac, and were eagerly waiting the word to pour over the mountains into the rich bottom lands of the Ohio's tributaries. Now, capitalists and colonists saw the French stealing a march on them, building forts, winning over tribes south of Lake Erie and preparing to shut in all the English colonies on the narrow seaboard. There were fully a million and a half of these colonists. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Carolina and Georgia were also concerned, for they too had sea-to-sea charters, and Quaker and German Pennsylvania saw with alarm, her long peace threatened from the rear.

Sounding the Alarm

Franklin's "Join or Die"

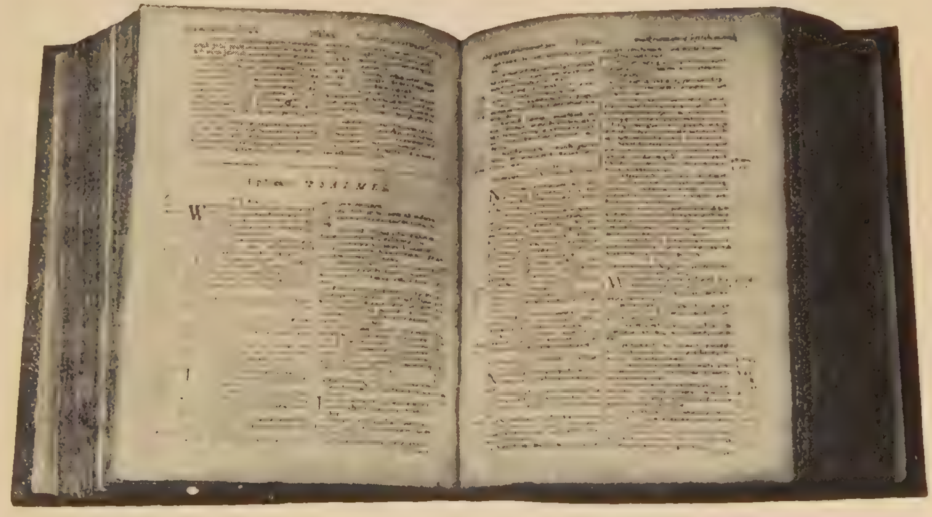
The call of all the colonies to unite in self-defense was first heard in 1754. The Iroquois Nations, ever on the watch for their English allies, sounded a warning. Benjamin Franklin, as editor of the *Philadelphia Gazette*, printed a crude cartoon of a snake cut in several pieces, with the motto: "Join or

The First Bible Printed in America



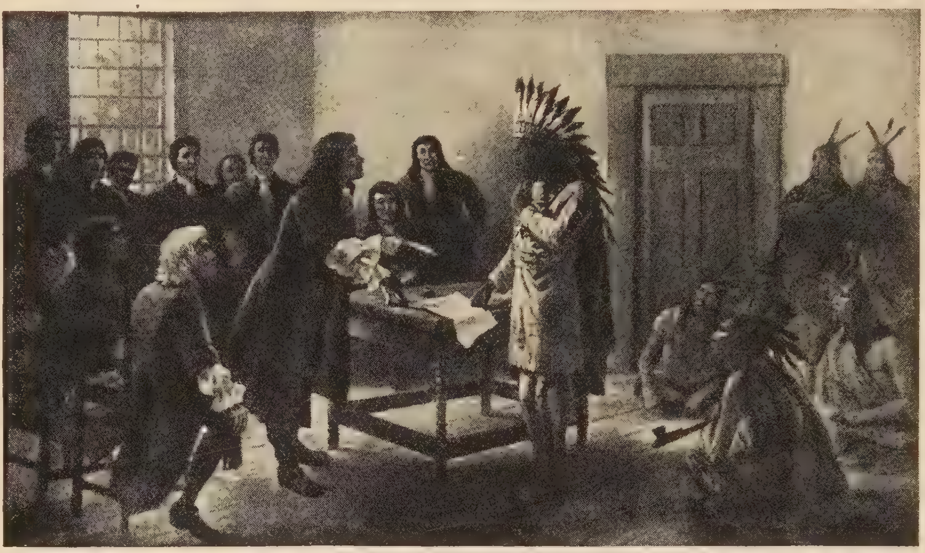
UP-BIBLUM GOD
NUKKONE TESTAMENT
WUSKU TESTAMENT.
JOHN ELIOT.
CAMBRIDGE.
1663.

The first Bible published in this country was John Eliot's translation of the gospel into the Indian tongue. It took him over ten years to accomplish this task for the words of the Indian language had never been reduced to writing, so besides learning the language, John Eliot had to decide upon the letters which correctly expressed each sound. The title-page of this Bible is shown at the top. Literally translated, it reads, "The Whole Holy His-Bible, God, both Old Testament and Also New Testament. This turned by the-servant-of-Christ who is called John Eliot. Cambridge. Printed by Samuel Green and Marmaduke Johnson, 1663."



die." The first colonial convention ever held in America was called to meet in Albany. Seven colonies and the Iroquois Nations were represented. Here the terms "Congress" and "Continental Policy" were first used, no one dreaming of the stirring events to come that were to enlarge the meaning of those words.

The Treaty with King Philip



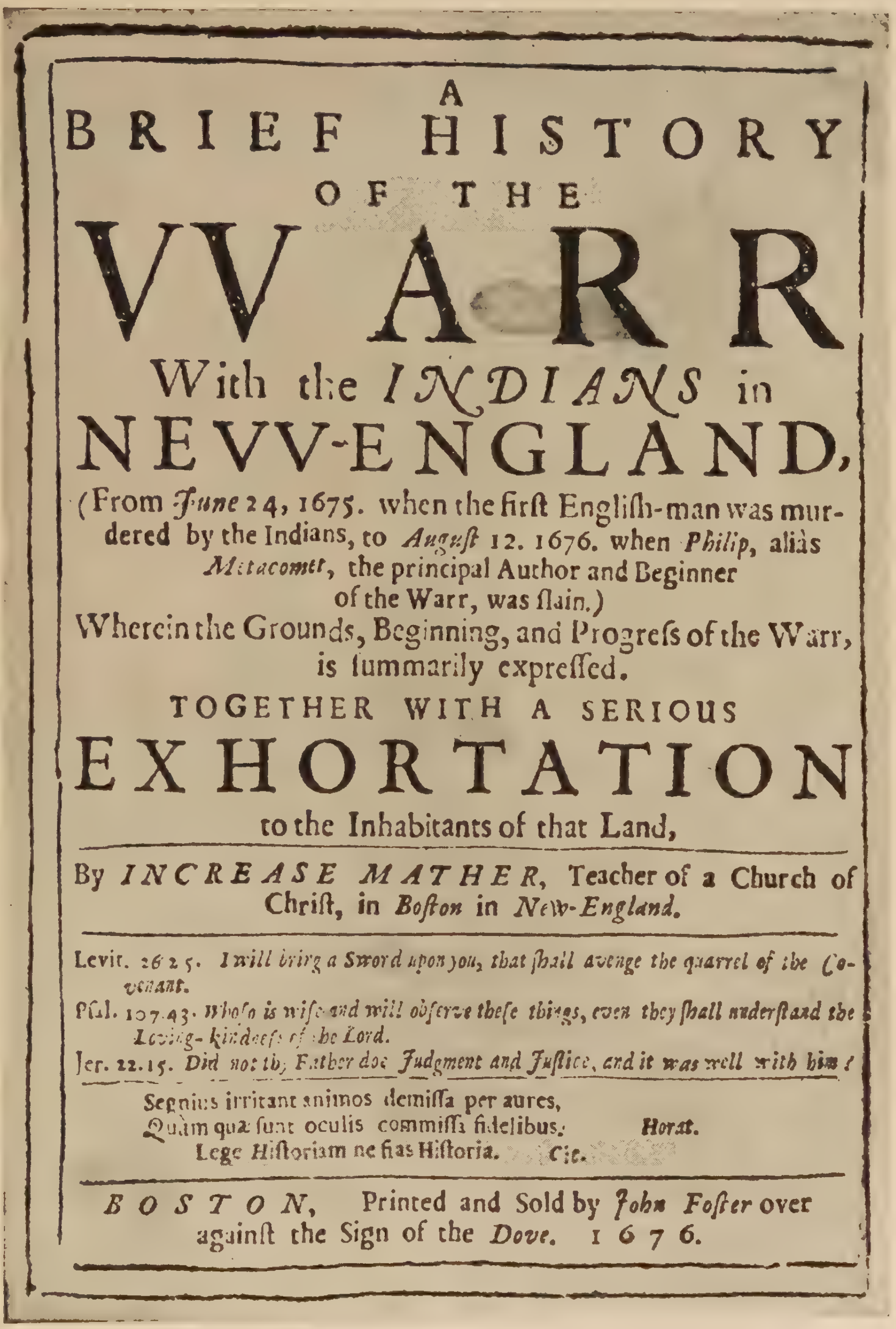
This painting, the original of which hangs in Faneuil Hall, Boston, is by W. S. Savory, and commemorates a treaty made with the famous King Philip, chief Sachem of the Wampanoags, in what is known as "The Old Church" in Taunton, Mass., April 10, 1671. Treaties are usually made at the end of wars, but this treaty was made before King Philip's War began. Rumors had frequently reached the magistrates of Plymouth colony that Philip was meditating mischief. The men of Plymouth accordingly planned to attack him first, but as they could not get the other colonies to act with them, they decided to try persuasion, and so arranged a meeting with Philip at Taunton. The chief came with a number of his followers, said he was sorry for his past offenses, and signed the treaty in which he promised that his people should give up all fire-arms. It is now seen that this was a very unwise move on the part of the men of Plymouth, because it was an agreement that could not be enforced, and was a symptom of fear which had a bad effect on the Indians. At the end of three years from the day of the treaty, the Indians began a series of massacres which were a part of the horrible war that lasted until 1678.

Virginia failed to send a delegate. Perhaps she was too busy. Not waiting for "union," or for permission from London, this colony took matters into her own hands. Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington with a letter to the commander of Fort Le Boeuf on the Allegheny, demanding that the French return to Canada.

The Youth Named Washington

It was a youth of twenty-one who was chosen for this important and dangerous mission; but boys had to grow up early in those days of pressing needs and public duties. Since sixteen Washington had been in the woods and mountains surveying wild land, living in the open, learning woodcraft and using Indians for guides. All the colonies had just such young men on their frontiers, of good birth and education, training in the colonial militia, used to hardships, resourceful and experienced in Indian fighting. At nineteen Washington was a major in the Virginia militia.

Many of the earliest colonial leaders, Raleigh, Captain John Smith, Miles Standish, Stuyvesant and Van



A
BRIEF HISTORY
OF THE
VVARR
With the INDIANS in
NEVV-ENGLAND,
(From *June* 24, 1675. when the firſt Engliſh-man was murdered by the Indians, to *Auguſt* 12. 1676. when *Philip*, aliàs
Metacomet, the principal Author and Beginner
of the Warr, was ſlain.)
Wherein the Grounds, Beginning, and Progreſs of the Warr,
is ſummarily expreſſed.
TOGETHER WITH A SERIOUS
EXHORTATION
to the Inhabitants of that Land,

By *INCREASE MATHER*, Teacher of a Church of
Chriſt, in *Boſton* in *New-England.*

Levit. 26.25. *I will bring a Sword upon you, that ſhall avenge the quarrel of the Covenant.*
Pſal. 107.43. *Whoſo is wiſe and will obſerve theſe things, even they ſhall underſtand the Loving-kindneſs of the Lord.*
Jer. 22.15. *Did not thy Father doe Judgment and Juſtice, and it was well with him?*

Segnius irritant animos demiſſa per aures,
Quàm quæ ſunt oculis commiſſa fidelibus. *Horat.*
Lege Hiſtoriam ne fias Hiſtoria. *Cic.*

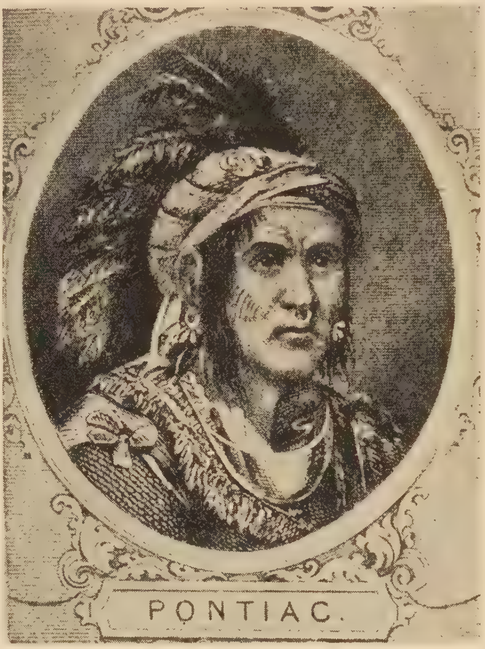
BOSTON, Printed and Sold by *John Foſter* over
againſt the Sign of the *Dove.* 1676.

This picture of the title page of Increase Mather's history of King Philip's War, tells its own story so well that little need be added. You will notice for yourself the peculiar spelling, the quaint type with its s's so much like the f's and the two V's used for a W in the larger letters, because the printing offices had a very small supply of types in those days.

Corlear, had served as officers in the army of the Dutch Republic, the wonder and admiration of Europe since its organization by Prince Maurice, and thousands of colonists of every nation had served there as private soldiers. The sons and grandsons of these first colonists never lost an opportunity to learn military tactics of any Dutch veteran who emigrated to America. Washington had Jacob Van Braam for a tutor. Of him he learned military engineering and strategy. And to these Old World scientific methods he added a knowledge of Indian fighting.

So it was as a commissioned officer, in the company of Christopher Gist, a famous frontiersman, that the young Virginian made the wild journey of three hundred miles, in mid-winter, to find the French in the wooded wilderness of northwestern Pennsylvania. He brought back the refusal of the French to withdraw, and a little later led a colonial force up the Potomac to build Fort Necessity.

The Most Famous of All Indians



This is the most famous Indian America ever produced and he deserves his fame, so far as talent is concerned, for it was Pontiac who organized and directed the largest and most powerful combination of Indians in history. It is always difficult to get a number of different nations to work together, even among civilized people, with rapid means of communication as we have them today. Think then what skill in persuading and managing men this red orator, warrior, and statesman must have had to bring about that great combination known as "Pontiac's Conspiracy." It was an achievement so great that an entire work, "The Conspiracy of Pontiac," by Francis Parkman, has been devoted to it.

The War and Its Results

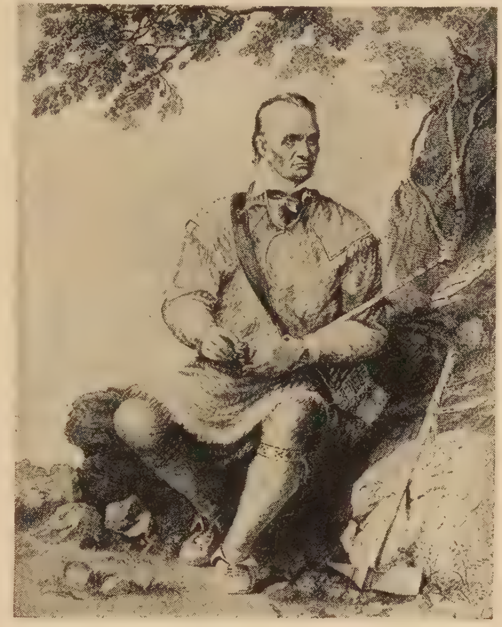
Your school text book gives a very full account of the campaigns and battles of the long war that followed. The French remained in their forts and left it to colonials and British regulars to climb mountains, break through trackless forests ambushed by Indians, breast wild floods and navigate stormy coasts. In America the war ended with the fall of Quebec and Montreal, but, spreading to the Old World, and involving Spain as an ally of France, peace was not signed until 1763. And just as in the three royal wars that had gone before, the terms of peace were decided by kings in Europe, without consulting the interests of the colonists. Yet, with very little help colonial troops had won Canada and Florida for Great Britain, and they had still another Indian war to fight before they could win their way across the Appalachians.

From the Alleghenies back to the east bank of the Mississippi River, was also ceded to England, but this vast region was unconquered. From Mobile to Illinois no blow had been struck at any French fort. On orders from Paris the garrisons marched out, but French settlers, missionaries and fur traders remained in their villages, and from the Lakes to the Gulf the country swarmed with Algonquins and other tribes, who were unreconciled to this change of ownership and who burned to restore the country to their beloved friends, the French.

The Conspiracy of the Great Pontiac

Peace was no sooner signed than an Indian leader appeared in the person of Pontiac, Chief of the Ottawas, near Detroit. Convinced that the English, having driven out the French, intended next to exterminate the red men, Pontiac set about the gigantic task of organizing all the tribes west of the mountains. The most gifted of all forest statesmen, Pontiac had a well-thought-out plan, and an eloquence that gathered every tribe from the Lakes to the Gulf under his banner.

A Famous Indian Orator



Here you meet Sagoyewatha, chief of the Wolf tribe of the Senecas. Beside being a warrior he was famous as an orator. During the Revolution his people were aroused by his eloquence to fight for the British, but in the war of 1812 they fought with the Americans and from that time forward he was a friend. He was known as Red Jacket because toward the close of the Revolution, a British officer gave him a richly-embroidered, scarlet jacket of which he was very proud. He was then a young man and probably cared more for fine clothes than he did at the age when this picture was made of him. You notice on his breast he has a large medal. This was given to him by President Washington on the conclusion of peace with the Six Nations to which the Seneca's belonged. The figures were those of a white man and Indian clasping hands and beneath it were the names, "George Washington" and "Red Jacket."

He even won over the Natchez Indians, and the Senecas, one of the Iroquois Nations, who had always been enemies of the French.

He held the entire Mississippi Valley, and, within six months, had recaptured a number of the old French forts on the Great Lakes. The British garrisons and colonial troops got them back again and scattered the tribes, and Pontiac in the end was obliged to make a peace of unconditional submission (1765). Three years later he was brutally murdered by a drunken Indian.

England's Betrayal of Her Colonies

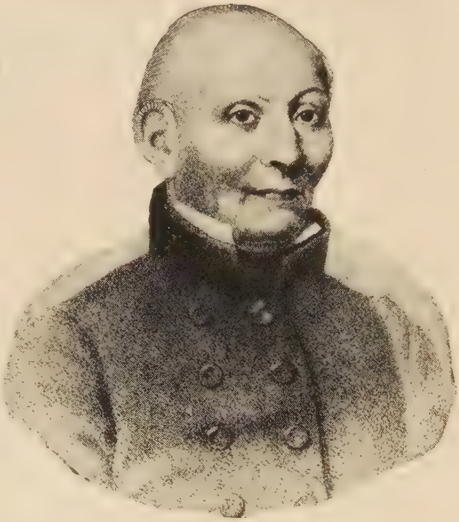
In 1763 the government in England issued a proclamation forbidding the colonists to settle in any of the territory from the crest of the Alleghenies to the Mississippi River. The purpose was to keep this vast region for the Indians, in order to increase the profitable fur trade and also to prevent the colonists from becoming too strong and independent.

Do you see what that meant?

England had secured the interests of her traders at the expense and to the peril of her own large and growing colonies, which now numbered two million people. Virginia had begun the war, and all the colonies had fought for nine years in defense of their sea-to-sea charters granted by English kings, and to secure themselves against attack. They had paid their own expenses, voting taxes and maintaining colonial militia. They had helped defeat and drive out the French, won half the continent for England, and all but broken the power of the Algonquins. Now, by this proclamation, their rights were denied, and the Indians firmly entrenched in their rear. More effectually than before, they were shut in on the narrow seaboard, forbidden to colonize or trade beyond the mountains.

Baffled and angry, the colonies seethed with discontent. In union they had found strength, proved their worth and power, and gained a spirit of independence. With France gone they need never again be involved in the quarrels of European kings. Against the Indians they had always defended themselves, and would continue to do so. They had had no hand in making this proclamation and there was little disposition to submit to its unjust and even dangerous terms.

Black Hawk in American Dress



As a young man, Black Hawk was a fierce and sometimes cruel savage, in spite of the benevolent, kindly expression in his eyes as we see him here, an old man. He gained great influence over his people by his absolute honesty, his eloquence and great personal bravery. He was 5 feet 4 inches tall, had a full, rather large mouth, a high Roman nose, piercing, thoughtful eyes with very scanty eyebrows, and a high forehead which, as a young man, seemed higher still because he plucked out the hair almost to the top of his head, leaving only a scalp lock. This picture of him was painted when he was sent East as a captive to Fortress Monroe, and shows him in American dress and without the scalp lock. Notice the tatooing on his ear.

Further Acts of Injustice

Your history tells you how the English parliament next proceeded to pass trade laws for the colonies which seemed as tyrannous and blighting as those of Spain in Spanish America; to quarter an army of 10,000 British regulars on colonies that had no need of them, and, for the first time, to levy stamp duties and internal taxes for imperial purposes. All these measures were bitterly resented and defied, and some of them were so impossible of enforcement that they were revoked. Any one of these things, alone, could probably have been dealt with without revolution. Taken together they seemed a denial of those rights as Englishmen, for which their forefathers had fought from Magna Charta to the Bill of Rights.

Emigration had begun to flow westward even before the war, for Massachusetts, Virginia and

The Irresistible Westward Tide

eastern Pennsylvania were becoming crowded. Hardy English, German and Scotch-Irish emigrants had slowly fought their way to the mountain crest. Living the hard life of the frontier, remote from towns and courts, and obliged to rely upon themselves, they cared no more for a royal proclamation than for the bark of the timber wolf at their cabin doors in the wilderness. At the end of the war settlers began to pour down the Ohio into Kentucky, and through the Cumberland Gap into Tennessee. Wheeling, West Virginia, was founded in 1769, and in the same year Daniel Boone reached Kentucky. He soon had a fort at Boonesboro, and George Rogers Clark had another outpost at Harrodsburg. Every foot in the "dark and bloody ground" of Kentucky was won through horrid massacres, burnings, sieges and treacherous ambushes. And it became increasingly clear that the Indians were furnished arms at the British forts and trading posts at Detroit and Pittsburgh.

England the Enemy of Her Colonies

The Iroquois Six Nations, too, long allies of the English colonists, were learning to look upon their white neighbors with contempt and suspicion, and to the British government for friendship. They had been confirmed in their ownership of western New York colony by treaty with England; their spokesman was the Indian agent, Sir William Johnson, and their trade was transferred from Albany to Fort Niagara. By treaties, taking over the immensely profitable fur trade of the interior built up by the French, and by payment in arms, the mother country won over all the Indians—Algonquins, Iroquois and Gulf tribes—in the eastern half of the United States. Thus, with incredible stupidity, and for her own temporary profit, she practically aided and abetted savage warfare against her own loyal colonists. Under an unintelligent king and a corrupt government in London, England had come to the same vicious view of her colonies as Spain, not as an empire, to be fostered and developed, but as an alien land and subject people, to be exploited.

But the people of the English colonies were not helpless and they did not propose to be submissive. It was in 1765, the year peace was signed with Pontiac and a British regiment marched across Illinois to Fort Chartres on the Mississippi, that Patrick Henry, voicing the resentment at England's latest acts of tyranny, raised the cry of revolution in the House of Burgesses of Virginia: "Taxation without representation is tyranny."

If You Had Been Otis What Would You Have Said?

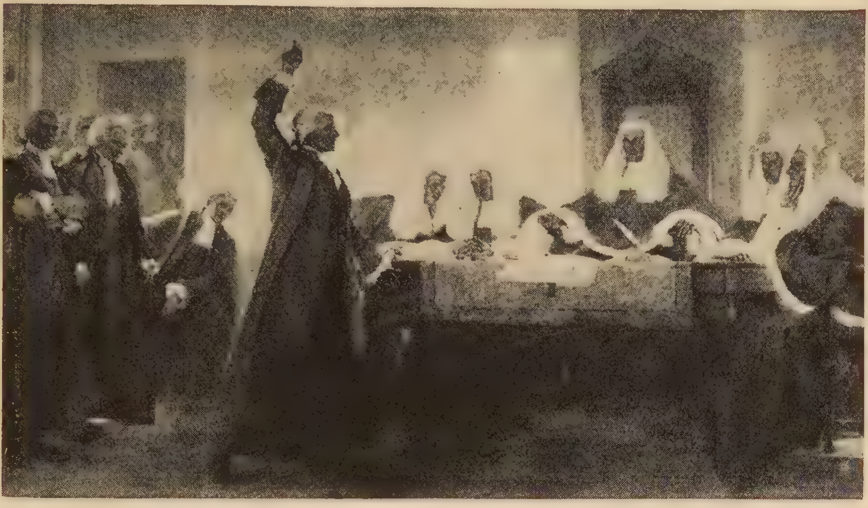
The heavy duty laid by the English on all sugar and molasses imported from other than British possessions, worked a great hardship on the colonists. Think of trying to live without sugar and molasses! And people just couldn't afford them with the duty added.

As a result smuggling became common. To catch the smugglers, the customs officers took out search warrants. But here was the trouble: to secure the warrants it was necessary to state what goods they were searching for and the place to be searched. This gave the smugglers warning and they removed the goods. What the officers wanted was a general warrant, called a "writ of assistance," that would enable them to enter anybody's house or place of business at any time and examine any suspected goods. This sounds so reasonable, from the British standpoint, that we may well wonder what argument the colonists could offer against it. You could hardly expect to prevent violations of law if you first had to notify the violator so that he could hide all evidences of what he had been up to. But now, listen, and you will hear what a strong argument Otis is offering in this famous speech of his:

"This writ of assistance," he says, "is the worst instrument of arbitrary power, the most destructive of English liberty that was ever found in an English law book. By this writ, officers may enter our homes when they please, break locks, bars, and everything in their way; and whether they break, through malice or revenge, no man, no court, can inquire." To prove this he goes on to cite, among others, the instance of a judge who called a customs officer before him to answer a charge of swearing on the Sabbath day. As soon as the judge had finished talking, the customs officer said, "Now I will show you a little of *my* power. I command you to permit me to search your house for uncustomed goods"; and went on to search the house from garret to cellar.

Otis defends his conduct in resigning his position as Advocate General, in which he would have been obliged to appear as a lawyer for the English Government. "Let the consequences be what they will," he says, "I am determined to proceed. The only principles of public conduct that are worthy of a gentleman or a man are to sacrifice estate, ease, health, and even life to the sacred call of his country. I do not say that when brought to the test I shall be invincible. I pray God," he adds, "I may never be brought to the melancholy trial, but if ever I should, it will then be known how far I can reduce to practice, principles which I know to be founded in truth."

Leaders of the Revolution



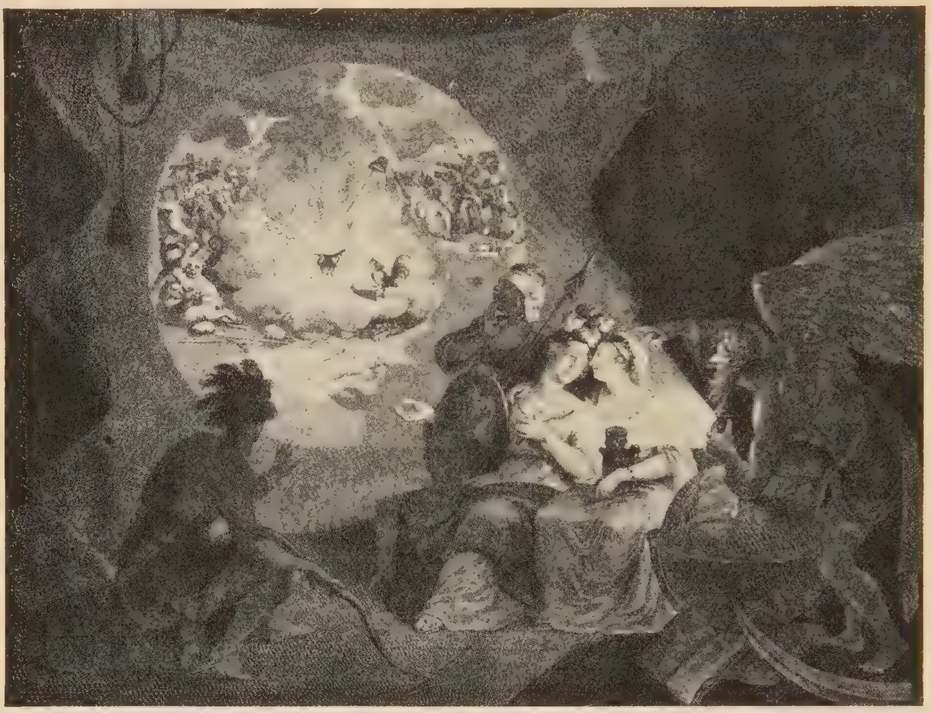
"This writ of assistance," he says, "is the worst instrument of arbitrary power, the most destructive of English liberty that was ever found in an English law book. By this writ officers may enter our homes when they please, break locks, bars, and everything in their way; and whether they break, through malice or revenge, no man, no court, can inquire."

IF you have read the articles on our government you know how many men, working in well-organized departments, it takes to attend to the business of the United States even in times of peace. During war there is a great deal more to do. What do you think would happen if there were no central authority to direct the defense of the country—if each of the forty-eight states was a little nation in itself? They would be about as easy to conquer as it was to break the separated sticks of the bundle in the fable. "In union there is strength." You know that from the teamwork necessary to win a football game.

Days of the Ununited States

But that was exactly the situation in the English colonies during the Revolutionary War. Under the same conditions Napoleon conquered, one by one, the several hundred separate states and free cities of Germany. And yet, the Americans won that war. You think you know why. The colonies did unite and establish the Continental Congress to act for all. Yes, but that body of wise and patriotic men was simply advisory. It had no authority to vote taxes, coin or borrow money to carry on the war, and it had no power to compel any colony to furnish a single soldier or a single dollar. Each of the thirteen colonies de-

An English Cartoon of the Tea Tax Tempest



This Revolutionary cartoon was published in 1783 in London. It is called "The Tea Tax Tempest or Old Time with His Magick Lan-Thorn." Father Time, leaning on the world, is throwing a picture on the screen and is described as saying to the spectators, "There you see the little Hot Spit Fire Teapot that has done all The Mischief. There you see the Old British Lion basking before the American Bon Fire (the Revolution), whilst the French Cock is blowing up a storm About his ears to Destroy him and his young Whelps. There you see Miss America grasping at the Cap of Liberty. There you see The British forces, beyoked and cramped, flying before the Congress Men. There you see the thirteen Stripes and Rattlesnake (another American emblem) exalted. There you see the Stamped Paper Helping to make the Pot Boil."

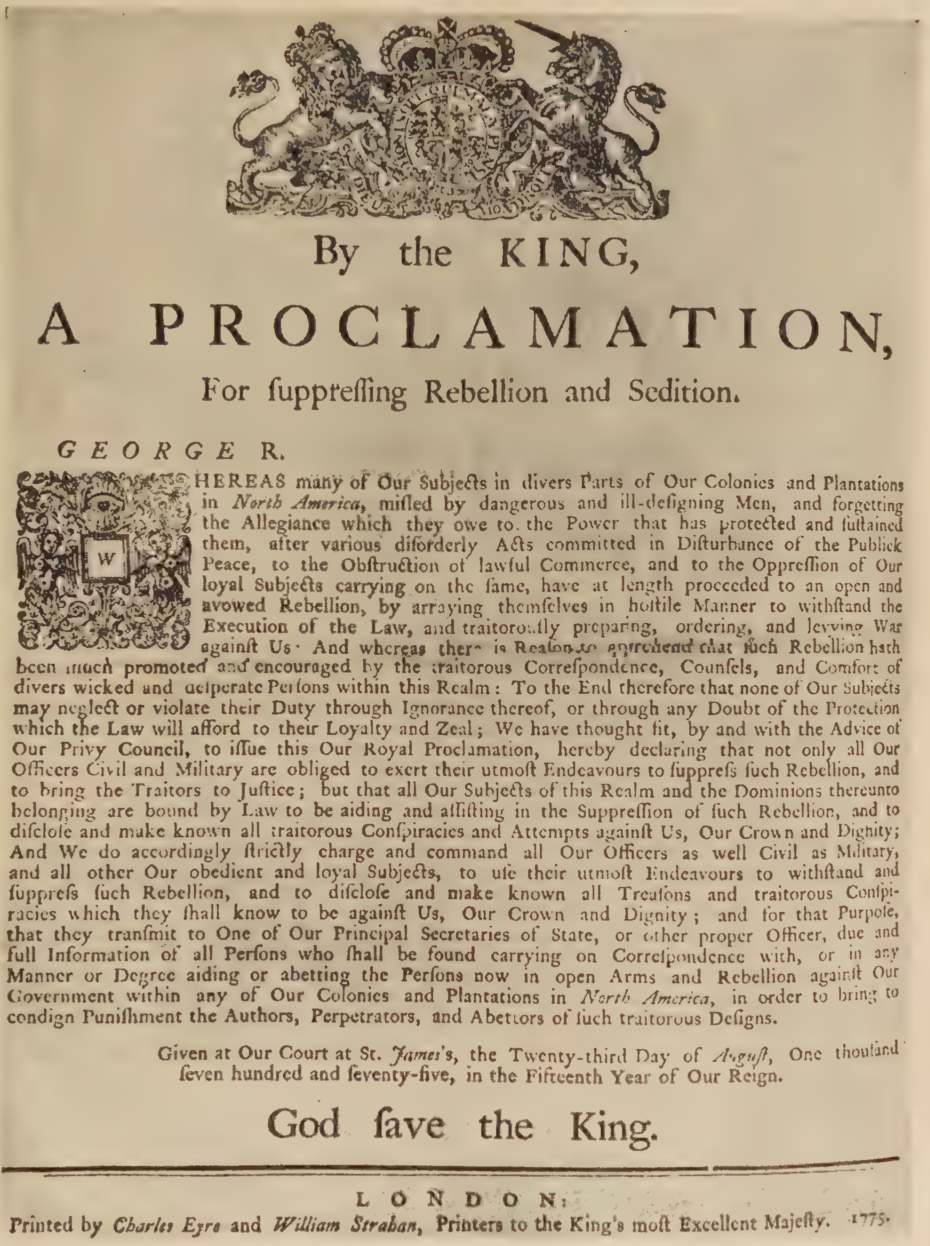
cided for itself just what it could and should do. Washington, as Commander-in-Chief of the army, had fourteen masters and was obliged to beg each of them for men and supplies.

We won that war chiefly through good luck. We had three advantages to offset this fundamental weakness. First, after 1778, England was also at war with France, and could not spare her best officers and enough troops to put down rebellion in her colonies. Second, we should not forget the timely help in soldiers, warships and money from France, without which there would have been no victory at Yorktown. But most important of all, perhaps, was the surprising number of men of very great ability and devoted patriotism who appeared and took the leadership. Wherever there was work to be done there was just the man to do it.

A Time of Great Leaders

These leaders came from everywhere and in the nick of time—from the office, the plantation, the pulpit, the assembly hall, the counting house, the ship deck, the schoolroom of every colony. Dropping their private businesses and risking home, family, fortune, even life it-

King George and the "Rebels"



By the KING,

A PROCLAMATION,

For ſuppreſſing Rebellion and Sedition.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS many of Our Subjects in divers Parts of Our Colonies and Plantations in *North America*, miſled by dangerous and ill-deſigning Men, and forgetting the Allegiance which they owe to the Power that has protected and ſuſtained them, after various diſorderly Acts committed in Diſturbance of the Publick Peace, to the Obſtruction of lawful Commerce, and to the Oppreſſion of Our loyal Subjects carrying on the ſame, have at length proceeded to an open and avowed Rebellion, by arraying themſelves in hoſtile Manner to withſtand the Execution of the Law, and traitorouſly preparing, ordering, and levying War againſt Us. And whereas there is Reaſon to apprehend that ſuch Rebellion hath been much promoted and encouraged by the traitorous Correſpondence, Counſels, and Comfort of divers wicked and deſperate Perſons within this Realm: To the End therefore that none of Our Subjects may neglect or violate their Duty through Ignorance thereof, or through any Doubt of the Protection which the Law will afford to their Loyalty and Zeal; We have thought fit, by and with the Advice of Our Privy Council, to iſſue this Our Royal Proclamation, hereby declaring that not only all Our Officers Civil and Military are obliged to exert their utmoſt Endeavours to ſuppreſs ſuch Rebellion, and to bring the Traitors to Juſtice; but that all Our Subjects of this Realm and the Dominions thereunto belonging are bound by Law to be aiding and aſſiſting in the Suppreſſion of ſuch Rebellion, and to diſcloſe and make known all traitorous Conſpiracies and Attempts againſt Us, Our Crown and Dignity; And We do accordingly ſtrictly charge and command all Our Officers as well Civil as Military, and all other Our obedient and loyal Subjects, to uſe their utmoſt Endeavours to withſtand and ſuppreſs ſuch Rebellion, and to diſcloſe and make known all Treaſons and traitorous Conſpiracies which they ſhall know to be againſt Us, Our Crown and Dignity; and for that Purpoſe, that they tranſmit to One of Our Principal Secretaries of State, or other proper Officer, due and full Information of all Perſons who ſhall be found carrying on Correſpondence with, or in any Manner or Degree aiding or abetting the Perſons now in open Arms and Rebellion againſt Our Government within any of Our Colonies and Plantations in *North America*, in order to bring to condign Puniſhment the Authors, Perpetrators, and Abettors of ſuch traitorous Deſigns.

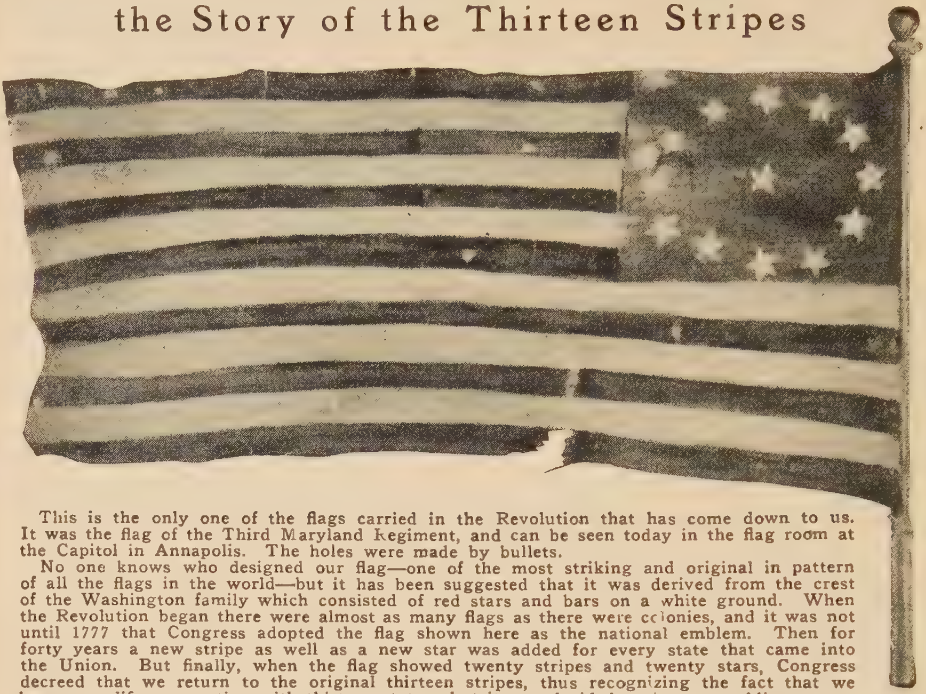
Given at Our Court at St. *James*'s, the Twenty-third Day of *Auguſt*, One thouſand ſeven hundred and ſeventy-five, in the Fifteenth Year of Our Reign.

God ſave the King.

LONDON:
Printed by *Charles Eyre* and *William Straban*, Printers to the King's moſt Excellent Majeſty. 1775.

If you had been a small boy in the time of the Revolution, you would have seen proclamations like this with the royal coat-of-arms above them posted about in public places. As you see by the date at the bottom, it was issued on the 23rd of August. The colonies had not yet declared their independence, but the war which won their independence was already under way. The battle of Lexington had been fought in the previous May and the battle of Bunker Hill, in June. But the prospect of winning in the war against the most powerful empire in the world was more than doubtful, and the king hoped, as you see by the wording of this proclamation, to draw away from the colonists the support of all who were lukewarm in their resistance or selfish enough to consult their own safety in preference to the interests of their country.

The Battle-Torn Flag and the Story of the Thirteen Stripes



This is the only one of the flags carried in the Revolution that has come down to us. It was the flag of the Third Maryland Regiment, and can be seen today in the flag room at the Capitol in Annapolis. The holes were made by bullets.

No one knows who designed our flag—one of the most striking and original in pattern of all the flags in the world—but it has been suggested that it was derived from the crest of the Washington family which consisted of red stars and bars on a white ground. When the Revolution began there were almost as many flags as there were colonies, and it was not until 1777 that Congress adopted the flag shown here as the national emblem. Then for forty years a new stripe as well as a new star was added for every state that came into the Union. But finally, when the flag showed twenty stripes and twenty stars, Congress decreed that we return to the original thirteen stripes, thus recognizing the fact that we began our life as a nation with thirteen states; but it was decided to keep on adding a new star for every new state. How many stars does our flag have now?

self, they gave every thought, every hour of time, every dollar, every talent they possessed to the sacred cause of human liberty. Your history tells you of the battles of the Revolution, so we will tell you of the heroic, devoted, and gifted men whose wise leadership won the war.

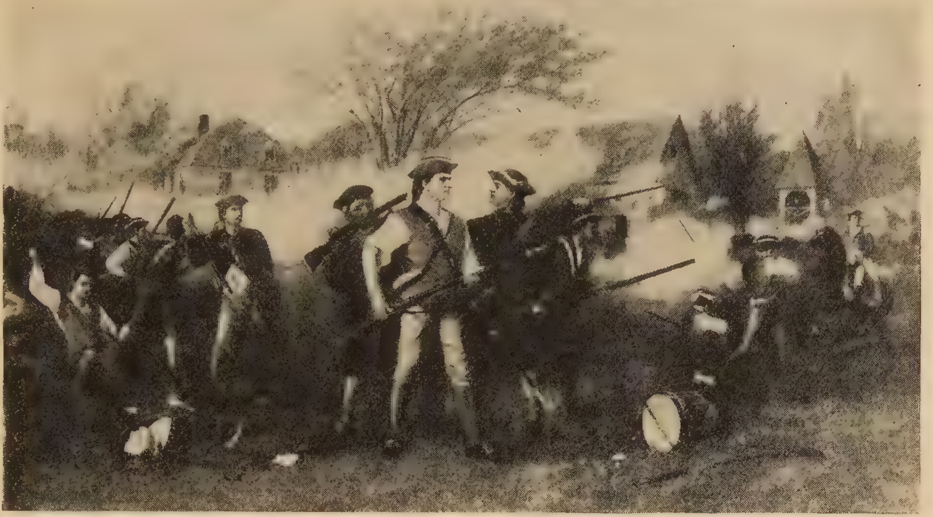
Patrick Henry, the Orator

BEFORE any great human conflict there is apt to appear an inspired public speaker to clarify the thought of the time and to inflame a whole people into action. Preceding the Civil War Lincoln put the moral issue of the day into burning speech. So, ten years before the Revolution, immediately after the passage of the Stamp Act by the British Parliament, Patrick Henry aroused the determined resistance of the colonies with his eloquence. His "Taxation without representation is tyranny," was based solidly on English principles, and was unanswerable.

Patrick Henry's Immortal Speech

The first one of the four American political orators of the first rank, classed with Lincoln, Webster and Clay, Patrick Henry was unknown outside Virginia before he made his first speech in the Virginia House of Burgesses. A young lawyer of Scotch parentage and classical education, he had failed at farming and storekeeping before winning success at the bar. He was only twenty-nine and had been a silent member of the House of Burgesses just nine days when he rose quietly to

Where the Revolution Began



The picture shows a group of the minute men at the Battle of Lexington, and from it you can judge how disorderly their formation was and how they were dressed—just as they came from work, with no attempt at a uniform. At the left of the picture, two men are loading their muskets which are the old-fashioned muzzle-loading kind, of course. And notice the powder horn which each man carries, slung over his shoulder.

offer a series of resolutions defining the rights of a colony, and to declare that the recent Stamp Act was a denial of English guarantees of liberty. Burning with indignation, as were many of his listeners, he cried: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I his Cromwell, and George III——"

"Treason! Treason!" came from many parts of the hall. The speaker turned pale, but, leaning over his desk, he went on firmly to men on their feet and shocked to dead silence: "and George III may well profit by their example. If *this* be treason, make the most of it. Taxation without representation is tyranny."

A shout went up. This was a bold, brave man. He had put the secret thought of all into words, risking ruin in defense of the liberty of all. It would be base and cowardly to desert him. He inflamed not only Virginia but all the colonies to resistance, and that Stamp Act was repealed. For the next ten years of oppression, disorders and efforts to avoid war, Henry was the eloquent spokesman of the rights and the defiance of the colonies. His genius as an orator has been attested by every eminent man of the time. His power lay not only in his happy phrases and eloquent delivery, but in his sincerity. Like Lincoln, he said nothing that he did not passionately believe to be true. A profound thinker, a man of great executive ability and energy, and of spotless character, it has been said of him that his talents would have put him at the head of Rome in her days of glory.

For, behind his words was a man of solid deeds and sober service. In the midst of revolution he organized the colony of Virginia and served as its first governor for five years. He was a leader in the movement for independence, and, by sending George Rogers Clark to capture the British forts northwest of the Ohio, he helped to secure the Mississippi River as our western boundary. Sacrificing a private practice to public duty he was constantly in some drudging, ill-paid or unpaid, office for twenty-six years. He died comparatively poor, in 1791, two years after George Washington was inaugurated President of the United States.

Benjamin Franklin, the Diplomat

NONE of the colonies wanted war, or dreamed of separating from the mother country. For ten long years they tried to secure justice and keep the peace. To this service was devoted the most gifted and admired American ever sent to represent our country in European capitals. It is accepted by historians that, where Franklin failed, no one else could possibly have succeeded.

The Many-Sided Franklin

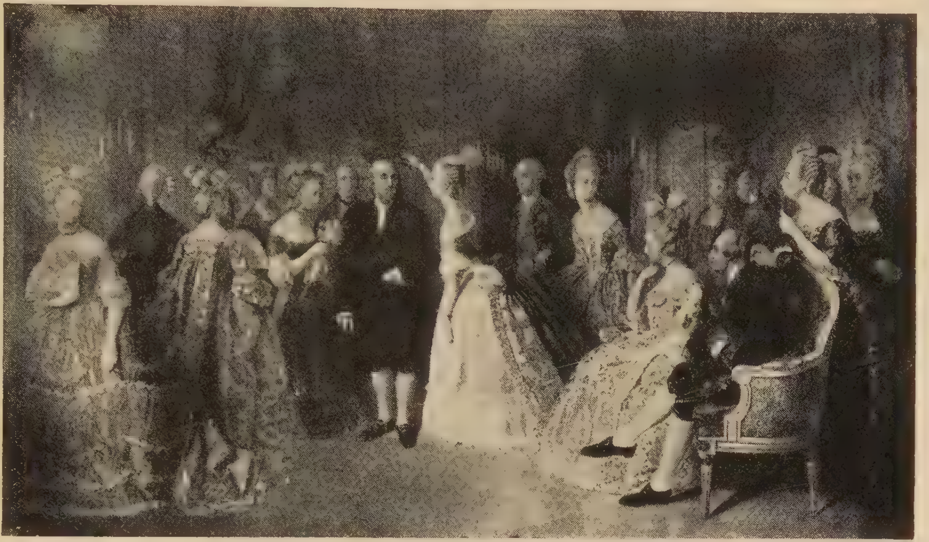
Born in Boston in 1706 of Puritan parents and intended for the pulpit, there was no money for his education, so he was apprenticed to the printing trade. An unruly boy, sarcastic, disputatious, vain and resenting control, he ended by running away from home. At seventeen he found himself in Philadelphia, with one dollar, a trade, plenty of self-confidence and a sudden conviction that he had very serious faults of character. He promptly turned over a new leaf, and was ever afterwards noted for his patience and good manners. By twenty-three he was the foremost journalist in the colonies. His weekly *Pennsylvania Gazette* still lives in *The Saturday Evening Post.* His wise and witty "Poor Richard's Almanac" was known in every frontier cabin. With incredible rapidity he accumulated wealth and learning. He studied the French, Spanish and Latin languages and literature, was deeply read in philosophy, and experimented in science and invention. He kept the earliest weather records and made important discoveries in electricity.

Big and little things alike interested him. He organized police and fire departments, introduced street lighting and paving, built an academy of science, and collected books for a circulating library. A patriot of civil life, nothing was done without consulting Dr. Franklin. In 1757 he was sent to London by Pennsylvania to get more help for the colonies in the French and Indian War. He went again in 1764 when the first rumor of the intended Stamp Act reached America. A year later he was representing all the colonies. For the next ten years, with unfailing patience and urbanity, he presented the American view that the colonies were and must be self-governing. His wit and humor, his honesty, practical common sense, moral courage, very profound learning and open-mindedness made him famous. A self-educated man, he was given degrees by Oxford and Edinburgh Universities.

His Great Work in France

On the outbreak of the war he returned from England to help frame the Declaration of Independence. He gave the Continental Congress $20.000 out of his own pocket, and then went to Paris to win the friendship of France. There he represented only poor and struggling rebel col-

Franklin at the Court of France



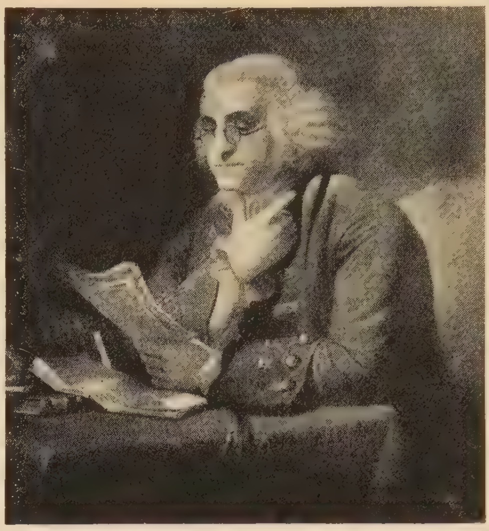
Franklin was sent to France right after the signing of the Declaration of Independence and did a great deal in behalf of our new republic. France was especially sympathetic, because England was at that time her traditional enemy, and because liberty and republicanism were the topics of the day, at court and among the common people. (It was not long after our own Revolution, you remember, that the great French Revolution began, affecting every nation in Europe.) In the picture we see the great ladies of the French court vying with each other to do honor to the simple American citizen in his plain clothes, which are so different from those of the other men present. Notice how he is the center of interest for everyone in the room. The gorgeous hangings and furniture, the rich dresses with their huge skirts, and the elaborate powdered coiffures of both men and women are typical of the French court of Louis XVI.

Franklin's clothes were usually a somber brown, instead of the gaily colored, richly embroidered things that were fashionable. But so popular was this wise old man that others copied him. Gentlemen began to wear "Franklin" hats, and ladies had gloves, shoes, and dresses of "Franklin" brown.

onies, but prince and peasant and the world of learning were at his feet. He was the first great commoner representing a sovereign people. His simple dress became the fashion; his portrait was in palace and cottage; shopkeepers rushed to their doors to see him pass by. We are proud to think that, in mind, character, democratic manner and versatile genius he has become the typical American. In fifteen months he had signed the Treaty of Alliance, got warships and soldiers and an enormous loan of money on almost no security.

When, in 1785, he returned home he had spent nearly thirty years abroad in the service of America. Nearly eighty years of age, he begged for rest. But he helped frame the Constitution, and established the United States Postal Service. In 1790 he helped to form the first society to abolish slavery. This brings him into touch with Lincoln's work of seventy years later. Indeed, Franklin is the one man of early American history who projects himself into the present. Our every improvement would delight him. Were he living now men would "consult Dr. Franklin" in the fields of science, philosophy, literature, and public service. No one feared to go to him for he listened with deference to the humblest, and respected their opinions. This, no less than his wisdom, was the secret of his immense influence. Every vain, arguing, bumptious boy who finds himself unpopular should read Franklin's autobiography and, as Franklin did, mend his manners.

Franklin's Happy Hours in His Library



This is one of the best portraits of Dr. Franklin ever taken. It is known as "The Thumb Portrait." You can see why. Dr. Franklin is here shown in his library looking over some manuscript. This attitude was very common with him when absorbed. The portrait was painted by David Martin in 1767 and is now owned by Henry William Biddle of Philadelphia.

His books were one of his chief sources of happiness throughout his long and useful life. It is said that he had the largest and best private collection in America. In the use of his library, he showed the same ingenuity as in other things. For instance he had a long artificial arm and hand for taking down and putting up books on high shelves. Under the seat of a reclining chair he had steps made, so that when he wanted to reach books on high shelves, he simply turned up the seat and climbed the steps. His great arm chair with rockers had a large fan over it with which he fanned himself and kept off the flies by a slight motion of his foot while reading. That was before the days of screens, remember.

In his last illness, when able to be out of bed, he passed nearly all his time in the library reading and writing When the boys were playing and were very noisy in the lot in front of his room, he would open the window and call to them, "Boys, boys, can't you play without making so much noise? I am reading and it disturbs me very much." The servants in his family testify that he never used a harsh or hasty word to any one.

Washington, the Commander-in-Chief

FOR the highest military leadership the colonies had just one man—Washington. It is fortunate that they had the good sense to know it. Patriots there were, able officers and a few brilliant generals, but no one else worthy of such honor and confidence. Frederick the Great called Washington one of the greatest military geniuses that ever lived. And this was not because of the battles he won. General Gates won the decisive victory at Saratoga; Generals Marion and Greene cleared the South of British troops and drove them into the trap at Yorktown. Washington was defeated at Long Island and at Brandywine.

Where Washington's Genius Lay

His genius lay in avoiding battle; in shutting the enemy up in Boston and New York; in escapes, surprise attacks, as at Trenton and Princeton, in strategy, engineering, swift decision, and in keeping an army together for eight long years ready for the finishing stroke at Yorktown. He not only had fourteen masters in the several colonies and the Continental Congress, but he had to contend with dissension, treason, failure of men and supplies and short and irregular terms of enlistment by which his armies were scarcely trained before they began to melt away. The record was crowned by the terrible winter at Valley Forge—the misery of his men; the delays of a fugitive Congress; the treachery and plots which encompassed him, the growing weariness of the long, slow, indecisive war. It is there, in the darkest hours, that we see him going into the woods to pray for help. He did all by sheer force and nobility of character. Like Lincoln, the man himself was infinitely greater than any and all the things recorded of him.

To understand him you should read the story of his mother and his boyhood in this book. As a boy his elder brother, Lawrence, got him an appointment as a middy in the British Navy, but his widowed mother refused to let him go to sea.

"But," insisted Lawrence, "George has it in him to be a great commander."

"He must first learn to command himself," she said, dryly. Like herself he had a hot, imperious temper.

A Drum Beat Heard Around the World

This old drum has played a very important part in the history of liberty in America, and so throughout the world. It helped to inspire the colonists to make their heroic defense at the battle of Bunker Hill and now has an honored place among the historic relics in the collection of the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company of Boston.

His First Victory Over Himself

You can learn there how this wise mother trained him in self-control. At twenty-one such was his reputation for trustworthiness and discretion that he was chosen to carry a message to the French on the Allegheny. And at the end of the war he was too confused to speak when the Virginia House of Burgesses voted thanks to him for distinguished military services. The Governor said:

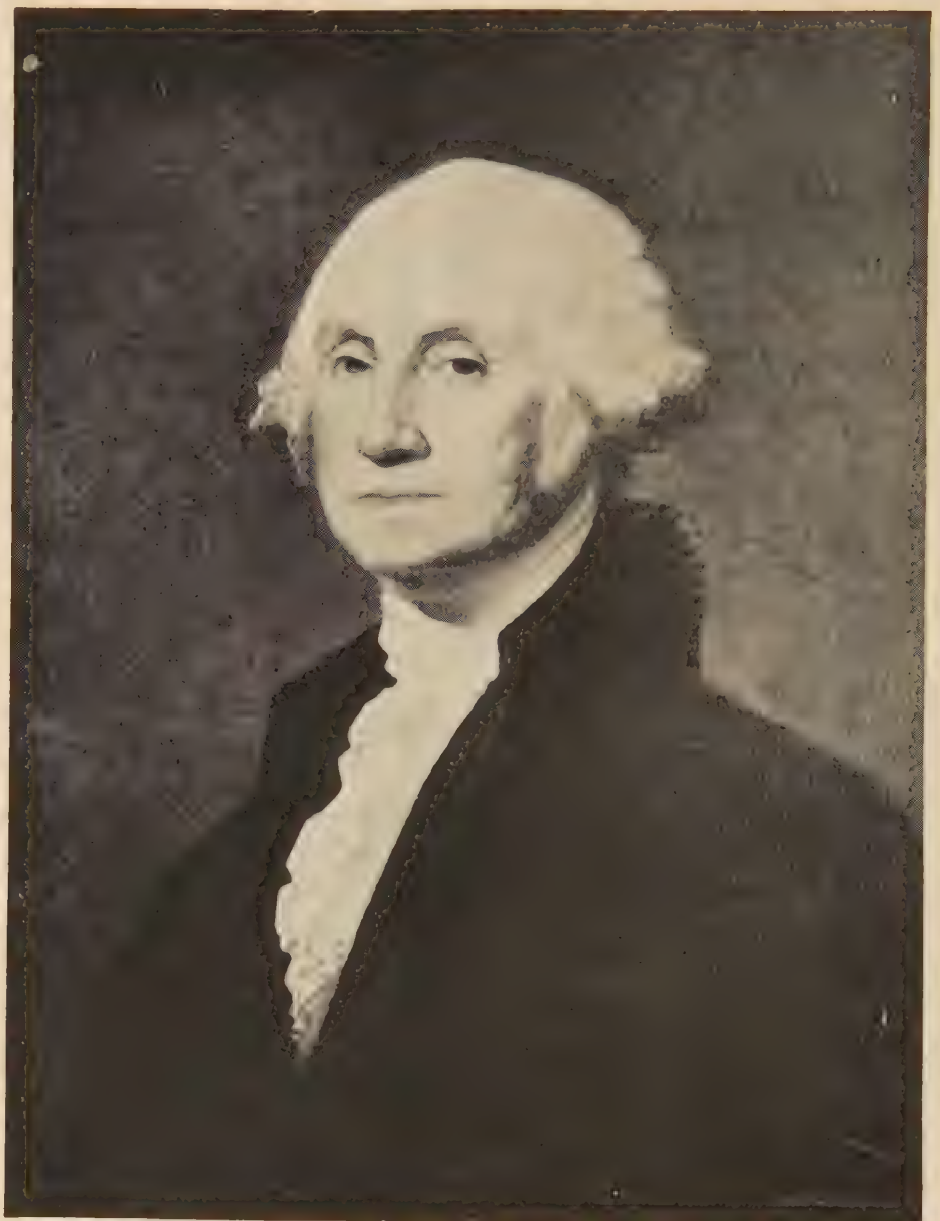
"Sit down, Colonel Washington. Your modesty equals your valor, and that is beyond question."

And beyond question, no other man was thought of, when the Revolution began, to command the army of 17,000 untrained, ill-equipped troops gathered at Boston. Still modest, he doubted his fitness for the task. But he did not hesitate an instant, although, one of the richest of planters; he risked his own and his wife's estates. And if the Revolution had failed, he would certainly have been executed, and probably along with him, Franklin and other leaders. He served without pay and spent $70,000, the income from Mt. Vernon, to meet his own expenses. He thought nothing of rewards or honors, but only of duty well done. In perfect patience he bided his time for the swift surprise march and blow at Yorktown.

The King Who Refused a Crown

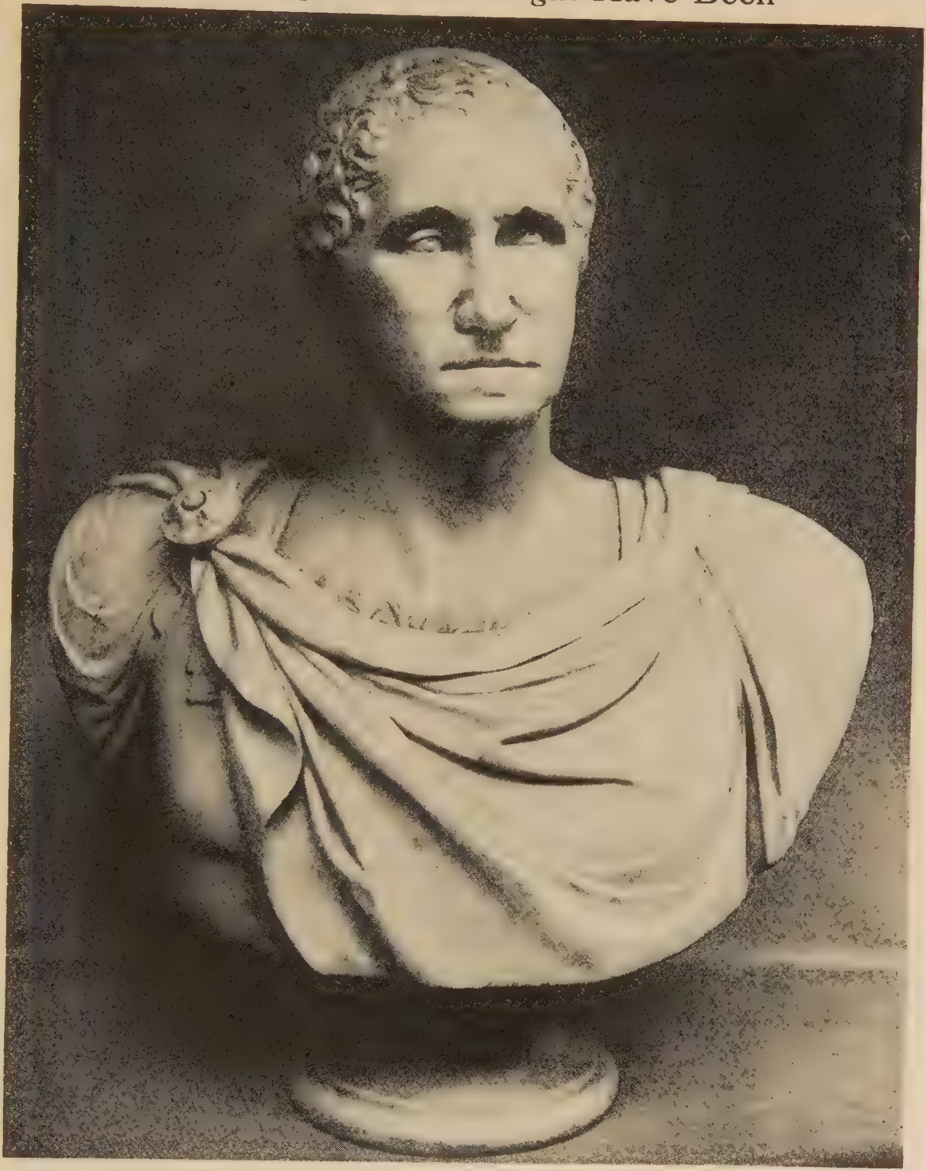
At the end of the war he was the court of last appeal in the six years' work of framing and adopting the Constitution. His canonization began long before his death. He could have made this country a monarchy and worn a crown. And in appearance he was every inch a king. Six feet two in height, his eyes were blue, his hair red-brown, his complexion ruddy, his aspect one of the greatest dignity and nobility. His manner was controlled, his speech brief and well-considered. Enormous weight was attached to his few words. His farewell address is one

Washington as He Was



This is the famous Stuart portrait of Washington, sometimes called the "Athenaeum Washington," because it originally belonged to the Boston Athenaeum. It is now in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. Here is the same Washington, the same firm mouth and chin, the same imperious nose as in the bust by the Italian artist, but how different the expression! Here we have the man as he really was, the man who commanded himself as well as others; who was willing to sacrifice and suffer all for his country's sake in the long struggle of the war, to which we owe the fact that we have this great, free country; who won at last by the nobility of his character no less than by the strength of his intellect, and who, in his darkest hours, went into the woods to ask the help of God. "Like Lincoln, the man himself was infinitely greater than any and all things recorded of him."

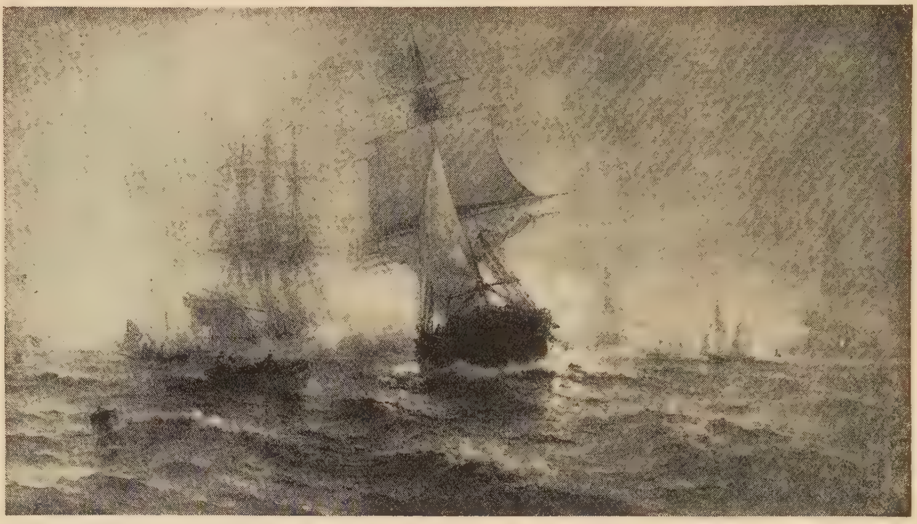
Washington as He Might Have Been



This bust of Washington in the Metropolitan Museum of New York, to which we are indebted for the excellent reproduction, has a remarkable interest in the fact that it shows the great man, not as he was but as he might have been. It is the work of the Italian sculptor, Ceracchi, who came to this country during Washington's administration and made marble portraits of several of our famous men. Perhaps it was because the artist himself was of Roman blood that he unconsciously brought out in such a striking way, the sterner aspects of Washington's character. The classic toga, is, of course, a mere artistic convention, but the face is not that of a man who would sacrifice and endure all for the good of others, as Washington did. It is the face of a Roman conqueror; a military dictator, as Washington could easily have been, had not the noble character which went with his strong face, made him choose to be the Father of his Country.

None of the Roman tyrants who ruled the world with an iron hand ever had a more imperious will, and Frederick the Great, as this history story tells us, ranked him among the greatest of military leaders; but Washington chose to use all his strength of mind and will to serve and not to enslave his country.

The First Salute to the Stars and Stripes



This picture was painted by the American artist, Edward Moran, and shows us the rolling, pitching Ranger, John Paul Jones's first ship, rigged for foul weather, being saluted by the guns of a French flagship.

Before John Paul Jones got the famous Bonhomme Richard from the French government, he had this little, badly equipped vessel, the Ranger, with which he scoured the seas and became the terror of the English. In February, 1788, he came upon a small squadron of the French fleet near the coast of France. The Ranger was gaily flying the stars and stripes which had just recently been adopted as the American national emblem. John Paul Jones sent a messenger to the commander of the French squadron, asking if he would return a salute from the American guns. (Saluting a ship means recognizing the flag it carries, you know. By most nations American fighting vessels were considered pirates and hence unworthy of recognition.) The French commander, of course, was friendly to the American cause as France was also at war with England. He replied that he would return John Paul Jones's salute, so the thirteen little guns of the Ranger fired their heaviest charge in greeting to the Frenchmen. The picture shows the big French flagship in the background at the left, answering with her heavier guns. At this moment John Paul Jones was remarking to his officers, "We hardly know what this means, gentlemen. I believe that we are at the christening of the greatest nation that was ever born into the world."

of the treasured utterances of history. The office of President was cut to the measure of his lofty character. That is why but one other man—Lincoln—has seemed quite to fill the place. John Richard Green, the English historian, has said of him: "Washington is the noblest figure that ever stood in the forefront of a nation's life."

The Father of the American Navy

AMONG the first men to offer their services in the Revolution was one of the naval geniuses of the world's history. As John Paul he had been born in the little port of Kirkbean, Scotland, twenty-eight years before, the son of a poor fisherman. At fourteen, tall, strong, and as skilled in handling a boat as any man, he shipped as a sailor in a vessel in the Virginia tobacco trade. Thus he came to America, and saw his elder brother William, who had been adopted by a distant kinsman and rich planter named Jones. Adoption was offered young John, but this he refused, for he loved the hard, adventurous life of the sea.

At seventeen he was a captain, and at twenty-five knew as much of seamanship as any admiral in His Majesty's navy. Besides he had educated himself, on shipboard, in languages, history, philosophy and polite literature, and in every port he had cultivated the society of leading men. Then, by the death of Mr. Jones, and of his brother, John Paul fell heir to the estate of three thousand acres of tobacco land on the Rappahannock, a mansion, hundreds of slaves, and the name of Jones. Virginia society welcomed him for his handsome person, fine mind and courtly manners. But the life of ease and social pleasure was very little to his liking. At the outbreak of the Revolution he put his estate in the hands of trustees and offered his services to the Continental Congress, to help build up a navy.

"A Scholar and a Gentleman"

It was he, chiefly, who induced each colony to build a warship, and to buy and outfit trading vessels. As lieutenant on one of eight cruisers soon assembled at Philadelphia, he raised the pine tree and rattlesnake flag. Then, in the first American man-of-war to put out to sea, he slipped down the Delaware and began his spectacular career of raiding British commerce. In the course of the war America lost twenty-four of its thirty naval vessels, but they sank or captured one hundred and two ships of the enemy, and no other commander was so bold or successful as John Paul Jones.

Crossing the Atlantic in the Ranger, and entering the Irish Sea, he destroyed ships, burned a seaport, and took an armed schooner as a prize to France. In the Bonhomme Richard he captured the Serapis in one of the most brilliant of naval victories. Lashing his sinking ship to the enemy he boarded it and then cut his own vessel loose. For this he was made a Chevalier of France. America could only vote him thanks and a gold medal. The young republic had no navy and no money to build one. The title of admiral would have been but an empty honor.

Epic Exploits of the Sea Fighter

Conscious of his genius, loving his hard-earned fame, he could be content with no other employment. For a time he served as an admiral in the Russian navy. But his heart was with people struggling for liberty. At the beginning of the French Revolution he hastened to Paris to offer his services. There he died in 1792, a week after being offered the command of the navy of the new French Republic. Only forty-five when he died, Napoleon deplored his untimely end, saying that, had he lived France would have had an admiral worthy to meet Nelson.

He did not end his days in poverty and neglect, as was so long believed, for he had sold his Virginia plantation for $50,000, and lived on the income of good investments. And he had, in Paris, his circle of devoted friends. His body was placed in a lead coffin to be shipped to America, but in the confused days of The Terror it was hurried into an unmarked grave. The coffin was found in 1905, and brought home in a United States warship. With all the honors of an admiral, John Paul Jones was laid away in the grounds of the Naval Academy at Annapolis. After a strange, adventurous, wandering life:

"Home is our sailor, home from
the sea."

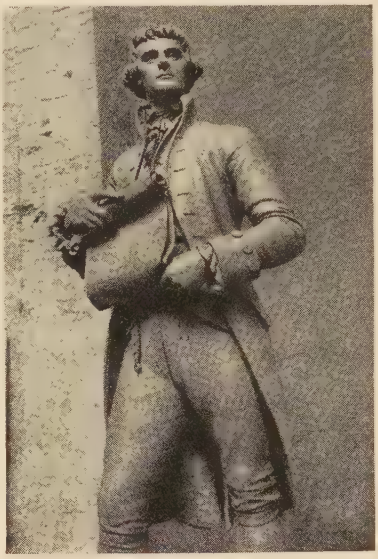
The Author of the Immortal Declaration

Among the spectators in the Virginia House of Burgesses, when Patrick Henry made his first fiery speech, was the twenty-year-old son of a planter, who was in Williamsburg, the capital, studying law. When an old man, and one risen to loftier fame than the orator of the Revolution, Thomas Jefferson loved to speak of that thrilling memory. He often said: "Patrick Henry was the greatest orator who ever lived."

Possibly that speech was the turning point in his own career. A few years later he was himself in the House of Burgesses, and had written a pamphlet on "The Rights of America" that made him known outside of Virginia. He entered the public service with the same tireless zeal that had won him the title of "the hardest student ever in William and Mary College." There he had often studied fifteen hours a day. On the very day that Washington took command of the army at Cambridge, Jefferson took his seat in the Continental Congress. Earnest, diligent, prompt, explicit, decisive in committee work, he very quickly became one of the leaders, although he was but thirty-two.

In person Jefferson, like Washington, was over six feet tall, and very erect. His features were delicate, his eyes a bright hazel, his hair auburn, his complexion ruddy. He had an air of distinction, but his manners were so simple and democratic that he was popular with all classes. In birth, fortune, intellect and social connections he was an aristocrat, but he was a lifelong apostle of democracy. His natural sympathies and his political principles were summed up in his immortal phrase: "All men are created free and equal." Even in the White House he would have no ceremony which smacked of kings and royal courts. "Jeffersonian simplicity" has become one of the small coins of speech.

Reading the Declaration



In our story of the origin of the great political parties is another portrait of Jefferson, painted when he was fifty-seven years old. Compare it with this statue which represents him as reading the Declaration of Independence. "In person, Jefferson, like Washington, was over six feet tall and very erect."

Jefferson was one of a committee of five, which included Franklin and John Adams, to draft the Declaration of Independence, but such was his gift for putting things clearly and vigorously in writing, that he was left to work it out alone. Very few changes were made in his wording. It is, without doubt, the most noted and influential political document ever written. In its clear and fundamental treatment, in its eloquent declaration of the rights of man, it clarified, developed and united the thought and spirit of the colonists, dismembered an empire, destroyed age-old privileges, founded a new nation on principles of liberty and equality, and furnished a model for every people since who have struggled for the right of self-government.

Living until 1826, more than a quarter of a century after Washington and Franklin passed from the stage, Jefferson was long the most distinguished man in America, and known as "The Sage of Monticello." He succeeded Franklin as Minister to France, served in Washington's Cabinet, and was twice elected President. He purchased Louisiana and sent explorers overland to the Pacific. But all other services he counted as nothing beside the immortal Declaration. On the plain granite shaft which marks his resting place on his old estate at Monticello is cut the simple inscription:

THOMAS JEFFERSON
AUTHOR OF
THE DECLARATION OF
INDEPENDENCE.

Robert Morris, the Financier

SEVERAL times in the course of the Revolutionary War Washington's army almost went to pieces for lack of money to feed, clothe and pay the soldiers. The Continental Congress had no power to levy taxes, coin or borrow money. It did issue bills of credit to pay for supplies, loan office certificates, promissory notes and lottery tickets, all of which were so worthless that the phrase "not worth a Continental" still lives. France loaned us money on practically no security, and guaranteed a loan from Holland. Each colony issued its own money, chiefly paper notes, which had little or no value, and most of the colonies failed or were really unable to pay their share of the general expenses.

Money Matters in a Bad Way

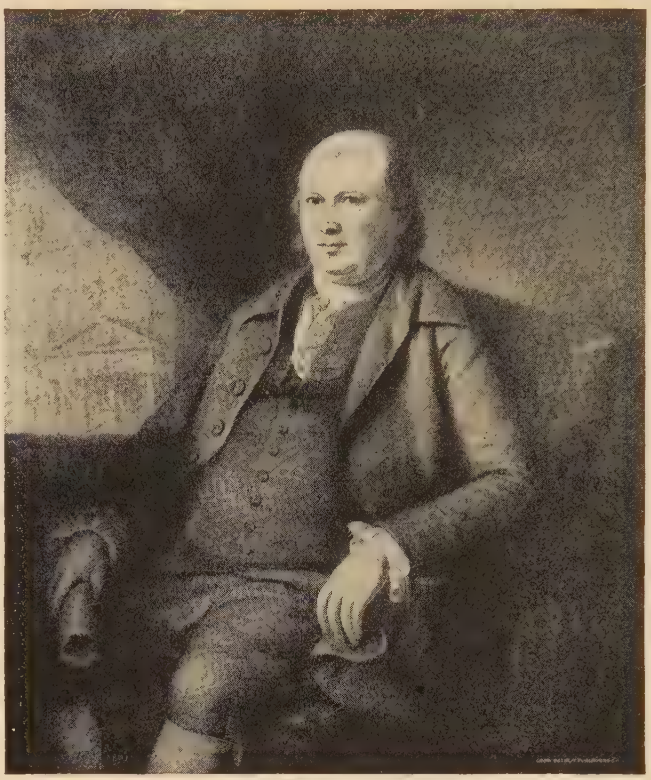
The office of financial manager for the Continental Congress was entrusted to Robert Morris, of Philadelphia. An English immigrant boy of thirty years before, he had risen to wealth and influence in banking, and was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. And not a soldier in the field defended his country with greater zeal, or was willing to sacrifice more in the cause than this colonial financier. Often, in emergencies, he supplied Washington's army from his own pocket. On two occasions he saved the Revolution from failure by his timely help.

Every history tells you how, on Christmas night, 1777, Washington crossed the Delaware, and captured a thousand Hessians at Trenton. His army, starving and freezing and leaving their bloody footprints in the snow, had been hard to keep together in that terrible winter at Valley Forge. The time for which many had enlisted would expire on New Year's Day, but these men were anxious to remain in the ranks if they could be assured of supplies. In this extremity Washington appealed to Robert Morris. The banker, roused from his bed at dawn of a bitter New Year's morning, went from house to house begging money. Before noon he sent $50,000 to Washington, who, two days later, attacked Princeton, escaped a British trap, and camped for the winter on the hills of Morristown.

Gift That Saved a Nation

Again, in 1781, Robert Morris borrowed the enormous sum of

Robert Morris, the Financier



This portrait of Robert Morris is one of the most famous of our historic pictures. It is the work of Peale. The original is in the Pennsylvania Academy of Fine Arts. It shows Morris seated in a richly upholstered leather chair, at a window overlooking the United States Treasury. As a matter of fact, his residence did not overlook the Treasury, but a picture of it is shown merely as a symbol to express the country's indebtedness to him for his management of the national finances during the Revolutionary period.

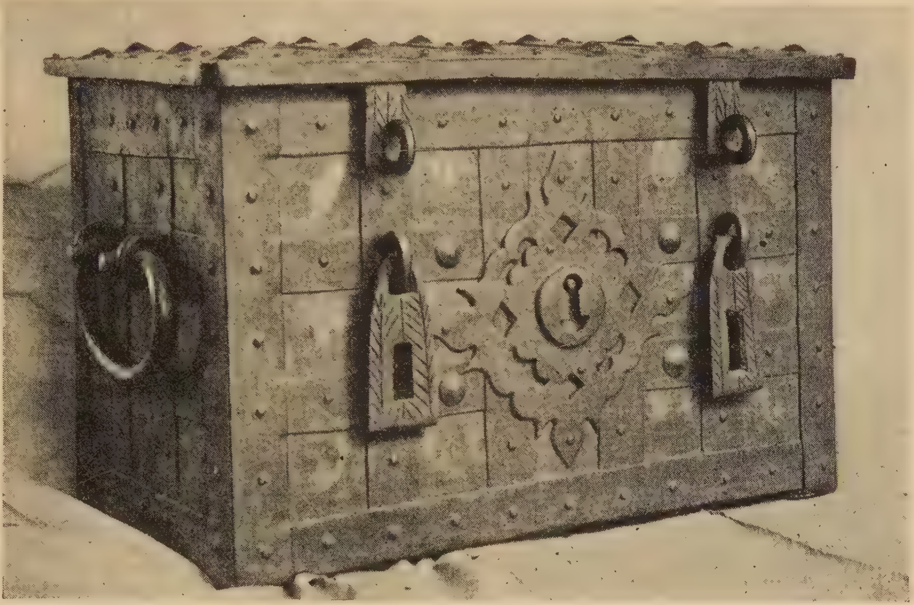
$1,400,000 on his own notes, to finance the march and siege of Yorktown. Had this sum not been repaid him, he would have been ruined in the day of victory for the country. After the war he was long prominent in private business and the public service, but he finally lost his fortune by speculating in western lands. Washington, Franklin and other powerful friends, who could have helped him, were dead, so he lay in prison for debt for four years, and died in poverty in 1806.

George Rogers Clark, the Frontier Fighter

DO you remember that at the close of the French and Indian and Pontiac's war, about 1769, Daniel Boone and other frontiersmen, crossed the mountains, and fought for a foothold in "the dark and bloody ground" of Kentucky and Tennessee?

The ablest of these men was George Rogers Clark, who built a fort at Harrodsburg. On hearing the news of Lexington, he organized

The Good Fortune We Owe to this Chest



We owe a great deal to this old chest, for this was the savings bank of Robert Morris; and it was largely owing to the fact that he risked his personal fortune to pay the wages of the soldiers in the American Revolution, and to meet other expenses, that the cause of America and Liberty won the day. After having done all this, he finally lost his fortune and was even confined in prison for debt, according to the cruel laws of those times, during the last years of his life. This is something to remember when we are called upon to make sacrifices for our country and to perform services for the public good.

This chest you can see in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. It is about three feet long and two feet high. Such chests were made by the carpenter and the locksmith. The iron clasps were fastened upward through those two eyes which, like all the other iron work, were wrought, and through these eyes were put heavy padlocks; so you see it would take almost as much time to open this old chest as it does the modern combination safe lock.

You will notice that they did not forget the ornamental part of the chest. Not only are the clasps ornamented, but in the squares between the bands on the front are pictures of birds and tulips. This was, perhaps, done by a Dutchman; you know Holland is the land of tulips.

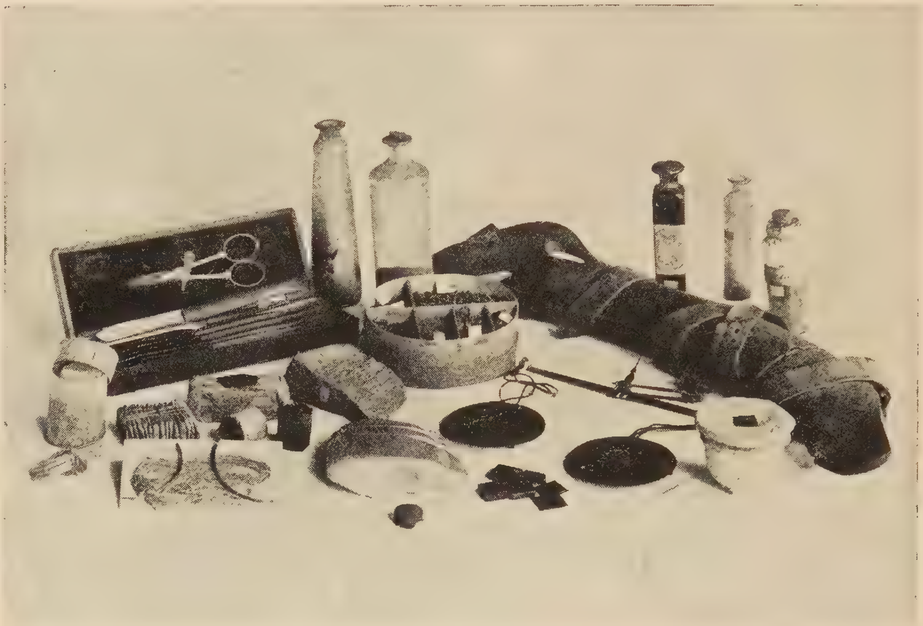
Kentucky into a county of the new state of Virginia, and got himself elected to the Assembly. In the capital at Williamsburg, he met again an old friend and neighbor in Governor Patrick Henry. To him he unfolded an ambitious plan. Since the Indian War the old French forts northwest of the Ohio had been held by British garrisons, and there, too, were the trading posts at which Indians were being supplied with arms and incited to fall upon the undefended frontiers of the seaboard colonies. Clark proposed to capture these forts and break up this traffic. Governor Henry approved of his plan, but could give him little aid.

But Clark was determined. Gathering 180 backwoodsmen at Pittsburgh, he built boats and floated down the Ohio. At Corn Island, opposite Louisville, other "long knives," as the pioneers were called by the Indians, joined him. Leaving the boats at the mouth of the Ohio, the little force marched north across the wooded swamps and prairies to Kaskaskia, Illinois, the old French capital, where the British had built Fort Gage on the low bluff. This was taken by surprise attack. The French villagers welcomed the Ken-

The Surprise at Kaskaskia

tuckians, for the French alliance had been announced. Lafayette was fighting with Washington, and loyalty to the American rebels meant loyalty to Old France.

From the Doctor's Medicine Chest



All these things are from the medicine chest of Dr. Solomon Drowne, a distinguished physician, who served his country in a professional capacity during the Revolutionary War. The long object on the right with straps around it, is a set of splints used in binding broken limbs. The little white jar contains healing ointment. To the left of it is a pair of scales for weighing medicine. In front of the scales you see the little square weights. The small round object to the left of the weights is a bone trepanned from the skull of a soldier of the Revolution. On the left is a case containing surgical instruments. The round box, with numerous compartments, to the left contained various kinds of bugs ground to powder in a mortar with a pestle, and used for plasters and other purposes.

There were no medical schools in those days, and young men who wanted to be doctors served as apprentices to established physicians. They ground the powders, mixed the pills, rode with the doctor on his rounds, and held the horses while he visited the patients and got a chance to ask him questions as they went from house to house. When not engaged in other duties, the young medical student swept the office, dusted the bottles and shelves, kept the skeletons properly wired, and answered the night bell.

The French now joined these pioneer forces, and, after a dreadful march across frozen swamps and streams in mid-winter, Clark captured Vincennes, Indiana. Civil rule was soon established by Virginia, which organized five big states of today into the County of Illinois. It was these daring adventures, perilous marches and brilliant military feats of Clark's which won the Mississippi River as the western boundary of the United States at the close of the war. Virginia made this pioneer soldier, who won and held for her all for which the colony had fought in the long French and Indian War, a brigadier-general, and gave him 8,000 acres of land near the Ohio River in Indiana. That sounds magnificent, on paper, but the country was unsettled. As poor as any other backwoodsman of that early day, General Clark lived and died on his wild, ducal estate. But his name was written indelibly in our nation's history.

Nathan Hale, the Martyr-Patriot

ANY man who loves his country, and who serves it with unselfishness and zeal in any way that he can, whether in camp or court, legislative hall or counting house, is a patriot. But, best of all, the world understands and loves the self-sacrifice of the soldier. And when the soldier is a youth of brilliant promise, who goes voluntarily, on a secret and dangerous military mission, and suffers nobly the shameful death of a spy, his memory is held in special reverence. Such a hero was Nathan Hale.

He came of the best Puritan ancestry, of the family which gave us Dr. Edward Everett Hale, author of "The Man Without a Country." News of the battle of Lexington found him, a recent graduate from Yale, teaching school in the village of New London, Connecticut, to earn money to continue his studies for the ministry. He was much admired for his mental and moral gifts, his handsome person, and for his prowess in all clean, athletic sports. Fifty years afterwards his pupils described their twenty-year-old schoolmaster of that smiling April morning. His eyes were a clear, dark blue, his color ruddy with health, his bearing manly, his face lighted with fine intelligence. For any child or animal in trouble his sympathy was quick, his help generous and kind.

The Teacher and His Country

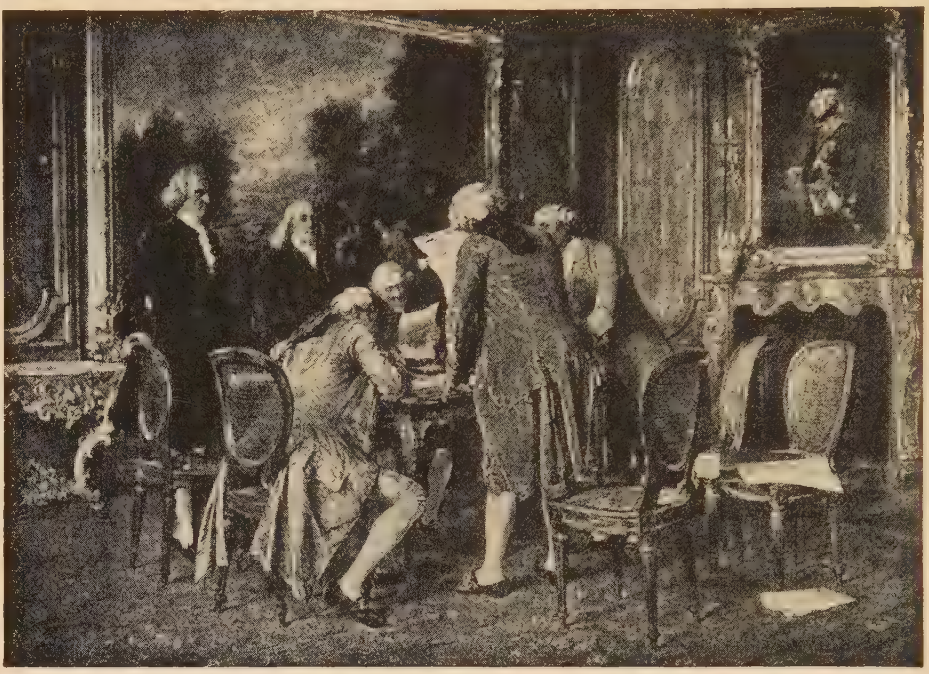
The town crier passed the school, ringing his bell and calling out the dreadful news of battle. As the people thronged into the streets, the schoolmaster stood up to his full six feet of beautiful and serious young manhood. In a voice described as low, sweet and musical, he said: "School is dismissed. The time has come for men to fight, that you children may know the blessings of peace and liberty." In the town meeting he said: "Let us march at once, and never lay down our arms until we have won independence for our bleeding country."

As a lieutenant he joined Washington's forces at Cambridge. In the siege of Boston he rose to a captaincy in the famous Connecticut Rangers. It was certain that he would rise to the highest rank when the army followed the British to New York. There it was necessary for Washington to learn the size and disposition of General Howe's forces, and his plan of campaign. As this was information which only a man of superior intelligence could possibly get, he called for a volunteer from the younger officers. There was a painful moment of suspense, for the bravest shrink from the dangers of the spy. If caught he dies the death reserved for the lowest criminals, by hanging from the scaffold. Everyone's hat came off, including that of the Commander-in-Chief's, in grave salute, when Captain Nathan Hale stepped forward, head high, face pale, but quite resolute, and offered himself for this dangerous duty.

The Great Sacrifice

Discarding his uniform and disguising himself as a royalist schoolmaster, he boldly entered the British camp. He made observations, notes, and drawings of fortifications, and got away unsuspected. But, while waiting at a tavern on the shore for a boat that was to meet him, he was recognized by a royalist kinsman, betrayed and trapped on a British gunboat. Taken before General

Signing the Preliminary Treaty at Paris



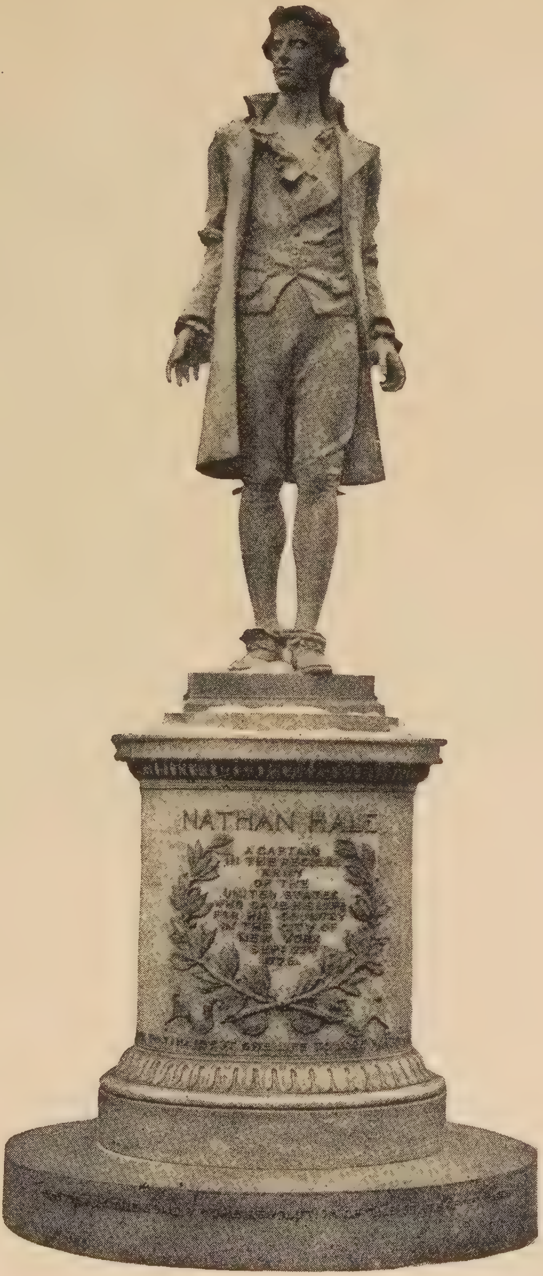
Before the final treaty was signed which ended the Revolutionary War, preliminary articles were signed at Paris. England was represented by Richard Oswald, a British diplomat, and the colonies by John Adams, Henry Laurens, John Jay, and Benjamin Franklin. The preliminary treaty was signed on November 30, 1782, and the final treaty which was identical with the first, on September 3, 1783.

Howe, his papers were found, or a part of them, for it is known that he had managed to get much information to Washington. He was hanged at sunrise the next morning.

It was in an orchard, at Market Street and East Broadway, near where the statue of him stands today. He was denied a chaplain and a Bible, and his letters to his sister and to his betrothed—sweet Alice Ripley—were destroyed before his eyes, so that "the American rebels may never know they had a man who could die with such firmness." His open grave was at his feet. A royalist rabble jeered at him, as he faced the sun and breathed the odor of ripening apples, for it was late in September. A life of love, usefulness and high honors was closing for him at twenty-one. Yet, when asked if he had anything to say, he said: "I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

This legend is carved on the pedestal of the statue erected to him in New York City by the Sons of the Revolution. Children, many of them foreign immigrants, just learning to read, trace the letters and ask the corner policeman for the story. So he is still the schoolmaster, the inspiring teacher of patriotism. Another statue of him is in Hartford; and a granite memorial in Coventry, Connecticut, where he was born. And on the campus at Yale, where his name heads the list of honored graduates, rises the William Ordway Partridge statue in bronze. The face is uplifted, luminous with high re-

The Heroic Young School Master



This is the statue of Nathan Hale which stands in City Hall Park, New York City. As we look at the upright bearing and noble face of this young man of twenty-one, the words of the story of his heroism comes to us with particular force. He is here represented as he stood upon the scaffold, his feet tied together, his arms bound to his side. Below the laurel wreath which surrounds a brief statement of the circumstances of his death, are his last words: "I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

solve, the foot advanced from the pedestal, as if eager to be off on some sacred duty. Every one looking at him, thinks: "Where is he going?"

The sculptor answers: "To his death on the scaffold. This is the way an American patriot should be willing to die."

Warren's Address to the American Soldiers

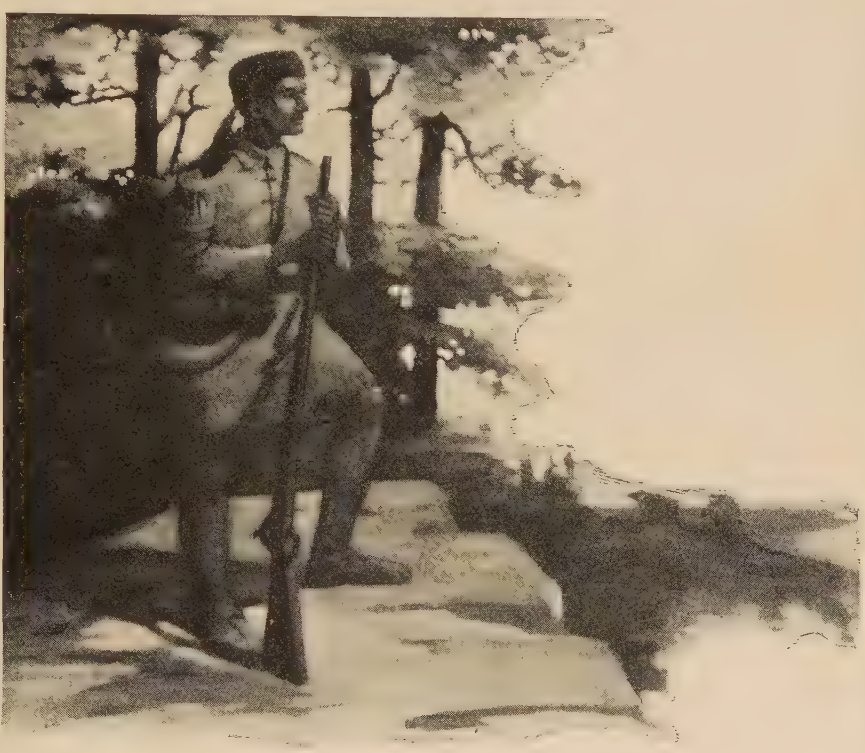
Stand! The ground's your own, my braves!
Will ye give it up to slaves?
Will ye look for greener graves?
Hope ye mercy still?
What's the mercy despots feel?
Hear it in that battle-peal!
Read it on your bristling steel!
Ask it—ye who will.

Fear ye foes who kill for hire?
Will ye to your homes retire?
Look behind you! they're afire!
And, before you, see
Who have done it!—From the vale
On they come! And will ye quail?—
Leaden rain and iron hail
Let their welcome be!

In God of Battles trust!
Die we may,—and die we must;
But, O, where can dust to dust
Be consigned so well,
As where Heaven its dews shall shed
On the martyred patriot's bed,
And the rocks shall raise their head
Of his deeds to tell!

JOHN PIERPONT

The Making of a Great Nation



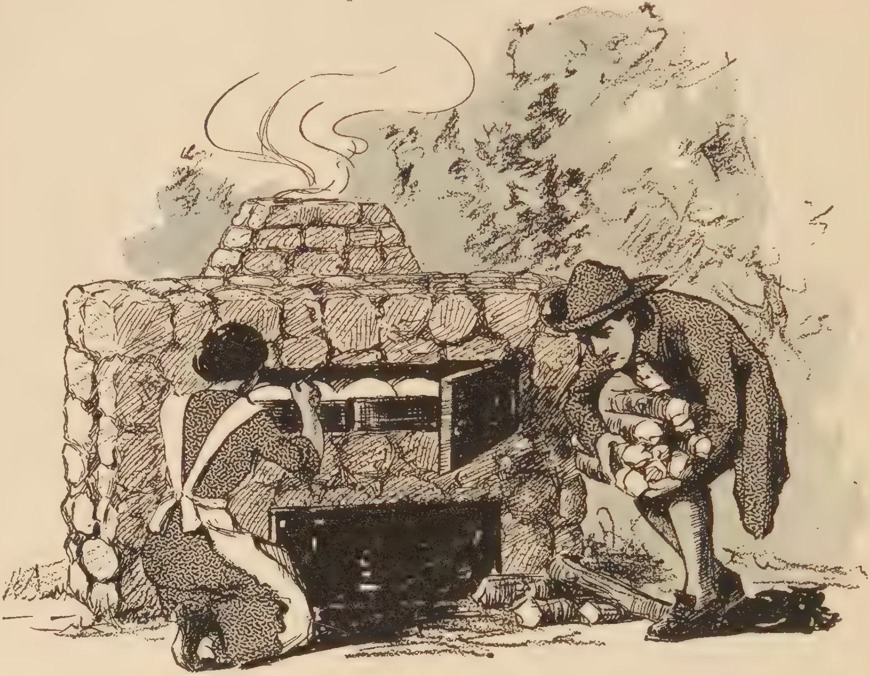
Daniel Boone and His Rifle

From boyhood Daniel Boone loved the woods, and no wonder, for all healthy boys love the woods and there were so many woods to love in those days! His moccasins as well as his shirt were usually of buckskin, although sometimes he made them of elk and in the winter of buffalo hide with the hair turned inward. His sandy hair was long and ragged, his cap was made of the fur of a wild cat, a raccoon, or an otter. In stories in which Boone figures as hero—and what boy doesn't know a lot of them—he is described as tall and angular with a "dark and piercing eye." As a matter of fact, he was not very tall,—about 5 feet 8 inches—he was heavy set, and his eyes were mild blue. Although he knew so much about the woods and the wild folks of the woods—the two legged and the four legged—he never learned much about spelling and for a long time there stood a tree in the forest on which was this autograph of the great frontiersman: "D. Boone cilled a Bar near this tree, year 1760."

AT the close of the Revolutionary War, the thirteen states formed from the old seaboard colonies, had won the region south of the Great Lakes, and the Ohio Valley clear to the Mississippi River. Spain owned Florida, the entire Gulf Coast, all the territory west of the Mississippi, then known as Louisiana, and claimed the eastern bank of the river up to Vicksburg. It was the middle of the century before, by purchase, treaty or war, with

France, Spain, Mexico, and Great Britain, we straightened our northern and southern boundaries and secured the heart of the continent, from the Lakes to the Gulf and from ocean to ocean.

A Fireplace without a House



This outdoor oven used by the American pioneers was you see a combination of the idea of the old-fashioned fireplace and the modern kitchen stove. Ovens like this were built outside the house. They were very convenient for boiling and baking in hot weather and you can see how much better it would be to do the washing outdoors than to do it in the kitchen. And these outdoor ovens had another advantage. They could be built before the log cabin was finished so that the whole family and the men neighbors who were helping with the building of the cabin could have better meals while the new home was going up.

Romance in Your State's Story

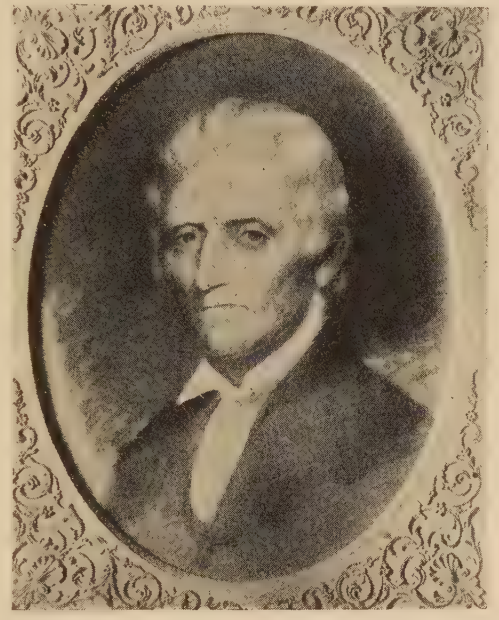
But in America people have never waited for formal treaties. Into every part of this vast country of, forest, prairie, desert, mountain and distant coast, men from all the older, settled regions penetrated before we owned it. It was not soldiers, but heroic pioneers—pathfinders, Indian fighters, soil tillers, trail openers, gold seekers, cattle raisers, state makers and railroad builders who really explored, conquered, peopled and developed our land. This story of human daring and endurance is a century long, and every Middle and Far Western state furnishes a thrilling chapter. You should read your own. Here we can tell you only of large movements of population, and name a few typical men and events of national importance.

Life on the Frontier

The Life of a Pioneer

At least twenty years before the Revolution, men had pushed up the rivers of the Atlantic seaboard to the crest of the Alleghenies. Washington was in the mountains of Virginia by 1748, surveying wild land bought by wealthy planters. And wherever game became scarce and land dear, poor people moved westward. On the frontier boys grew up strong, brave, inured to hardship and danger, and as skilled in hunting and the wood-crafts as Indians. With a hunting knife and a gun, the pioneer could sustain life; and with an ax, a plow, a horse or pair of oxen they could move their families, and soon have cabins and clearings in any wilderness.

Daniel Boone at Eighty-Five



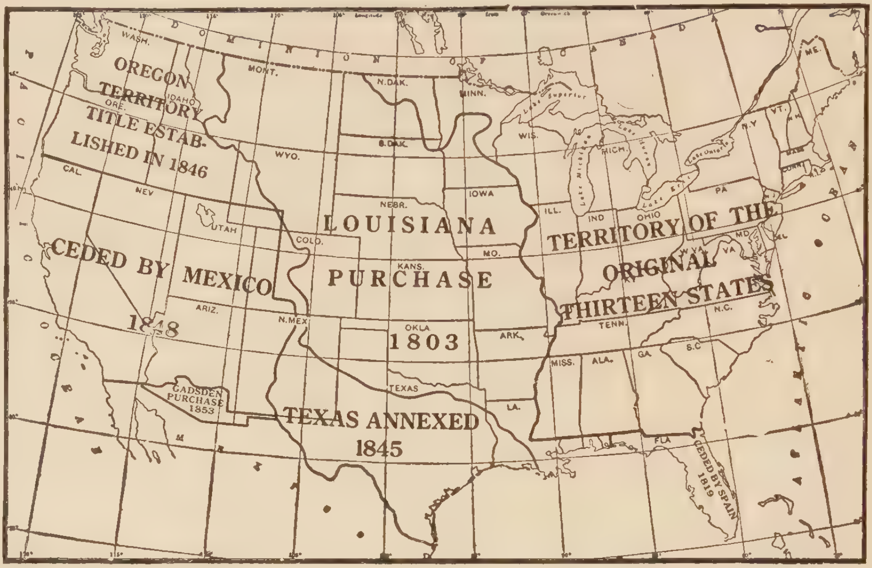
Chester Harding, the artist, made a trip to the Missouri frontier where Daniel Boone was living in 1819, to paint this portrait of the famous old man. Daniel Boone was then eighty-five and lived with one of his sons, mending broken rifles and powder horns, going on occasional hunting expeditions and recounting, for the delight of his neighbors, the adventures of his youth. Mr. Harding found him alone in a small cabin, part of an old blockhouse, cooking his dinner. He was lying on his bunk near the fire, with a long strip of venison wound around the ramrod of his gun which he was slowly turning before the brisk blaze.

Daniel Boone is described as about 5 feet 8 inches tall, very broad and powerful though lean, with blue eyes and a wide, thin-lipped mouth. People who saw him for the first time as an old man were surprised at the gentleness and simplicity of a man who had seen so much bloodshed, and who had played so large a part in the history of his country. When Mr. Harding asked him if he had ever been lost on any of his long journeys through the woods without a compass, he replied, "No, I can't say as I ever was lost, but I was bewildered once for three days." When his wife died in 1813 he made his coffin and kept it under his bed, with careful instructions to his children that he be buried in it and laid by his wife's side. He died while the convention to draw up a constitution for the new state of Missouri was in session. When the news reached them, the convention adjourned for the day and the delegates wore crepe on their arms for three weeks in respect to his memory. During his long life on the American frontier he had been first the subject of George II of England, then of George III, a citizen of the United States, the adopted son and citizen of a tribe of Shawnee Indians, the subject of Charles IV of Spain (when the Louisiana Territory belonged to Spain), then of Napoleon (when the territory was ceded to the French), and finally a citizen of the United States again after Jefferson made the Louisiana Purchase.

Such a man was Daniel Boone, who, in 1769, broke through Cumberland Gap, the only pass through the mountains south of the Potomac, into the hunter's paradise of Kentucky and Tennessee. The news spread quickly and others followed. Dwellers in the rough mountain valleys had never seen such rolling meadows of bluegrass, laced with bright streams and shaded by enormous trees. The country was a wild park, teeming with game animals, but it had to be fought for, for it was the favorite hunting ground of many Algonquin and Gulf tribes. The white people were obliged, just as in New England and Virginia a century and a half before, to settle in villages around crude stockaded forts.

They lived in the rudest of log cabins. Floors were of split-logs; doors, tables and stools of hewn planks; beds of poles, laced with rawhide and spread with pine boughs, husks, and deerskins. Chimneys were of sticks plastered with clay. Often only corn, flax, and the Indian vegetables were grown. Domestic animals could not be kept, on account of timber wolves. The housewife had a few kettles, an outdoor oven, a trough or hollowed stump for pounding hominy. The dishes were wooden bowls and gourds. It was with the greatest difficulty that spinning wheels and looms were brought over the mountains. Women, as well as men, had to know how to shoot, mold bullets and dress all kinds of game.

The Growth of Our Country


OREGON TERRITORY TITLE ESTABLISHED IN 1846
WASH.
IDAHO
ORE.
MONT.
N.DAK.
MINN.
S.DAK.
WYO.
CAL.
NEV.
UTAH
COLO.
NEBR.
IOWA
LOUISIANA PURCHASE 1803
KANS.
MO.
OKLA.
WIS.
MICH.
ILL.
IND.
OHIO
PA.
N.Y.
VT.
ME.
MD.
W.VA.
VA.
N.C.
TENN.
S.C.
GA.
ALA.
MISS.
ARK.
LA.
FLA.
TERRITORY OF THE ORIGINAL THIRTEEN STATES
CEDED BY MEXICO 1848
ARIZ.
N.MEX.
GADSDEN PURCHASE 1853
TEXAS
TEXAS ANNEXED 1845
CEDED BY SPAIN 1819
Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Ontario

© *Munn & Co.* *Courtesy of Scientific American*

This map shows how the territory of the thirteen original states was expanded into the great United States of today. To the original thirteen states was added in 1803 the vast territory covered by the Louisiana Purchase. Then came the cession of Florida by Spain in 1819. Next, Texas was added in 1845, the title to Oregon territory was established in 1846, the territory indicated ceded by Mexico in 1848 and five years later came the Gadsden Purchase.

Much more than any colonists of old along the Atlantic, these backwoodsmen were beset by perils and privations. The Mississippi was closed to navigation until the United States bought Louisiana in 1803. Furs had to be carried on pack horses over the mountains, and very little beside the necessary guns and ammunition could be brought back. Travelers were often ambushed, so men journeyed in company, posted sentinels, and tied their food pouches and moccasins to their gun stocks.

Boone, the Typical Frontiersman

Now Boone was no braver or more resourceful than hundreds of other men, and in military genius and public service he was not to be compared with George Rogers Clark. His fame rests on the fact that in the midst of dangers in which most men made early and violent exits from the stage of life, he lived unharmed for more than eighty years. From the mountains to the Missouri, he blazed the way for three generations of settlers. A true backwoodsman, he was unhappy in towns. Whenever population got too thick he always moved west "for elbow room and game for his trusty rifle." Born on the frontier of Pennsylvania in 1735, three years after Washington—Lincoln was ten years old when Boone died at the age of eighty-six

The Fame of Daniel Boone

—he was an intrepid hunter to the last, and he was visited by explorers, hunters, emigrants, and by artists, several of whom made long, wild journeys to paint his noble head. Wholly unlettered, he was a man of keen intelligence, unblemished character and the gentle manners of his Quaker ancestry. Next to Robinson Crusoe, Boone is the boys' hero. His romantic biography is more crowded with stirring adventure than any dime novel.

How Marietta Began

Kentucky and Tennessee grew so rapidly in population that they were admitted as states in 1792 and 1796, while the first white settlement was not made at Marietta, on the north bank of the Ohio, until 1788. To this point came a pilgrim band of Puritans from the seaport towns of New England. Officers of the Revolution secured a grant of land from Congress, and the government built a fort to protect them. They had money to finance the venture. So they crossed the mountains from Philadelphia in a train of good Conestoga wagons, whose boat-shaped bodies could be lifted from the wheels and poled across streams. In these they carried their families, household goods, tools, seeds and weapons. Military supplies, even small cannon, were sent up the Potomac. Among these emigrants were skilled workmen of every trade. Building the "Second Mayflower" at Fort Pitt, now Pittsburgh, they floated down the Ohio.

The Three Streams of Migration

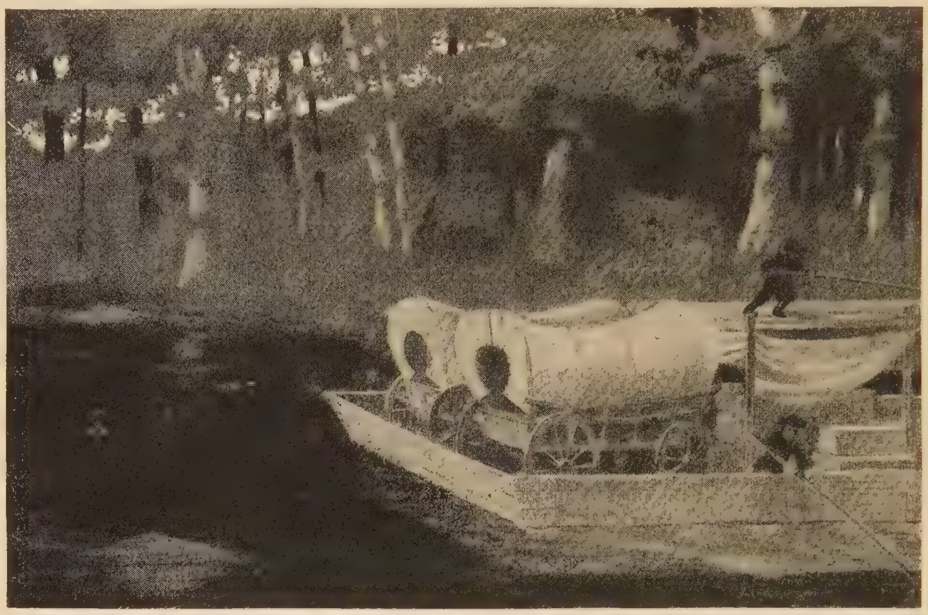
Migration moved to this new region in three great streams, from Albany through central New York, across the mountains of Pennsylvania and up the valley of the Potomac. These are the routes followed by railroads of today—the New York Central, Pennsylvania Central and the Baltimore and Ohio. All the roads used by emigrants from the Atlantic to the Pacific were old Indian trails. The paths worn to deep ruts in the soil by moccasined feet and unshod ponies, were widened to wagon roads, and then graded for railroad beds. Rivers were bridged at ancient fords.

Settlers Who Weren't Woodsmen

Standing as it did at the head waters of the Ohio, all roads met at Pittsburgh, which for quite half a century was the gateway to the West. By 1800 the town had 1,500 people, most of whom were engaged in boat building, ferrying and outfitting emigrants. Upon the high water of spring, a procession of flatboats moved down the flood to towns on both banks of the Ohio. These were not backwoodsmen. Hard times, following the Revolution, had ruined many of the oldest and best families in America, and they made a new start in the West, where land was cheap. Planters from the southern tidewater laid out new plantations in Kentucky and Tennessee. Into the region north of the Ohio were attracted eastern men of college education, professional training, and business experience, for public lands in the Northwest Territory had, for the first time in history, been set aside for the support of the public schools.

Flatboats were peculiar to the waterways of the Middle West. Twelve feet wide and forty long, with high sides and partially roofed over, they could be steered down stream with a broad oar and tied to trees at night. Flour, pork and lumber were thus floated to New Orleans; and each

"Prairie Schooners" Taking a Boat Ride



Here our artist shows how the "prairie schooners" looked when they were being carried down the Ohio River in one of those flat boats, the lumber in which was afterwards used in building houses. The "pilot" on the roof worked the rudder to steer it. When they came to a sharp bend or a shallow, one of the men would use a long pole to keep the boat from running aground.

carried two families, with all their goods, seeds, tools, weapons and domestic animals. And when a destination was reached, a boat was broken up and the planks used to build houses, stores and shops. Town after town sprang up along the Ohio, and up to the head of navigation on the tributary streams. Wherever canoes, rowed by Frenchmen—for Galliopolis was settled by refugees from the French Revolution—or pirogues poled by Kentucky Negroes, could go, carrying gunpowder and salt, the woodsman's ax and hunter's rifle were heard in the forested hills of Ohio.

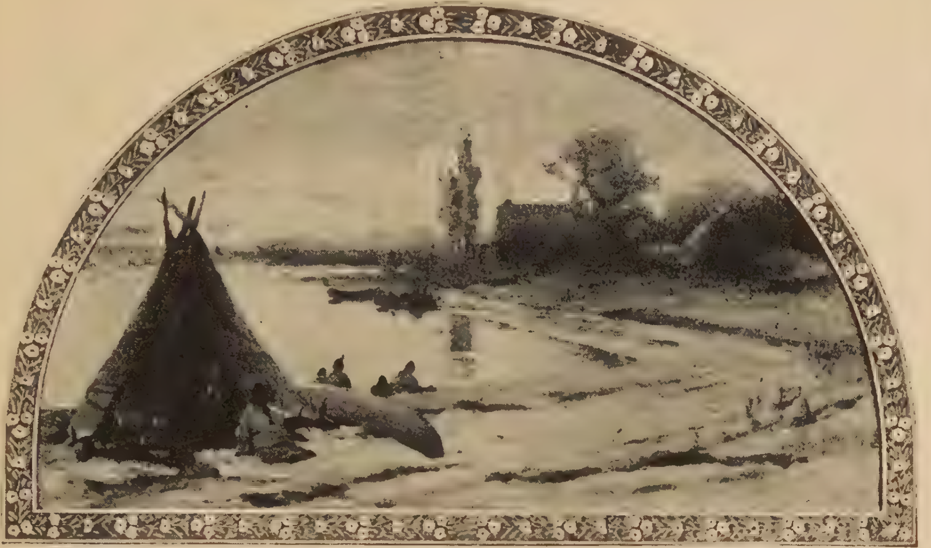
This region, too, had to be fought for. The coming of white men had always meant the cutting down of forests, destruction of game and the crowding back of the Indians. The red tribes, alarmed by this invasion, attacked the boats, killed many people and burned clearings and settlements. They waged savage war for five years before they were beaten back, and the southeastern two-thirds of Ohio was secured for white settlers. There were a half million people in the three states west of the mountains when Ohio was admitted to the Union in 1803.

Five Years of War

A Year of Great Events

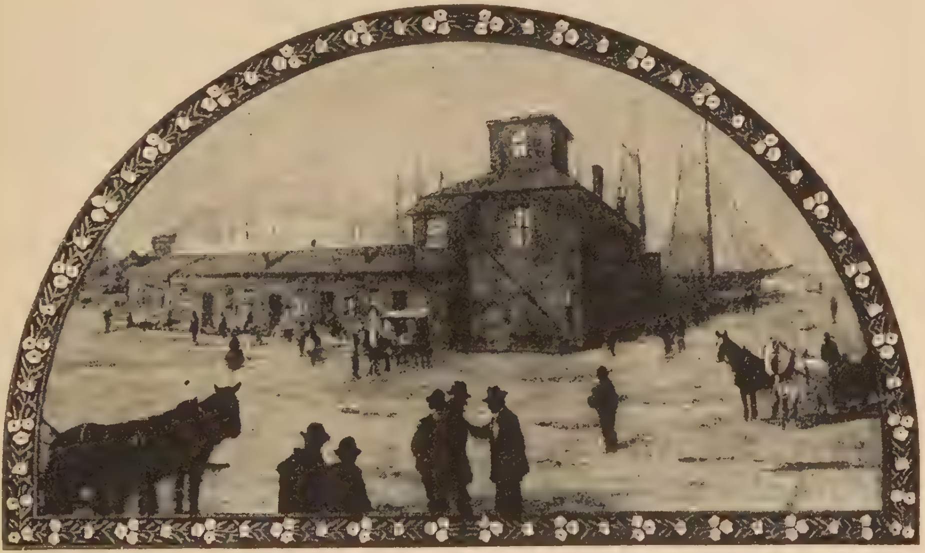
This was a historic year. It was the date of the Louisiana Purchase, and of the building of Fort Dearborn, at the mouth of the Chicago River. A site having been secured by treaty with the tribes of the Northwest, officers were ordered to proceed from the old garrison at Detroit. The officers and their families went around by sailing vessel,

Where Chicago was Born



This picture which is one of a series of paintings on the walls of the bank of the Central Trust Company of Illinois, in Chicago, may be said to be the birthplace of the great city. It was near this spot that Fort Dearborn stood, and the fort was the nucleus around which first the settlement and then the city grew. The dwelling you see is where John Kinzie, the first Chicago settler, lived.

The First Railroad Station in Chicago



What is now the Northwestern railroad system was begun in Chicago in 1849 with the building of ten miles of road across the swamp to the Desplaines River. On the return trip in November of that year, the first carload of wheat was brought to Chicago. There was then simply a shed for passengers at Kinzie and Halsted streets. The next year the city council granted permission to run the road east to Canal and then to Wells Street and the building you see here was put up. In the rear you see the schooners on the Chicago River near which this building stood. In course of time it was succeeded by a big brick station and this in turn by the magnificent structure, with its marble pillars, occupying a whole block and costing many millions of dollars, which takes care of the Chicago traffic on this great railroad system today.

How Clark Chose a Monument that Nature Built

When the Lewis and Clark Expedition reached this sandstone cliff on the Yellowstone River, Captain Clark named it Pompey's Pillar. Here is the account of it that appeared in the government's official story of the expedition.

"Captain Clark landed to examine a very remarkable rock situated in an extensive bottom on the right. . . It is nearly 400 paces in circumference, 200 feet high and accessible only from the northeast, the other sides being a perpendicular cliff of light-colored rock. The soil on top is five or six feet deep, of good quality and covered with short grass. The Indians have carved the figures of animals and other objects on the sides of the rock and on the top are raised two piles of stones. After enjoying the prospect from this rock, Captain Clark descended and continued his course."

The two piles of stone and the carved figures are gone now but the character and general appearance of the rock is unchanged.

the first one on Lake Michigan since La Salle's ill-fated *Griffin* of 1673. The company of soldiers, guided by French voyageurs, cut their way across southern Michigan and around the lake shore, through three hundred miles of woods, swamp, gullies of streams and billowing sand dunes. Long known as the Great Sauk Trail, then as the Detroit and Chicago Post Road, this is now the route of the Michigan Central railroad.

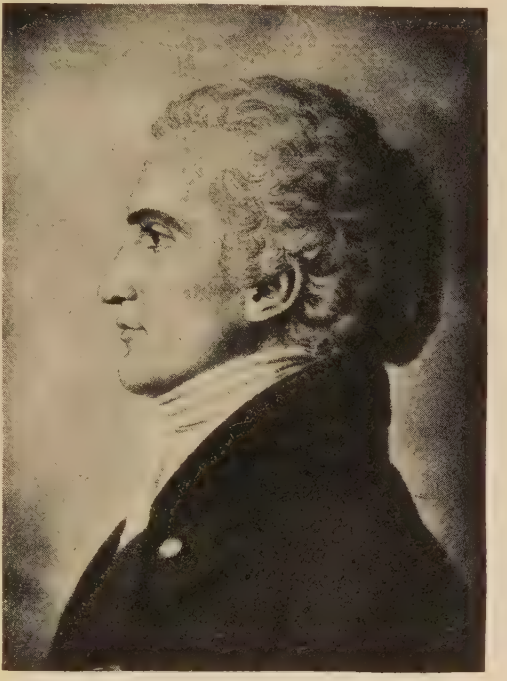
Thus was reopened, at Chicago, the old portage of the French explorers. The nearest posts were at Fort Wayne and Vincennes. Furs, the only commodity of the country, were sent to Mackinac, whence supplies came up from Detroit. Three hundred miles to the southwest lay the trading post of St. Louis, and the old French mission town, Kaskaskia.

St. Louis, settled in Spanish territory by the French in 1765, had one thousand people—French, Spanish, Indian and Negro—all engaged in the fur trade and river commerce, for it had always had an outlet through New Orleans. There was great excitement in the straggling frontier town in the spring of 1804. Louisiana Territory had been purchased from France the year before, and Meriwether Lewis, private secretary to President Jefferson, and Captain William Clark, brother of the famous George Rogers Clark, were sent to explore it. The extent, character and value of Louisiana were entirely unknown. No one knew the length, dangers or difficulties of that journey. Grave-faced people, who never expected to see these brave, adventurous men again, stood on the banks of the "Big

Muddy" and watched them embark in boats.

Altogether there were thirty, carefully chosen men: nine backwoodsmen from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers, two French Canadian voyageurs, an Indian interpreter, a hunter from the plains and a negro servant, besides the leaders. The party stopped for some days with Daniel Boone, who, at seventy years of age, was living on an estate of 8,000 acres in the Osage country. This had been given to him by Spain, on condition that he and his thirty children and grandchildren should keep the Indians of the district in order. His hunting trips ranged to Nebraska and Kansas. This veteran of the wilds, who had never feared anything, advised the explorers to turn back.

Jefferson's Tribute to Meriwether Lewis



Meriwether Lewis was a handsome man, with clear, regular features and fine eyes. He is wearing a powdered wig here, with the pigtail looped up in the back—the same fashion that little girls sometimes adopt in the summertime when their braids feel hot on their necks. President Jefferson picked Meriwether Lewis to lead the important expedition into the newly bought Louisiana territory, because of his fitness for such a task. He said of him, in the preface to the first published account of the trip: "His courage was undaunted, his firmness and perseverance yielded to nothing but impossibilities. A rigid disciplinarian, yet tender as a father of those committed to his charge; honest, disinterested, liberal, with a sound understanding, and a scrupulous fidelity to truth."

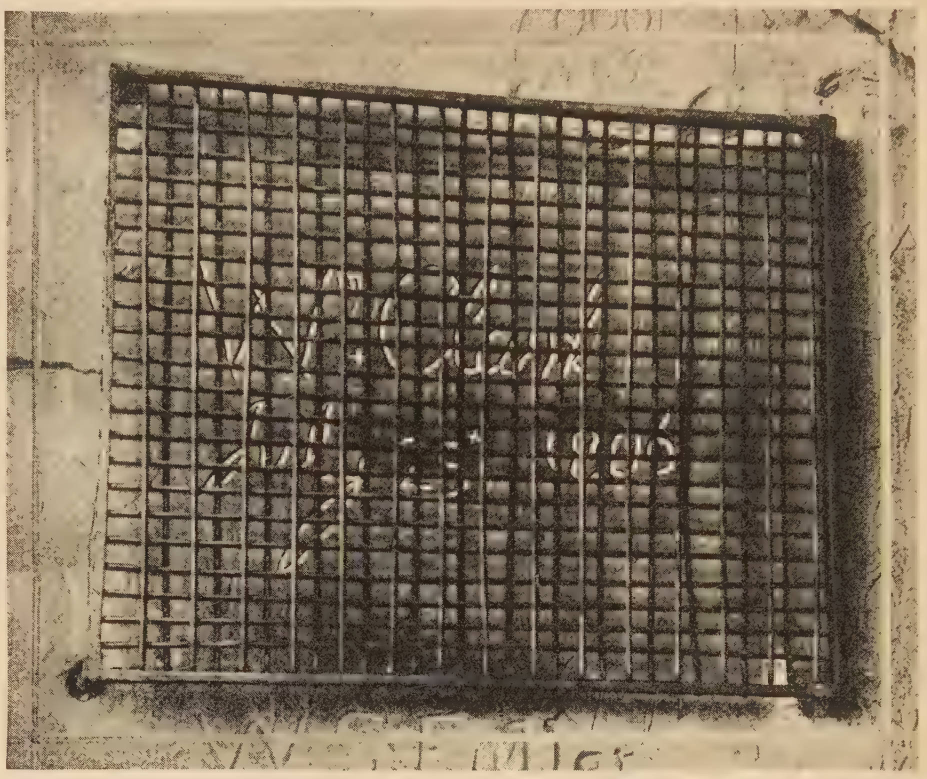
None but such men, for Clark was of the same caliber, could have pushed through to the Pacific.

"White men," he said "cannot pass through the country of the savage Sioux." In fact, these Indians were not conquered until our centennial year of 1876, and that after the massacre of Custer's heroic little army.

Guided by the "Bird Woman"

This was not cheering advice, but the intrepid explorers went on. As it happened, the Missouri turned far west of Sioux territory—instead of running through it, as Boone supposed—and, late in the autumn, Lewis and Clark reached a village of friendly Mandan Indians on the present site of Bismarck, North Dakota. They spent the winter there on the plains; and there they found a guide over the mountains in the person of a young Indian woman, who had been stolen from her home in the Shoshone Valley of Idaho by Sioux warriors, and then sold as a wife to Chabaneau, a French trapper. Light of foot, merry of heart, and with a singing voice which carried the old French chansons taught her by her affectionate husband, she was called the Bird Woman. Longing to see her old home, and knowing the trails, where to find food in the barrens and water in the lava desert, she begged

The Great Explorer's Autograph on the Rock



Captain Clark was the first white man to visit Pompey's Pillar, and his signature on it can be read today. In his notebook for July 25, 1806, he wrote, "I marked my name and the month and year on the rock." You can trace the work of foolish people who have scratched their names in the soft sandstone all around and even over the mark left by William Clark. The Northern Pacific Railroad passes near Pompey's Pillar so one of the officials had this grating put up to protect it.

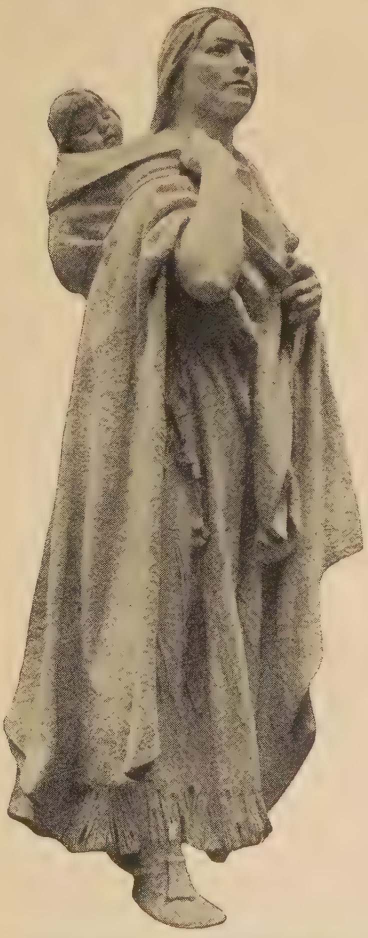
the privilege of guiding the explorers.

She marched and rowed and swam streams with the men, caught fish, shot game, loaded canoes, set up tents, cooked, and kept the whole party in moccasins, and all the long, rough way she carried her papoose on her back. After passing the Great Falls of the Missouri, Bird Woman found the South Fork of the river. Then, straight as an arrow, she made for the Shoshone Trail, and found the tepees and grazing ponies of the Indian village in the valley. There new guides led the explorers to the Columbia, down which they paddled to the Pacific. They had been given up for dead when they returned to St. Louis late in 1806.

Their stories of vast, grassy plains, covered with herds of deer and buffalo, the lofty mountains, beautiful falls, and the fertile valleys, wooded slopes and mild climate of the coast, fired the imagination of the country. Such a party today would have had a geologist along, and would certainly have found gold and silver, to start a rush to the remotest boundaries of old Louisiana. But it was long before any attempt

The Plains Called a Desert

was made to settle the Far West. Other and less favorable reports were brought in. In 1806-7 Zebulon Pike went west from St. Louis, and discovered Pike's Peak in Colorado. He and later frontiersmen gave dismal accounts of the plains from Texas to Canada. Perhaps they went in a dry season, when the prairies were burned brown, and deserted by herds and hunters. Certainly they caused this great grain and cattle country to be long marked on the maps: "The Great American Desert." It was thought by most people to be as barren and forbidding as the Sahara.



The Bird Woman and Her Papoose

Sacagawea, the Bird Woman of the Shoshone Valley, guided Lewis and Clark over the vast stretches of western wilderness. This statue of her was made by Leonard Crunelle for the Panama Pacific Exposition in San Francisco, and is now in the Art Institute, Chicago. See how the sculptor has shown Sacagawea standing straight and tall, ready to step lightly forward, with head high and brows slightly frowning in the effort to see something in the distance that has caught her sharp Indian eyes. Savages, you know, have much keener eyesight than we have, and they can follow a trail through the wilderness which we shouldn't be able to see at all. This papoose on his mother's back watched her pick out such a trail when he was too young to walk, and no doubt became very expert at it himself. And during all that long journey Sacagawea "marched, and rowed, and swam with the men, caught fish, shot game, loaded canoes, set up tents, cooked, and kept the whole party in moccasins."

Then the Wave of Emigration

But, indeed, until after the War of 1812, when many Indian tribes were moved west of the Mississippi, the Middle West could make no further progress. After 1815 a new flood of people poured over the Ohio, thousands and tens of thousands, where there had been hundreds before.

All the old trails through the woods, widened to wagon roads, swarmed with travel. Land in Kentucky, laid out in great plantations, and tilled by slaves, as in Virginia, had become dear. So, many poor folks, like the Lincolns, crossed the Ohio into southern Indiana and Illinois where land was cheap.

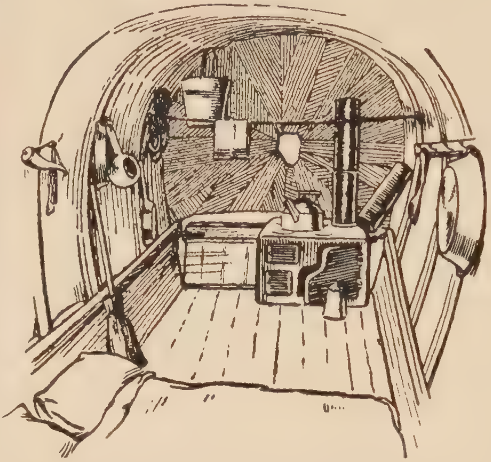
Story of the Lincoln Family

Hardship and Sorrow

The Lincoln family were typical emigrants from the South, at this period. Piling everything they possessed of any value on two pack-horses, they just "lit out fur Indianny," as Lincoln's cousin, Dennis Hanks, once said. A raft was built of logs lashed together, to cross the Ohio. "Abe toted a gun and kept it dry. He was only seven years old, but proud as a turkey cock" to be of use on that hard moving day.

Camping in an open-faced pole shack for a year, the family lived

The Pioneer Buffet Car

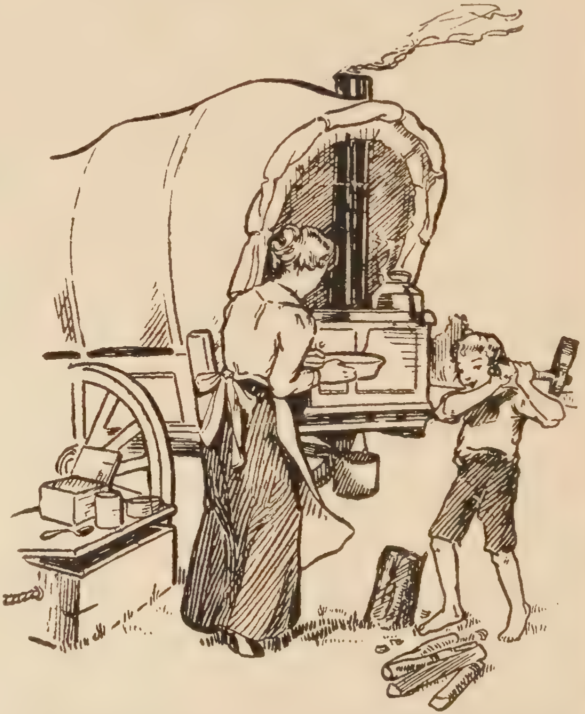


This shows the prairie schooner as fitted up by the more enterprising emigrants who went to California in the gold rush; a "buffet car" and "diner." When the emigrants went into camp, that curtain with the round hole in the center of it was rolled back, the end board lowered, the stove set on it and the pipe run through the roof as you see in the next picture. On the walls hang the kitchen utensils, including the big washpan. On one side is the home-made broom for keeping the floor swept, and in the forward part of the wagon are the beds which were occupied when the family stopped for the night.

like Indians, on game, fish, wild berries and pounded corn. The boys learned to trap rabbits, to find honey in the bee trees, to go on coon hunts, and to make moccasins of birch or slippery elm bark, with hickory soles tied on, and even a "little feller" could "drap corn fur pappy" among the stumps of the clearing. The new cabin was scarcely up before the mother died of milk sickness, for the one cow had been poisoned by weeds. The little nine year old boy whittled pegs for his father to put together the rough, whipsawed boards of his mother's coffin. "The misery in that little, green log cabin in the woods" when Nancy Hanks Lincoln died! The little sister Sarah cried all winter, and, to console her, the boys found a baby coon for a pet. Abe studied Webster's spelling book, and wrote with charred wood on the wooden shovel. Books and schools were "sceercer than wild cats in that neck o' the woods."

Fourteen years later, in 1830, the whole family connection "lit out fur Illinois." This time they had ox wagons. It took them two weeks to cut through the

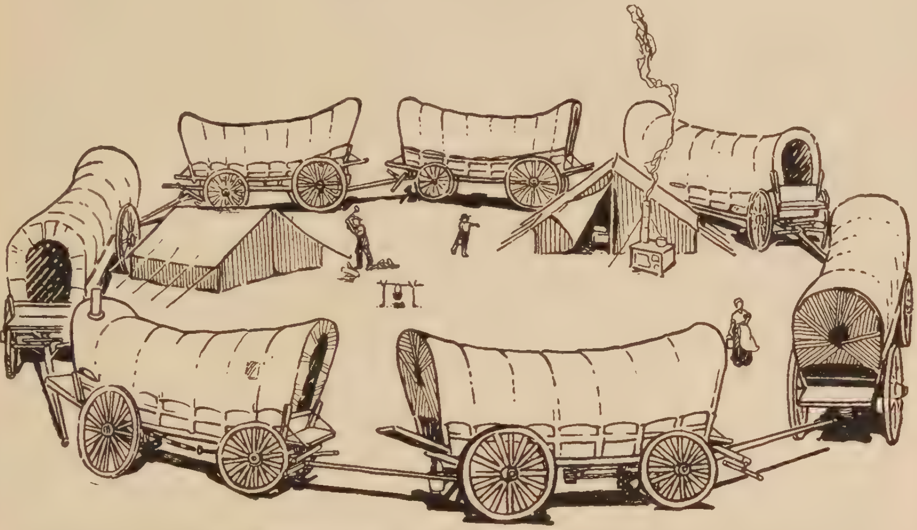
The Buffet Car in Camp



This picture shows one of the ways in which the stove was used when in camp. It was set on a platform at the rear of "Prairie Schooner" with the pipe sticking through a hole made for it in the canvas covering. On the ground is the traveling pantry. Little son is splitting wood to "keep the home fires burning" and mother is just putting something good in the oven —perhaps a cake. What do you say? Certainly it is too thick for a pie, although it may have been a game pie, to be sure.

woods, raft across the Wabash, and pry wheels and even steers out of swamps with fence rails, "Abe crackin' a good-natured joke every time he cracked the whip." He helped put up the new cabin on the Sangamon, and split rails and fenced a clearing for corn. Then he "left home for good," at twenty-one.

The Fortress on Wheels



The versatile old prairie schooner might remind us of what Shakespeare said of man; in its time it played many parts. Here an emigrant train is made to play it's a fortress. All the wagons are arranged in a circle. At night the tongue of each wagon was attached to that in front so as to make it more difficult for hostile Indians in case of attack. This arrangement made a kind of fortified town, where the men could screen themselves and take aim at the approaching redskins.

Times were improving. The village of Salem, twenty miles above Springfield, in which he spent the next twenty years and studied law, was a northern outpost of the settled part of Illinois. But it had a mill, a tavern, all the crafts shops, stores supplied with goods by wagon freight from St. Louis, a good school house, and a school master who could teach Lincoln grammar and help him with surveying. In the state capital he found law books, and men willing to lend them to a poor, ambitious student. Star route mail carriers brought newspapers from the East and cities on the Ohio; and three hundred men of every nationality in the country, traded and voted in the town.

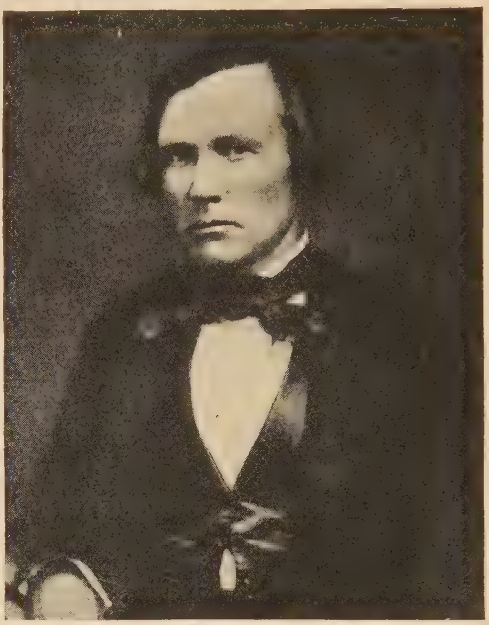
Advantages He Found in Salem

Growth of the Middle West

The Middle West grew fast in population and power. With the admission of Missouri to the Union, in 1821, statehood crossed the Mississippi. In 1825 the Marquis de Lafayette went down the Ohio to St. Louis in a steamboat. In the thirties, Jackson, of Tennessee, was in the White House, and Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was shaping national policies in Congress with his oratory. It is hard to realize now that at this time, when the Ohio Valley was thickly peopled, and travel and trade had become easy and rapid, the region around the Great Lakes could not be settled at all until the Erie Canal was opened from Albany to Buffalo.

This 363-mile "ditch," completed in 1825, gave an all-water route from New York City to the head of Lake Michigan. This made New York instead of Philadelphia, the front door to America, and Chicago superseded Pittsburgh as the gateway to the West. Emigration moving out over Lake Erie, rapidly filled up northern Ohio and Indiana and southern Michigan, and then rolled like a flood over the prairies and hills behind Chicago and Milwaukee, when, after a short war, the last Indians were removed beyond the Mississippi.

Kit Carson the "Gentleman" Frontiersman



Kit Carson was as famous in his day as Daniel Boone had been half a century before. This picture was made from an old daguerreotype of him and shows us the frontier guide and Indian fighter, not in the buckskins in which he won his fame, but as a correct gentleman in the fine garments of the latest fashion, for he was a man of the world as well as a frontiersman. We are told that Christopher Carson would have been a scholar had he not loved the wild frontier life so well. He spoke Spanish and was master of innumerable Indian dialects. That he had a kindly, intelligent, handsome face you can see here. The Assistant Surgeon of the United States Army who was with him when he died, has described him as a small man—only 5 feet 6 inches tall—weighing about 160 pounds. His eyes were dark gray and his hair, light brown streaked with gray. He had a large head and a high, broad forehead. His frame, though small, was broad and compact and he was very active.

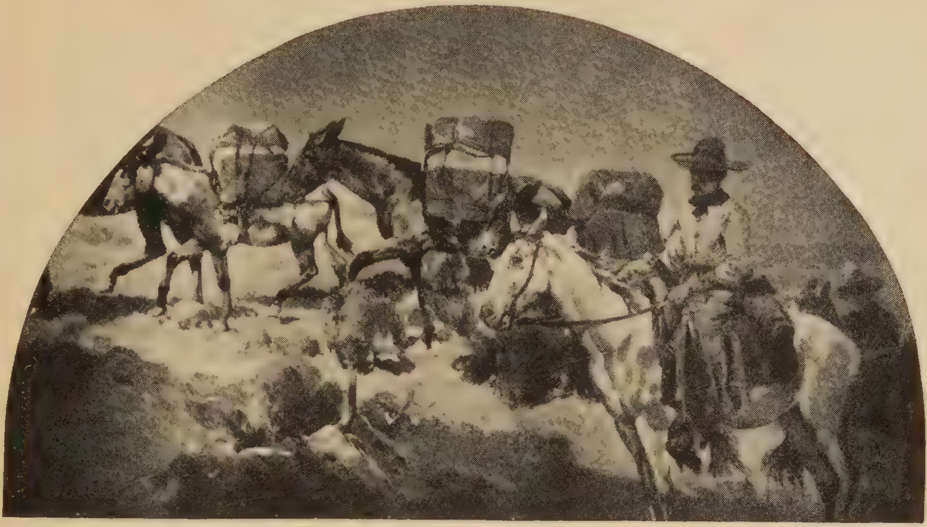
He was called the "beau of the mountains," for his horse wore a silver-trimmed harness and he himself rode the wilderness trails in the dashing costume of a Mexican rancher. Kit Carson was more greatly feared and respected than any other single trapper in the West, and with one or two companions he could put to flight a party of Indians on the warpath more quickly than could a whole company of regulars.

The Day of Road Making and Canals

This was the beginning of a feverish era of canal digging and road making. Massachusetts opened a stage coach road from Boston to Albany. The government completed the Cumberland Road up the Potomac Valley to Wheeling. Pennsylvania began the most difficult task of all—a four hundred-mile highway over the mountains, that was part canal, part horsepower railroad. The West, not to be outdone, planned the National Road, to continue the Cumberland Road through the capitals of Ohio, Indiana and Illinois to the Mississippi. Every mile of this was crowded with travel, as fast as it was finished. There was a continuous procession of stage coaches, private carriages, men on horseback, families in caravans, mountains of freight on four-horse wagons, farm wagons loaded with produce, pedestrians with packs on their backs, droves of horses, cattle and sheep. All the world and his wife and children, goods and animals seemed to be moving west.

Lake Erie was connected with the Ohio and the Wabash with canals, and Lake Michigan with the Illinois River. Canal boats, pulled by horses

On the Santa Fe Tra



Goods used to be carried like this on the backs of mules as well as in wagons over the Santa Fe Trail, which had so much to do with the development of our great West. The Santa Fe trail began in St. Louis, ran across Missouri and Arkansas, turned south to El Paso and then continued west by the Gila River to Los Angeles and San Francisco.

trotting on the tow path, made four miles an hour. Little Jimmie Garfield, and many another poor and ambitious boy of the backwoods, drove horses along the tow paths of these early canals. And every center of population was the starting point for stage coaches. In the middle thirties the Detroit-Chicago Post Road, three hundred miles long, was opened through woods, sloughs, gullies and sand dunes.

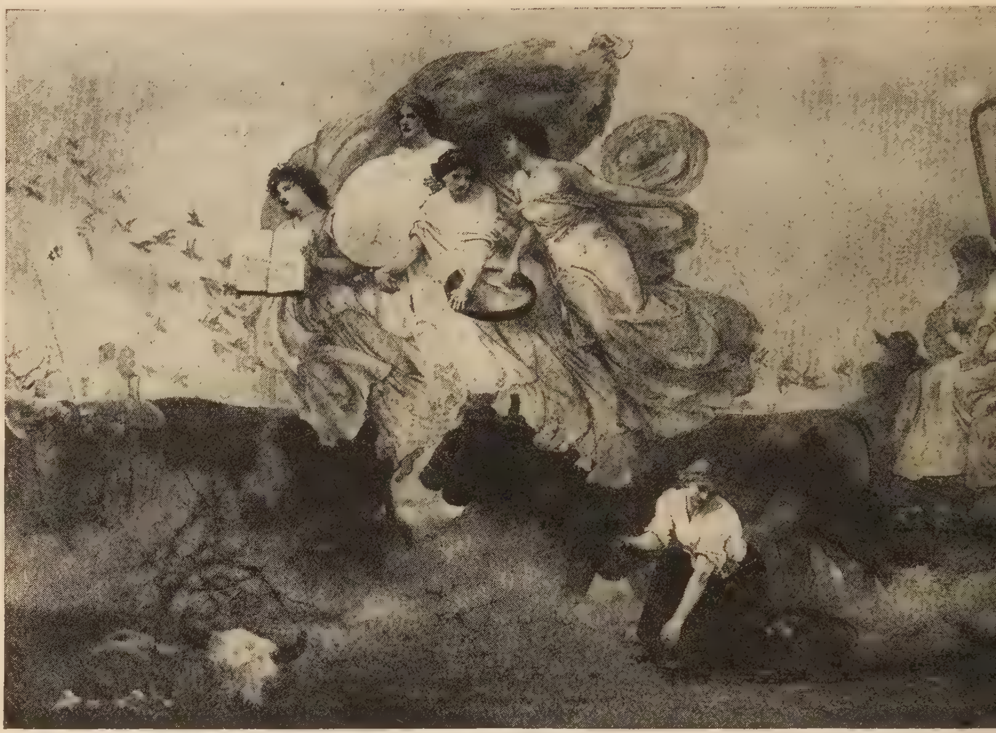
Many projected canals and turnpike roads were never finished. Before they could even be begun, the era of railroad building opened. Strap rails had, for years, been used for horse cars. On these roads locomotives that looked like fire engines were tried. It was long, however, before they could be used on steep grades, or before sufficient power was developed to pull heavy loads. And every road was stopped on the banks of such rivers as the Hudson, Delaware, Potomac, Ohio and Mississippi, which no one dreamed, as yet, of bridging. Everything had to be ferried over streams of any great width or depth. It was 1848 before the first ten miles of railroad were run out across the swamps west of Chicago. But the very first train found a cargo of wheat waiting at the Desplaines River. When this North Western Railroad was pushed out to Galena on the Mississippi, it was possible to ship lumber from the pineries of Michigan and Wisconsin to build houses for settlers on the prairies of Iowa.

Then Came the Railroads

Fremont and the "Wild West"

Up to the middle of the century the country west of eastern Kansas and the Missouri River was still a wilderness. It was not wholly unknown, however, nor entirely uninhabited. It had its hunters and trappers, and there were forts and trading posts at Omaha and Leaven-

The Great Marc

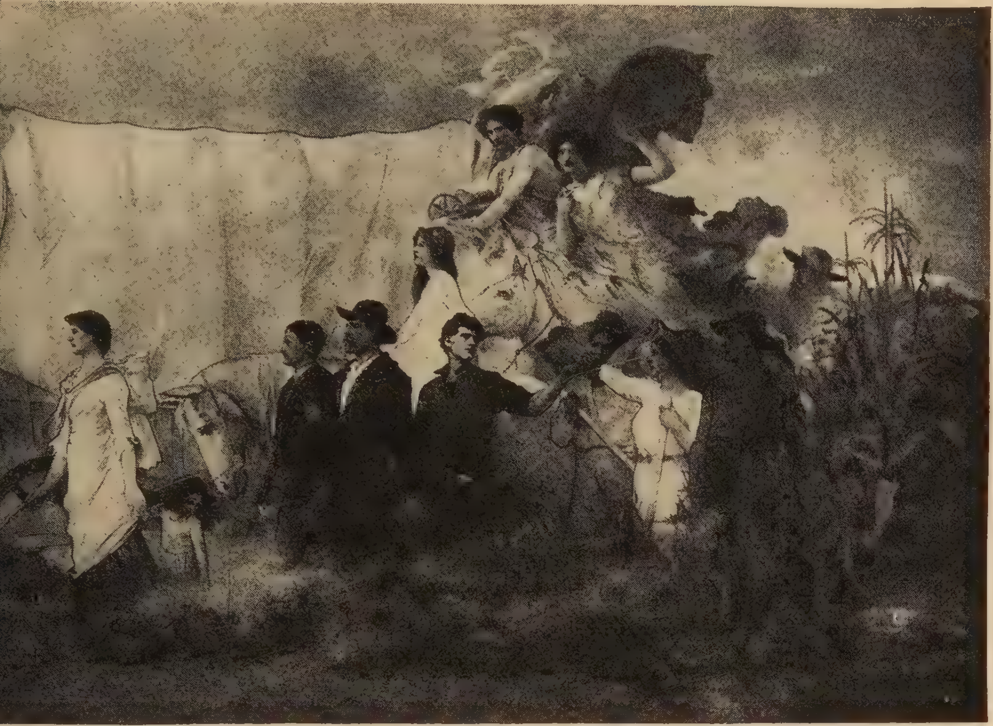


This picture by E. H. Blashfield, called simply "Westward," hangs in the Iowa state capitol at Des M
western plains in the fashion you see represented here. The roadside was strewn with the bones of
out across the vast prairies, but the spirit of civilization, carrying books, free government and a know
work, hardship and suffering. See if you can find all these things and others represented in Blashfield's

worth. In some strange way the old Spanish mission town, mining and ranching center of Santa Fe, had been kept alive for two and a half centuries. Hearing that it was ill-supplied from Mexico, the merchants of St. Louis reopened the Indian trail, now followed by the Santa Fe railroad, and shipped goods regularly by way of mule pack-train. This was in 1822. The Santa Fe Trail had been traveled thus for twenty years when General Fremont began his exploration of our western highlands, and won the name of "The Pathfinder." Taking Kit Carson for a guide, he tramped from Missouri to California and from the Columbia to the Rio Grande.

Going up the North Platte River, he found the South Pass through the Rockies. Thence by way of the Snake and Columbia Rivers he reached the northwest coast, by a shorter and easier route than that of Lewis and Clark forty years before. Pack trains were soon going over this Oregon Trail, to supply the fur-trading posts. Over this and the branching trail through Salt Lake, the present route of the Union Pacific Road, and the older Santa Fe Trail extended through Pueblo and Navajo villages, three thin streams of migration began to flow to Oregon and California. In southern California Fremont had found many old Spanish mission settle-

the Westward



was settled by emigrants from the East who marched the weary miles between their old homes and the and horses that died on the way. They left the cornfields and settlements behind them when they set riculture went with them. They were strong, fearless and sturdy, and their women were used to rough

ments, irrigated farms and sheep ranches. Emigrants from the East were growing wheat in the Sacramento Valley when the close of the Mexican War gave to the United States all the land north of the Rio Grande and back to the Pacific Ocean.

California and Its Gold

The Rush to the Land of Fortune

With the discovery of gold in California in 1848, that trickling stream of travel became a torrent, which leaped across 1,500 miles of buffalo plains, jagged mountains, cactus-strewn desert, and towering glacier-capped ranges to the green valleys and pebble-bedded rivers of the coast.

People went by tens of thousands. Easterners took ship at some Atlantic seaport. In the Middle West steam boats carried gold-seekers to New Orleans. The voyage by sea was around Cape Horn or down to Panama. There, as in old Spanish treasure-fleet days, they crossed the fifty-mile-wide Isthmus by mule pack-train. But many proceeded to Chicago, which then had 20,000 people. There they bought the canvas-covered caravans called "Prairie Schooners," horses or oxen, flour, bacon, beans, blankets, clothing, guns, mining tools, and water barrels, for the two-thousand-mile overland journey. Eighty thousand men, some women and a few children passed through Chicago, bound for the gold fields, in the summer of 1849.

In the Geography articles you will find descriptions of the prairie, mountain, desert and coast country, over which passed this historic migration. Many people died on the way. Later comers found their bleaching bones, their broken wagons and the ashes of their camp fires along the trail. But many more did get through all the perils in safety, and mining camps quickly sprang up along the gravelly streams of California. Some found gold and grew rich quickly. Many more were disappointed. But very few went back East. They remained to grow golden wheat, golden oranges, to herd sheep and work the forests. The beautiful coast land had many other sources of wealth besides its precious minerals. California was admitted as a state in 1850, four years after Iowa and eleven years before Kansas.

Gold that Grew from the Soil

But much of the travel for the next twenty years was by the primitive methods described. The Salt Lake Trail was extended to Sacramento, and the Santa Fe Trail to Los Angeles. Over these, pack-trains carried freight, and stage coaches carried passengers. Mail was by pony express, fleet riders covering a distance of two thousand miles in ten days. A telegraph line spanned the continent in 1861. And here and there, in every part of the highlands, groups of men appeared. Hunters became prospectors searching for gold. The precious metal was discovered, first in Colorado, then in Nevada and Utah, and silver in Montana, Arizona and many scattered places. Denver sprang up at the foot of the mountain wall, a half-way station for an immense freight business across the plains and central supply depot for the miners.

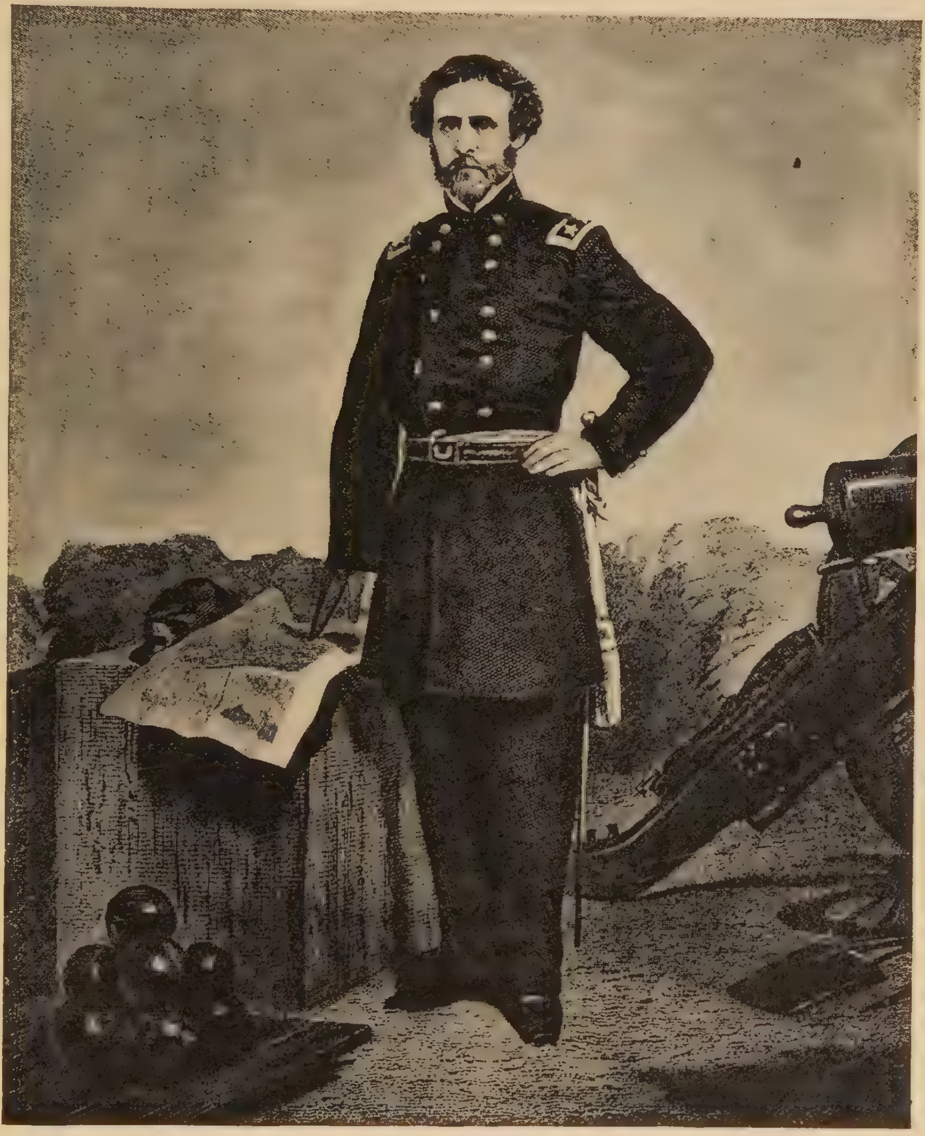
The Railroads to the Coast

All this development led to the building of the Union Pacific Railroad, a task of engineering, financing and endurance of men which still excites the wonder of the world. And while it was being pushed across mountain and desert, Eads was spanning the Mississippi with a steel-arch bridge, resting on piers, driven through a hundred-foot depth of river mud.

Fourteen years later, in 1883, the Northern Pacific Railroad was completed from Lake Superior to Puget Sound. It was built to reach the mines of the mountain and coast states. But that and the Southern Pacific, Santa Fe and Great Northern roads all opened up new corn and wheat country, and a ranching region at the base of the mountain wall, which stretched from Texas to Canada. The old "Great American Desert" disappeared from the maps.

What a historic march across the continent! Boone reached Kentucky in 1769. In 1869, exactly a hundred years later, the whistle of the locomotive answered the salute of steamers on San Francisco Bay. In the beginning of that century there were not more than 2,000,000 in the thirteen colonies along the Atlantic seaboard. At the end of it there were 40,000,000 between the two oceans, and one-third of these were west of the Alleghenies. In another story you will learn where all these brave, determined people came from.

Fremont, "The Pathfinder"



The mountains are put in the background of John G. Fremont's picture because he was a famous explorer of the Rockies; the cannon tells you that he saw service on many battlefields. He was a major-general in the United States army, as you can see by the two stars on his epaulettes. Fremont was a brave soldier and an unusually good explorer. He also knew how to write interesting descriptions of his expeditions, but he was too fiery and independent to submit to discipline easily, and he lacked the organizing ability necessary for managing campaigns such as were required of him in the Civil War. However, he held many honorable government positions and did his work creditably in them. He was twice nominated for the presidency. On account of his brilliant achievements as an explorer, he came to be known as "The Pathfinder," and received medals from the Royal Geographical Society of London and the Geographical Society of Berlin.

The Fatherland

Where is the true man's fatherland?
Is it where he by chance is born?
Doth not the yearning spirit scorn
In such scant borders to be spanned?
Oh yes! his fatherland must be
As the blue heaven, wide and free!

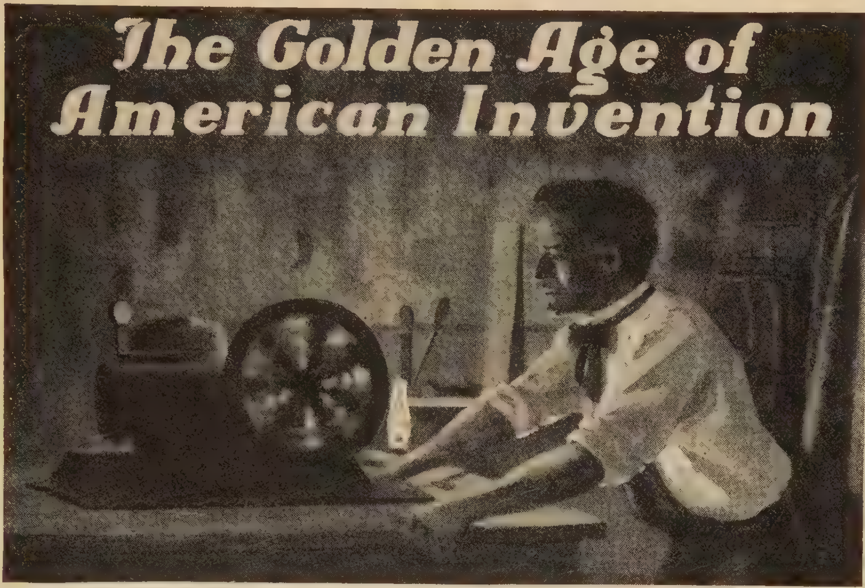
Is it alone where freedom is,
Where God is God and man is man?
Doth he not claim a broader span
For the soul's love of home than this?
Oh yes! his fatherland must be
As the blue heaven, wide and free!

Where'er a human heart doth wear
Joy's myrtle-wreath or sorrow's gyves,
Where'er a human spirit strives
After a life more true and fair,
There is the true man's birthplace grand,
His is the world-wide fatherland!

Where'er a single slave doth pine,
Where'er one man may help another—
Thank God for such a birthright, brother—
That spot of earth is thine and mine!
There is the true man's birthplace, grand,
His is a world-wide fatherland!

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL

The Golden Age of American Invention



IT is the most wonderful experience, as one grows older and reads more history, to discover that there are long periods of time when little progress is made in any field; and other periods when the stage is filled with remarkable men, and events of immense consequence follow each other in rapid succession.

Such stirring times of great men and shining deeds, that create new heritages for the race, are called "Ages." The Age of Pericles in Greece reached the pinnacle of Art. The Augustan Age of Rome brought government to its highest point of power and glory. The Elizabethan Age was one of inspiration in English literature; and the Age of Discovery of Columbus gave us a planet for human activities. You can not read of such times without a thrill of pride and joy that men have achieved so much. But here is a curious thing: you can live in such a time without knowing it.

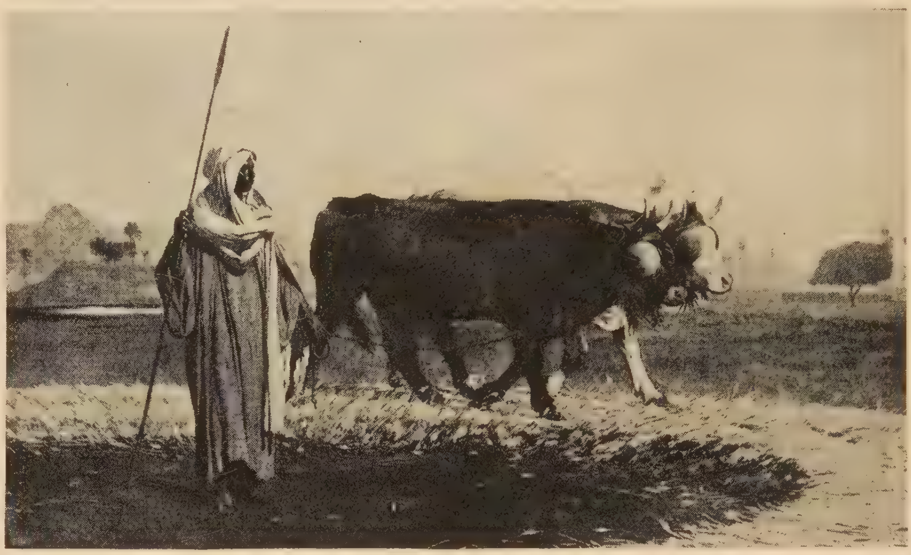
"Golden Age" in History

And We Live in a Golden Age

A thousand years from now historians will probably speak of ours as the Age of Invention. Chains have been struck from the hands of labor, and countless tasks given to machines. The industries and population of civilized countries have been multiplied, time and distance conquered by steam and electricity, and all the peoples of the world have become neighbors, concerned about each other's affairs and trading in each other's markets.

This age is a long one, and every western nation has had a part in it. Indeed, England calls it the Victorian Age of her history, but it began fifty years before Queen Victoria was born, and is not yet ended. And the United States has the most names on the roll of honor, and the credit of many of the greatest inventions and scientific discoveries.

Harvesting in Bible Days



Here you can see how they used to harvest wheat in Bible days. The old ways of harvesting are still used by small farmers in Egypt, and this reproduction of a painting by the famous French artist, Gerome, called "Treading out the Corn," shows how they did it. "Corn" as used in the Bible means wheat. You will notice the oxen wear blinders, but they are not muzzled. Do you remember that the Bible says: "Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn"? Poor dumb beasts, they worked hard and were not to be cheated of their wages. That some of the old Egyptian farmers at least were too stingy to let their oxen help themselves to a little wheat now and then as they were threshing, is shown by the inscription on one of the walls of a tomb along the Nile. This inscription has been freely translated,

"Hi! along! oxen! tread the corn faster,
The chaff for yourselves, the grain for your master."

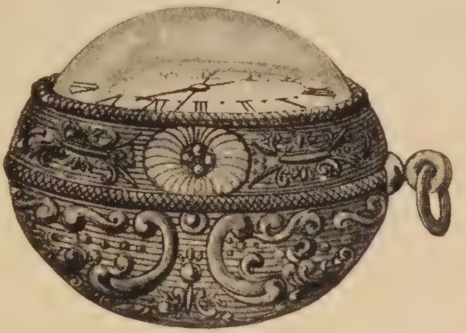
Now a word about those blinders: These blinders are to keep the ox's mind on his work. Notice also the palm branches hanging from the blinders of the oxen. What do you suppose these are for? You have noticed how the cow tosses back her head to chase away flies that her tail cannot reach, haven't you? Don't you see how such a fly brush as these steady old Egyptians here are wearing, would help out?

The Bible has many references to work in the harvest field. Here are some passages. Look them up and see how interesting they are: Gen. 42:2; Acts 7:12; Deut. 24:19; 1 Cor. 9:9; 1 Tim. 5:18; Judg. 15:5; Job 5:26; Pss. 4:7, 65:9, 13; 72:16; Prov. 11:26; Zech. 9:17; Matt. 12:1; Mark 2:23; Luke 6:1; Mark 4:28; John 12:24; 1 Sam. 12:17; Job 31:40; Pss. 81:16; 147:14; Jer. 12:13; 23:28; Matt. 3:12; Luke 22:31.

Beginnings of Our Inventive Age

In our country this age began with Benjamin Franklin, who captured electricity with a kite-string and a bottle, and made scientific experiments that won him fame in the capitals of Europe. And I think, too, that it began also in the little farm and village workshops of colonial New England, where every man and boy was obliged to mend and make his tools, and contrive conveniences of every sort. Franklin found his own sort in the groups of scientists in London, Paris and Edinburgh, who were investigating the properties of electricity and steam. And he was in England when James Watt, the instrument-maker for Glasgow University, improved the stationary steam engine. Hitherto this was used simply to pump water out of deep coal mines. It must long have had only this limited use but for the fact that James Hargreaves soon after invented the spinning jenny and Richard Arkwright the spinning frame. When the steam engine was set to turning the wheels of cotton and woolen mills, all the conditions of the textile industries were changed. Human hands could not compete with machines. This was a hardship at first, for it threatened to leave many hands idle.

How Eli Saw the Wheels Go Round



Have you ever heard a watch spoken of as a "turnip"? You see from the shape of this one how the word originated. But the most interesting thing about this watch is that it helped to teach Eli Whitney how to invent the cotton gin. Like other boys, he was very much interested in seeing how wheels went round, so one Sunday when the family were at church he took this big silver watch from the peg where it was hanging on the wall. Then with his pocket knife he got it all apart, which was easy enough. Then he put it together in good running order again before the family got back from church—which wasn't easy at all. But that he could do it showed his talent for mechanics and helped start him on the road to invention. He was always making convenient little things for his mother at home and when he grew to be a man, did similar things for his wife. For instance, he made for her a fine bureau with many drawers that were all locked up by locking the top one. Your father probably has a roller-top desk in his office, the drawers of which lock in the same way. He also made many ingenious toys for his children.

Up to about 1765 every sort of work in both the Old World and the New was done in much the same, slow, crude way as it had been done hundreds of years before. Wind still drove all the ships at sea; wind and water turned the wheels of saw and grist-mills, and animals hauled all the heavy loads and carried travelers by land. Manufacturing was done by hand in homes and small shops. Big sailing vessels were put together with the few tools of the smith and carpenter. Spinning wheels, looms, and the turner's and potter's wheels were worked by foot-power.

The Steam Engine and England's Monopoly

The invention of the steam engine, spinning frame, and power loom gave England a monopoly of the cloth market. In order to keep it, she guarded the secrets of the new inventions jealously. No mill-worker was allowed to emigrate, nor any model or drawing of machines to be taken out of the country. As to foreign lands, this was necessary at a time when there was no protection for patents, as there is today. But it was unjust to the English colonies in America, whose development and prosperity would have added to the wealth of the mother country. It was a bitter thing to see the cotton grown on our Southern plantations carried across the ocean, and brought back as finished goods that could be sold cheaper than the product of the clever and industrious hands of New England women. This was another injustice to add to the many which brought on the Revolutionary War.

How Steam Helped Bring the Revolution

After the war the new states felt no scruple about appropriating these new inventions. Men trained in the English mills did manage to slip

American Invention Set Free

away to America. In 1790 Samuel Slater came and reconstructed from memory the entire machinery of Arkwright's cotton mills. Before 1800 we had cotton, woolen and carpet factories in operation, had opened coal and iron mines, and were making bar and sheet iron, and nails, sewing thread, pins and many other small articles by machinery.

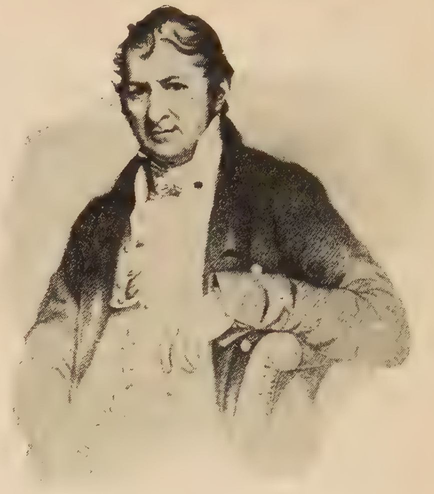
And now another difficulty arose. The mills used so much cotton that the fiber became scarce. The South could grow larger crops, but there was little profit in growing them so long as the tightly embedded seeds had to be separated from the soft, clinging lint by hand. A slave woman or child could not earn what it cost to keep her at that slow, tedious task. A machine was needed to gin cotton. And who was so likely to be able to make one as a "handy" Yankee?

The Story of Eli Whitney

That is what Mrs. Nathaniel Greene, widow of the Revolutionary War hero, thought one morning, as she sat in the drawing room of her big plantation house on the Savannah River, Georgia. A company of wealthy planters of the neighborhood, out for a horseback ride, had stopped to lunch with her and were talking of the wealth that a cotton-ginning machine would bring to the South. Calling a servant, she sent for a guest of the house, and when a tall, grave student from New England came in, she introduced him.

"Gentlemen, this is my ingenious young Yankee friend, Mr. Whitney Explain what you require and I am sure he can help you."

How Eli Looked as a Man

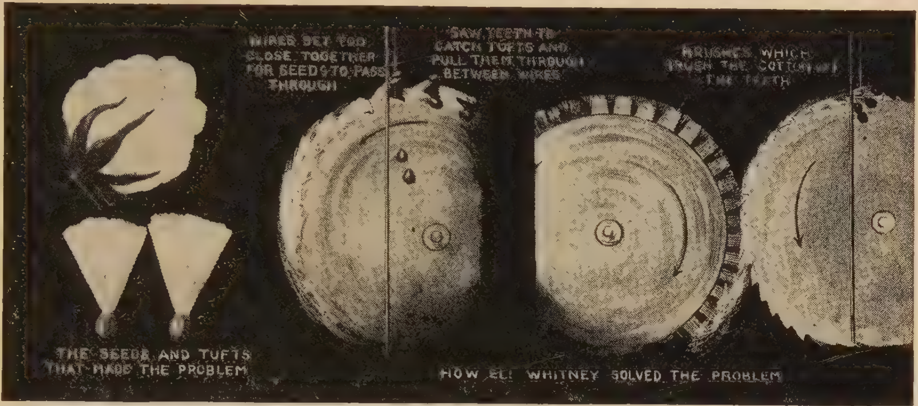


Eli Whitney

Here is the boy who took the watch apart. But now he is a famous man and this is how he looks and how he signs his name. You see he writes a firm, strong hand and with a flourish that students of handwriting say means imagination. Like Robert Fulton, he was tall and fine looking, with hair that curled slightly and like Fulton he usually wore it hanging over his forehead. Like Fulton, also, he had very polished manners and was a social favorite. Though usually dignified and somewhat stately in his manners, he could enjoy a merry frolic with the little folks with whom he was always a great favorite.

A Puritan from a bare farm among the stony hills of Massachusetts, Eli Whitney had recently been graduated from Yale College. Needing money to fit himself for the bar, he had come south to find employment as a tutor in the family of some wealthy planter. As a boy he was so clever with his hands that the farm workshop had been turned over to him. And he had earned his way through college by mending every disabled clock, gun, spinning wheel, and violin in New Haven. To repay the hospitality of the kind lady who befriended him in the South, he took charge of Mrs. Greene's plantation crafts shops and

The Cotton Seed Puzzle and How Eli Whitney Solved It


WIRES SET TOO CLOSE TOGETHER FOR SEEDS TO PASS THROUGH
SAW TEETH TO CATCH TUFTS AND PULL THEM THROUGH BETWEEN WIRES
BRUSHES WHICH BRUSH THE COTTON OFF THE TEETH
THE SEEDS AND TUFTS THAT MADE THE PROBLEM
HOW ELI WHITNEY SOLVED THE PROBLEM

This picture shows plainly the workings of Whitney's great but simple invention. On the left is the problem he had to solve—how to pull the seeds off the cotton. After thinking it over he saw that it would amount to the same thing if he pulled the cotton off the seeds. The two other pictures show how he did it. Note in the third picture how the brush-wheel and the toothed-wheel turn toward each other as explained in the description of the original Whitney model; but remember that the brush-wheel turns faster than the toothed-wheel.

made skilled workmen out of negro smiths and carpenters.

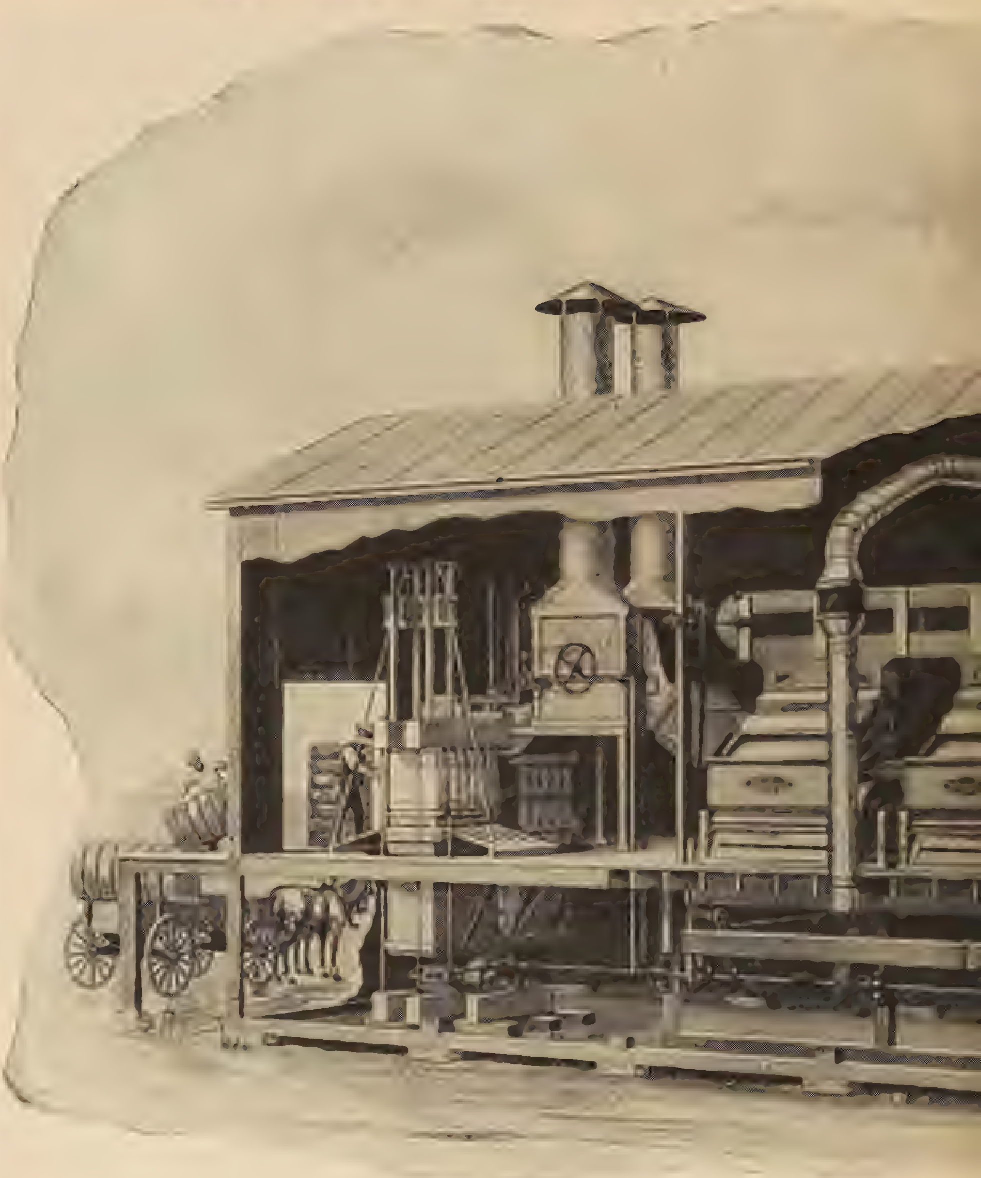
Invention of the "Iron Fingers"

Before he was asked to invent the cotton gin he had never examined a cotton boll, but he saw at once that only fingers of some sort could do the work. Why not hundreds of little steel fingers instead of ten large human fingers? On that simple idea he worked out an ingenious machine. It was simply a big rolling-pin, fitted into a box, turned with a crank, and set with rows of steel teeth. Above the roll, and half enclosing it, was fixed a semicircular steel plate with narrow slots through which the teeth slipped as the roll was turned. Cotton dropped from a hopper above into this plate. As the roll was turned the teeth caught the lint and pulled it through the slots. The stripped seeds slid down into an outside box.

This invention involved no great principles of mechanics and physics as did the steam engine, but it was, and must always be, one of the most useful and valuable of labor-saving inventions. It brought immediate wealth to the South, and raw material to build up the cotton mills of New England. So, with plantations and factories prospering, we are sorry and ashamed that his invention never brought to Mr. Whitney anything but empty honor and years of misfortune. His machine was stolen, his patents infringed, his factory burned. But his creative brain and business genius won him a competence in the manufacture of firearms. Like Arkwright in England, Whitney built up a model factory. He set the steam engine to driving machine tools of his own designing, brought labor under the discipline of direction and regular hours, trained ordinary mechanics into expert gunmakers, and standardized his own product. From boyhood to old age his motto was: "Whatever is worth doing, is worth doing well."

Born in 1765, he lived until 1825.

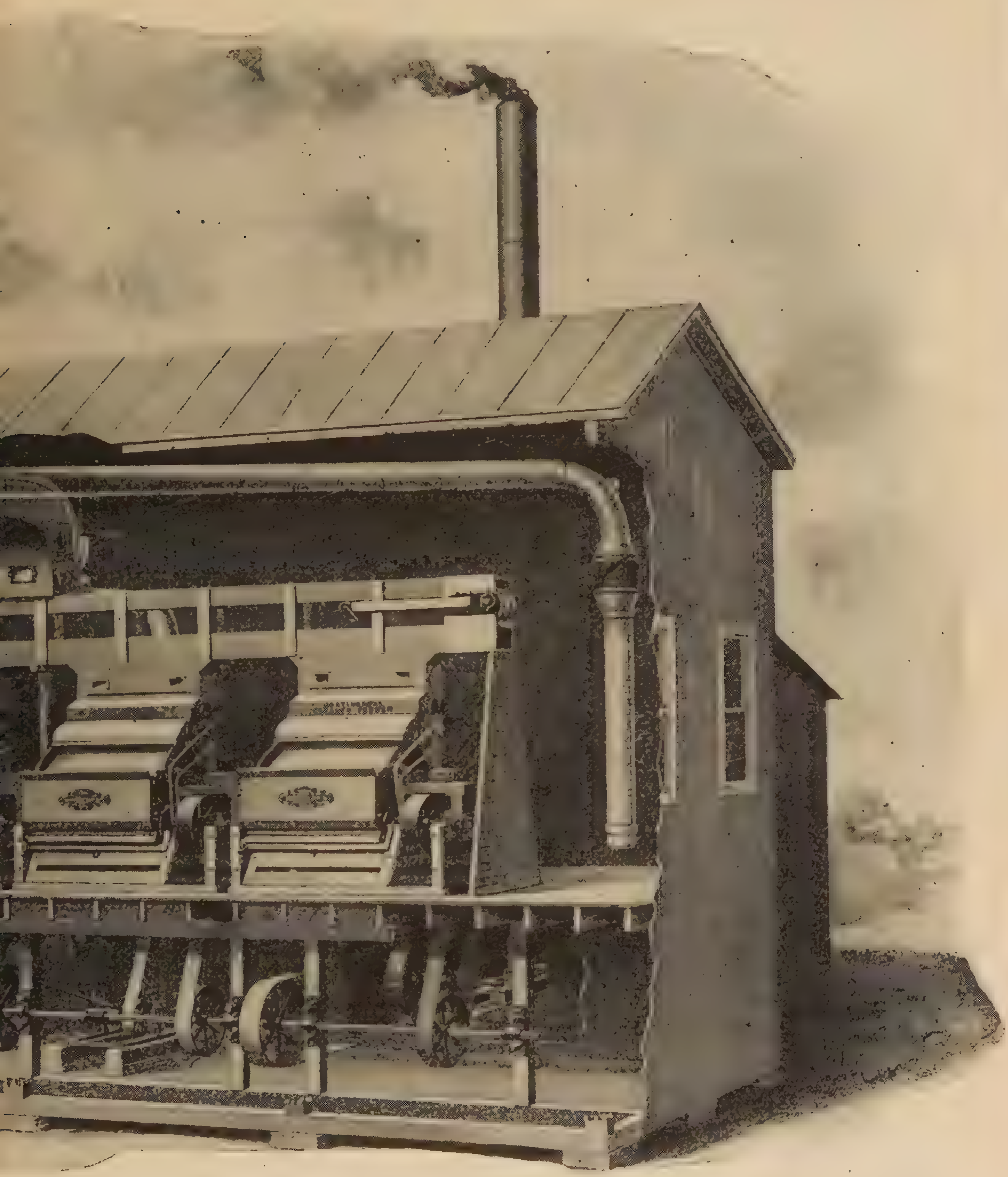
How This "Mechanical Elephant" Suc



The first gin that Whitney invented simply took the seeds out of the cotton and left all the dead leaves and other dirt to be picked out later. After that it was baled. In the modern cotton mill like that shown in the picture, the cotton is not only freed from seeds but, to a large extent, leaves and dirt, and by a connection between the gins and the baling machine, is baled before it leaves the mill. The pipe hanging down about the center of the picture sucks up cotton as an elephant's trunk sucks up water. As soon as it is lowered on the load of cotton as it comes in the wagon
from the fields, a large fan at the back end of the p
starts to revolve, sucking the cotton up into the sep
tor which you see attached to the pipe above
gins. You can easily identify this separator fr
the whole, detailed picture of it which is shown
the next page.

A similar pipe on the right-hand side of the pict
is called the over-flow pipe. Sometimes when
cotton is too wet, it is sucked off the wagon fa
than the gins can take care of it, so the over-f
pipe helps out the gins by carrying away part of

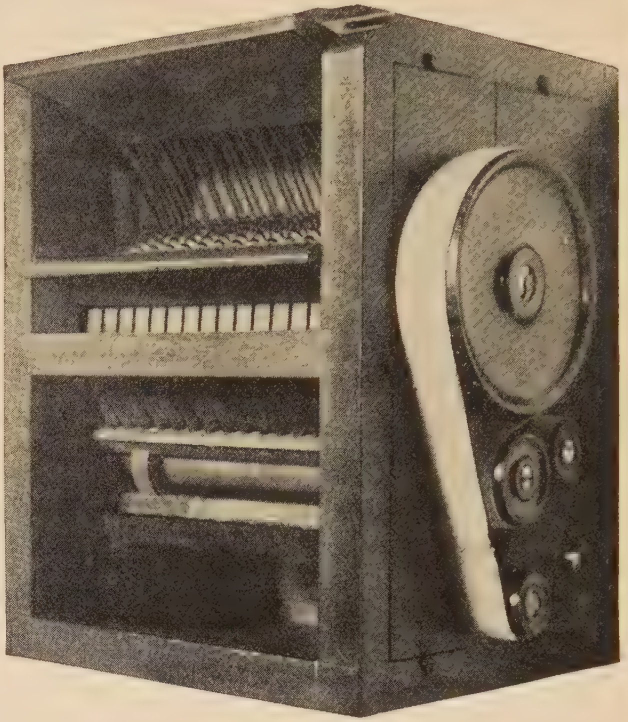
Up the Cotton and Tramps It into Bales



on, and dropping it on the platform on the end
the row of gins. Then when the wagon has been
oaded, this surplus cotton is sucked back through
gins again.
he long trough running above the gins is called
feeder, because through it the cotton passes into
hoppers of the gins. After entering the hopper,
cotton passes into the saw teeth, the seed is sep-
ted from it, and the lint blown out through another
to the condenser. The condenser is the large
you see at the left side of the picture, with the
two pipes sticking up from it. The condenser screens out whatever dust and dirt may still remain in the cotton. This is also where the air leaves the cotton, passing off through those pipes. But in passing off, notice how the air is still put to work. It blows the cotton against the screen on a small revolving drum. In this way the cotton is laid out in beautiful white layers before it is passed onto the press to be pressed into bales. Notice the wheel on the outside of the box. It is this wheel that turns the drum inside the box.

It was in 1807, while his fortunes were at their lowest ebb, that another American, born within a month of himself, sprang to instant fame and wealth with the invention of the steamboat.

Original Model of Eli Whitney's Cotton Gin



As you will see by the two-page picture farther on, a modern gin plant is quite a complicated affair, but the heart of it all is just the simple bit of machinery shown in Whitney's model of the cotton gin, of which this is a picture. The original is in the Smithsonian Institute in Washington. Turn your hands toward one another with the fingers spread out. Now pass the fingers of one hand between those of the other. There, you have made the most important part of the cotton gin, the part that pulls the lint from the seeds.

Just as the fingers of one hand passed between the fingers of the other, wheels in the gin with teeth in them, pass between slits in an iron bed as indicated by the wires in the upper part of the model. The slits are so small that the teeth draw the cotton through, but the seeds catch and are pulled off. In the lower part of the model is a revolving brush which brushes the cotton from the teeth of the other wheel. The belting is arranged in that peculiar way so that the wheel containing the teeth and the wheel containing the brushes turn toward each other and at the same time the brush-toothed wheel revolves much faster than the other. It is for this reason that it brushes off the cotton. If both wheels moved at the same rate, the brushes would simply pack the cotton against the teeth.

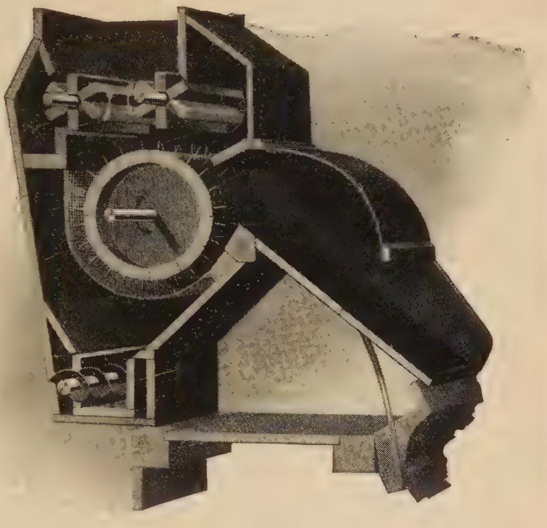
Story of "Quicksilver Bob"

The boys who lived in Lancaster, Pennsylvania, and who were ten years old when news of the battle of Lexington reached the German and Quaker village on the Susquehanna, were lucky. For a playmate they had a merry, quick-witted Irish lad who, because of some amusing experiments he had made with the liquid metal that runs up and down in the thermometer tube, had won the nickname of Quicksilver Bob.

Busy Fingers and Busy Brain

The name exactly described Robert Fulton; such an active mind, nimble fingers, lively curiosity and astonishing ingenuity! A boy like that is liable to get into mischief, but Bob was so manly and good-tempered that he was a universal favorite; and he was so careful of the property of others that he was welcome in every craft shop in the town. Workmen loaned him their tools and the druggist gave him chemicals. He made his own rockets for the Fourth of July, and his own pencils of powdered and molded graphite. He built a windlass for the people of the town to pull heavy loads up a steep hill. He designed a gun and calculated how far it would shoot. For this he was obliged to study mathematics and physics. But the thing that excited the admiration of the other boys

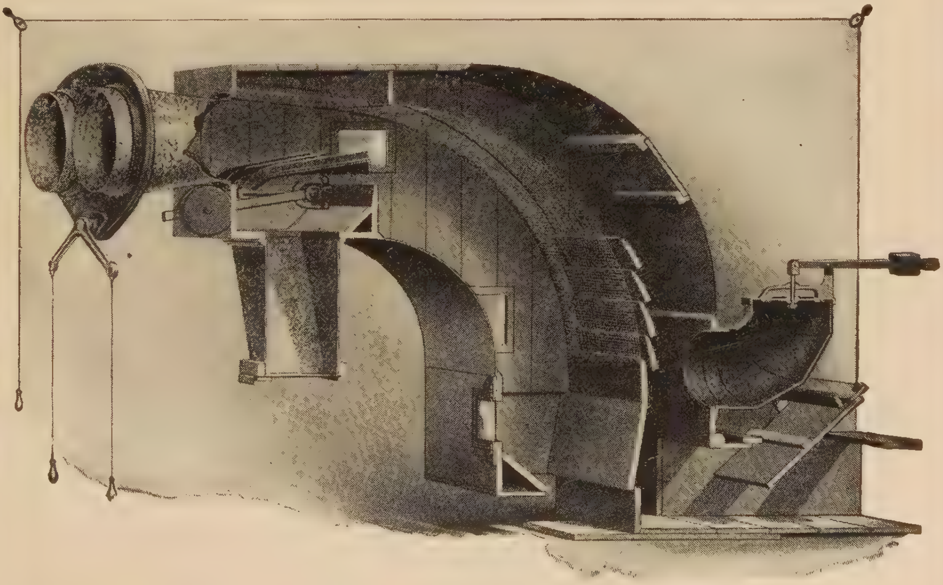
The "Works" of the Feeder and the Separator



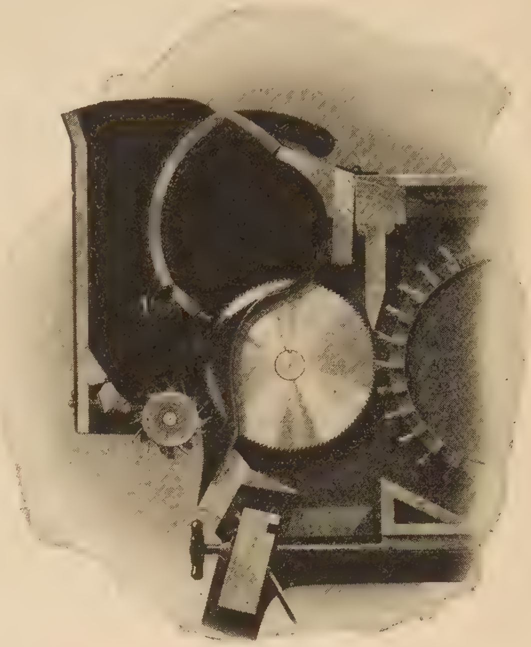
This is a view of the inside of one of the feeders, one of which is located in the top section of each gin. The two rollers turn toward each other and so pull the cotton down to the teeth of the drum. This drum revolves very fast, pulling the cotton out by bits until it is very fine. In doing this, it beats the cotton over the screen just below and screens out the dry leaves and dirt. By this same revolving of the drum, the cotton is passed on down the "slide" on the right into the gin. The "corkscrew" affair below the drum with its screen, is what is called a spiral conveyor. It catches the dirt as it falls through the screen and carries it out.

The Inside of the Separator

Here you see the separator and how it works. Notice the entrance for the double pipes. One of these is the pipe from the wagon and the other is the over-flow pipe. As the cotton is sucked in by the air, it passes through a screen which screens out the coarser dirt. This screen is shown just at the entrance above the weight. Then the air passes through the screen and the cotton itself drops down into the distributor, as shown in the double-page picture.

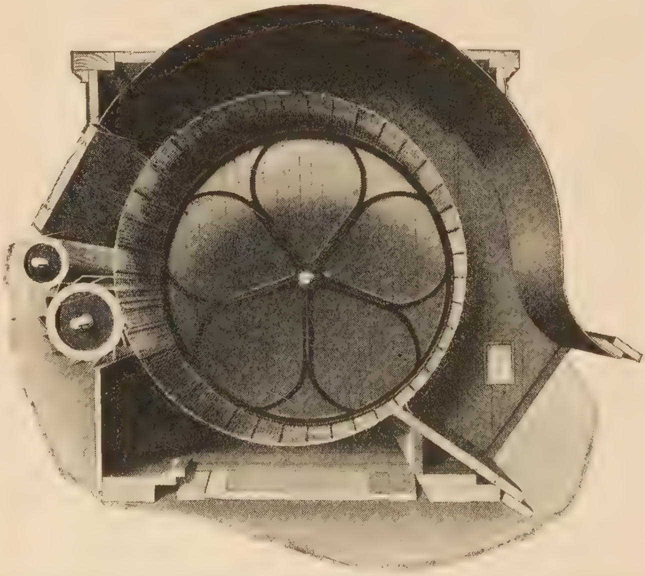


How the Gin Cleans and Seeds the Cotton and Then Brushes Its Own Teeth

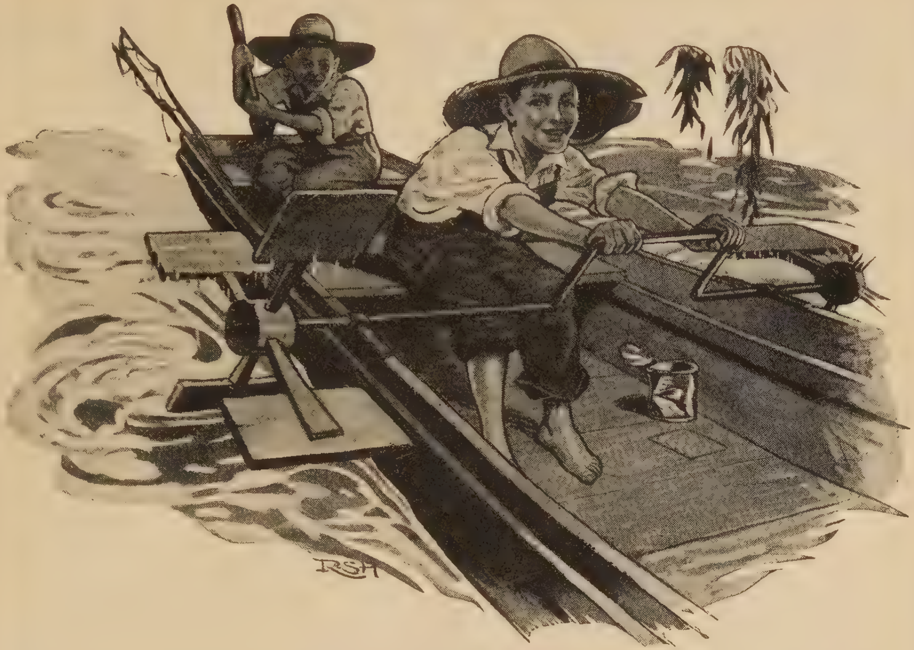


At the right is an inside or sectional view of a type of gin which is specially made to handle what is called dirty cotton, that is to say, cotton containing an unusual amount of dirt, dead leaves, etc. The cotton from the feeder enters at the top and is forced down to the wheel below, which looks like a whirligig. This wheel turns toward the left very rapidly and pulls the cotton through some coarse teeth which remove the dirt from the cotton, and at the same time pull it around to the teeth of the saw. The saw then pulls it up between the ribs, as they are called, and removes the seeds. The saw-toothed wheel carries the cotton to the wheel with the brushes. The saw-tooth wheel and the brush wheel turn toward each other, but the brush wheel turns much faster and so brushes the cotton off the saw teeth and forces it out of the gin, where it is conveyed by air to the condenser shown below.

Now, let's have a look into the inside of the condenser. The cotton from the gin is forced into the right side of the machine against the screen drum. Here any remaining dirt is removed and the lint blown against the screen in a soft layer. Then the screen revolving to the left carries this layer to the rollers you see at the left, which convey it on to the baler. On the larger of the two rollers are rubber flaps which scrape the lint clean from the screen and, by the turning of the roller, push it on the bales.



Quicksilver Bob's First Steamboat



Perhaps you don't recognize him, but this is the boy who covered the sea with the giant steamships that now ply between all the great ports of the world. At the time which this picture represents, he was not the great Robert Fulton, but little Bob Fulton, known as Quicksilver Bob. Like all healthy boys he loved to go fishing, and he had a chum named Christopher Gumpf. They got tired of rowing a heavy boat a long distance when they went fishing, so Bob worked out the plan for this boat. Together they built it and you see it worked! The paddles, when not in use, they took off and hid in the thick bushes by the stream. When Bob grew up he built his famous steamboat on the same general plan, but this time he used coal to make steam instead of supplying it himself as he is doing here.

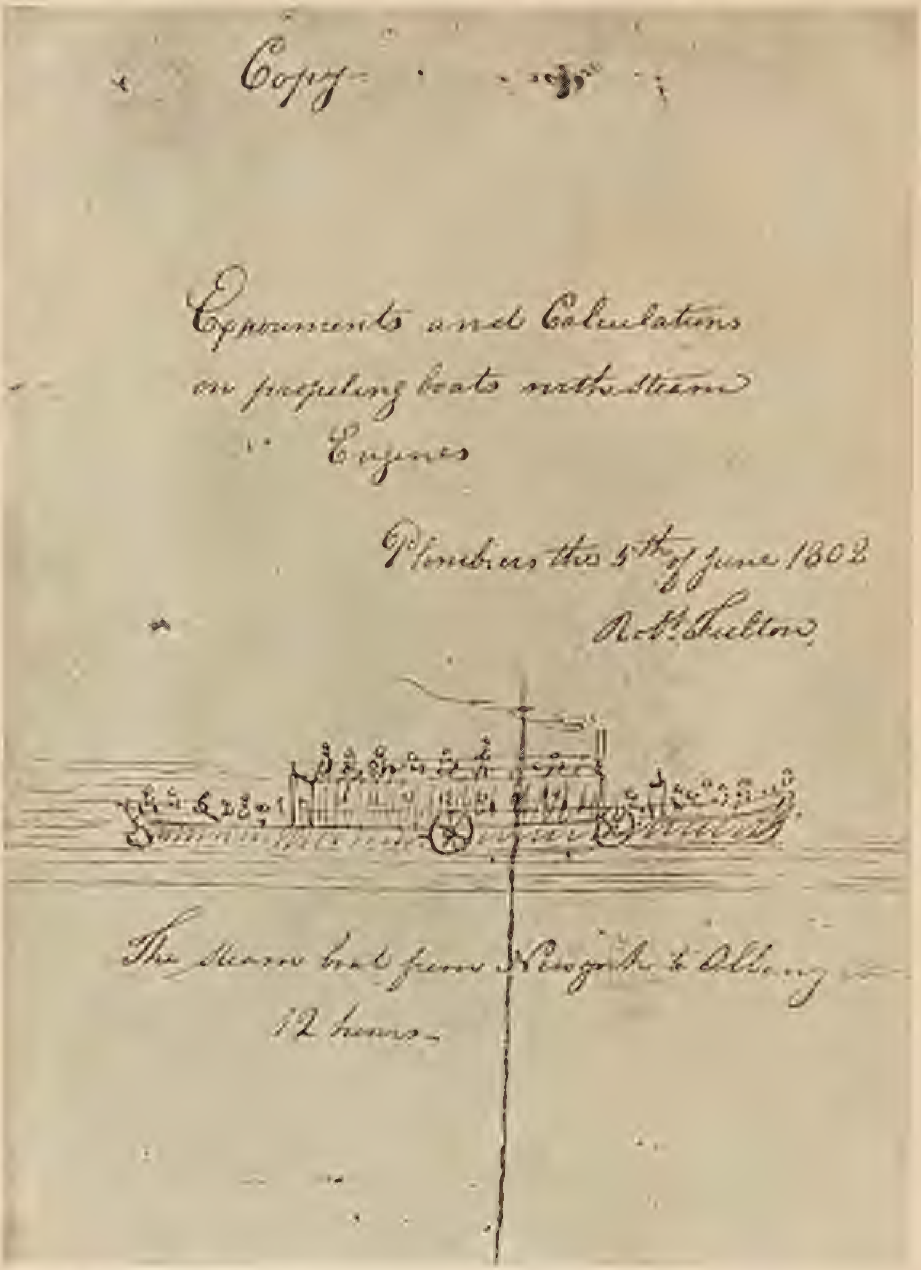
But he still remained a boy in spirit, as you can see by that playful sketch of the steamboat on the cover of his notebook. And here is something one always likes to remember about this great man with a heart of gold. On one trip of his first ferry boats across the East River to Brooklyn, the chief engineer was caught in the wheels and fatally injured. "I would give all that I am worth or ever hope to be if I could save that man," cried Fulton, and he wept like a child. He was never harsh with his workmen and they all loved to tell about his thoughtfulness of their welfare, and his habit of walking up and down the shop with the rattan cane he always carried, his waistcoat unbuttoned, the ruffles you see in the bust of him, waving from side to side as he paced back and forth for hours thinking out some new mechanical problem.

most was a paddle-wheel that he attached to a boat and turned with a crank. With this clever contrivance he beat all other rowers to the best fishing grounds. Many predicted that he would be an inventor, and, with Watt and Arkwright making such a stir in the world, invention began to look like a serious business.

And He Was an Artist, too!

Other people, however, thought young Robert Fulton was to be a great painter, like Benjamin West or Gilbert Stuart. To help his widowed mother he turned his talent for drawing to the painting of delicate miniature portraits. In this way, by the time he was twenty-one, he earned enough money to buy a farm for his mother and the younger children, and to take himself to London. There he won fame both as an artist and an engineer, and a large income that he spent in experiments. Watt's steam engine was driving all the factory wheels in England. Remembering the paddle-wheel of his boyhood fishing boat,

Fulton's Picture of the Boat that Was to Be



Copy

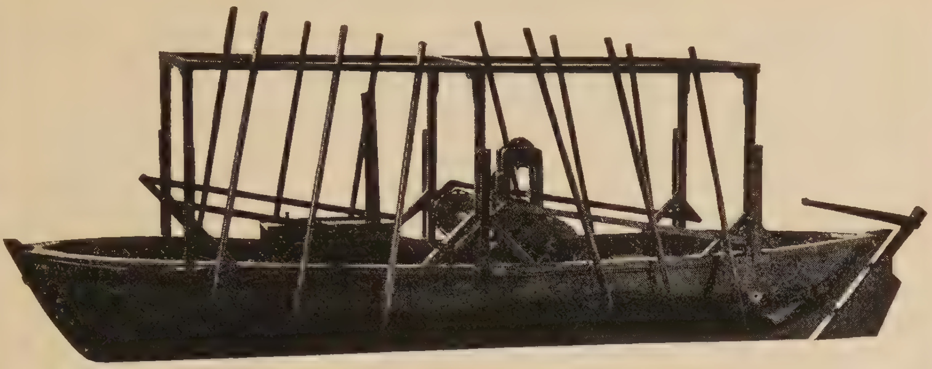
Experiments and Calculations
on propeling boats with steam
Engines

Plombiers the 5th of June 1802
Robt Fulton

The steam boat from New york to Albany
12 hours

This picture is in the nature of a prophecy—a great prophecy that came true. It is the title page of Fulton's notebook of the experiments and calculations he made before building his first steamboat. The inventors who accomplish things, you know, are not idle dreamers who expect to get results at a bound. They work their way along, step by step. These manuscript notes are in the possession of one of Fulton's descendants, Mrs. A. C. Sutcliffe, of New York City, by whose permission this reproduction of the title page is made.

A Model of Fitch's Steamboat



John Fitch, another American inventor, conceived the two ideas of a steamboat. His first model, like that designed by Fulton, had wheels at the sides, but the following year he replaced the wheels with paddles and it is this later model that is here shown. The original is in the Patent Office at Washington. You see his idea was to reproduce the galleys of the ancient Greeks and Romans, replacing manpower by steam. Looking at this little model, one recalls Homer's fine line in the story of the Odyssey: "They smote with their well-ranged oars, the grey-green brine of the ocean."

Fulton believed that the stationary steam engine could be made to turn the shaft of a big side-wheel, and so force a boat through the water.

This was almost as simple an idea as Whitney's cotton gin, but it took years and a small fortune to work it out to practical success. His first boat, launched on the Seine in Paris, broke in two from the weight of the engine. His second failed to develop sufficient power. But, learning from his mistakes, his third steamed up the Hudson from New York to Albany. Splashing, coughing, and trailing a cloud of smoke and sparks from its pine-wood fire, it "looked like a sawmill afire on a scow," but it showed its heels to every bird-like sailing vessel on the river.

Within a few years steamboats were on every navigable stream and lake of the Atlantic seaboard. In 1811 one was built at Pittsburgh and sent down to New Orleans. With that began the great days of steamboating on the Mississippi. But the famous inventor did not live to see that, nor to see steam navigation on the ocean. While working on the design of the first steam naval vessel for the government, he died in 1812 at the early age of forty-seven, deservedly loved and sincerely mourned by the people of three countries.

Machines that Labored for Men

A dozen years later George Stephenson, fireman of a steam-pump in an English coal mine, invented the locomotive which, with the iron rail and roadbed, presented many more difficulties than the steamboat. America began to build railroads at once, but produced nothing to match the locomotive before 1840. We were not idle, however. The war of 1812, cutting off trade with England, obliged us to build more cotton and woolen mills and iron furnaces, and to supply ourselves with shoes, china, glass, paper, furniture, hats, hardware, tools, rope, and firearms. It suddenly became patriotic to use things "made in America." And after the war, manufacturing

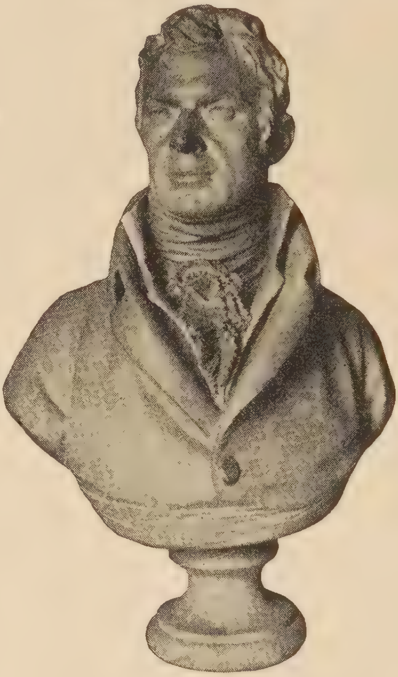
Invention of the Locomotive

was encouraged by an import duty, or tariff on foreign goods. With the country prospering, increasing in population and spreading westward, this period was marked by an amazing number of labor-saving machines.

Bricks were pressed and lumber was sawed and planed by machinery. There were steam hoists and dredges, and chain elevators to lift wheat and ore to the tops of mills. The friction match was invented, and cooking and heating-stoves. Pens were made of steel, paper and pasteboard of straw, and coal gas was used to light the streets of eastern cities. The first threshing machine appeared, to relieve the farmer of back-breaking toil. Pennsylvania developed her vast coal fields. Oil was discovered in 1859, and when the oil fields were extended into Ohio, Pittsburgh became the center of grimy industries. Iron was brought from upper Michigan, and copper from Lake Superior.

With the settlement of the treeless plains west of the Mississippi, Chicago became the center of an enormous lumber trade, drawing on the pineries of Michigan and Wisconsin.

Houdin's Bust of Fulton



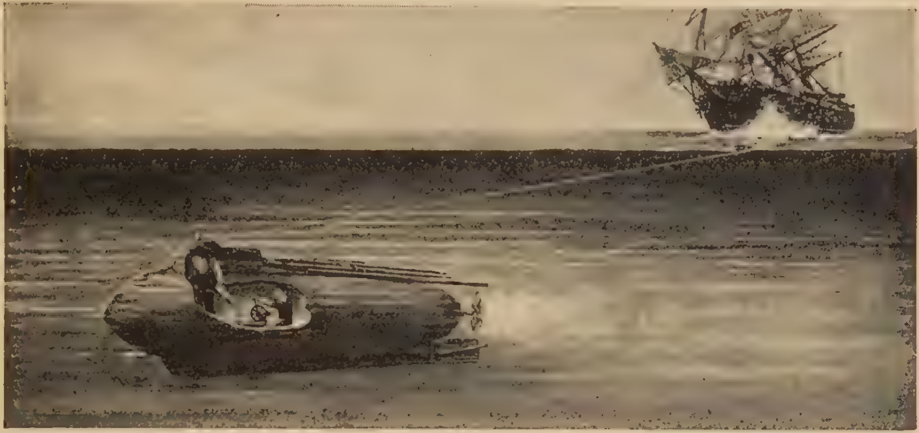
How this bust of Fulton by Houdin brings out the character of the man; the broad forehead and protruding brow of the practical thinker and the keen observer, the square chin and prominent nose of the man of initiative, the full lips expressing the warm heart and the genial smile of the social favorite.

Fulton was in the right sense, "all things to all men." He was equally at home in polite society and among the workmen in his shop who were all devoted to his interests. His complexion was fair, his hair dark brown and curly, and carelessly scattered over his forehead. His eyes were large, dark and penetrating.

When the packing business grew up to supply lumber camps, emigrants and gold-seekers, new and better ways had to be found for curing meats. Canal digging, road and railroad making, bridge building, and multiplying factories, camps and mines created such a demand for rough labor that floods of foreign immigrants poured in. There were labor organizations, strikes and lockouts as early as 1830, in every northern state. All these people had to be transported, clothed, fed and supplied with every necessity of life; at constantly increasing distances. So it was under the pressure of human needs that many mechanical improvements and important inventions were made between 1840 and 1860. As timber grew scarce in the East, structural iron was used in house and bridge building. Wire rope and vulcanized rubber were made. The steam fire engine, the sewing machine, the Hoe printing press, the McCormick reaper, the photographic camera and the electric telegraph appeared in rapid succession.

How thankful Lincoln was for these inventions! They all came in

Fulton's Undersea Boat

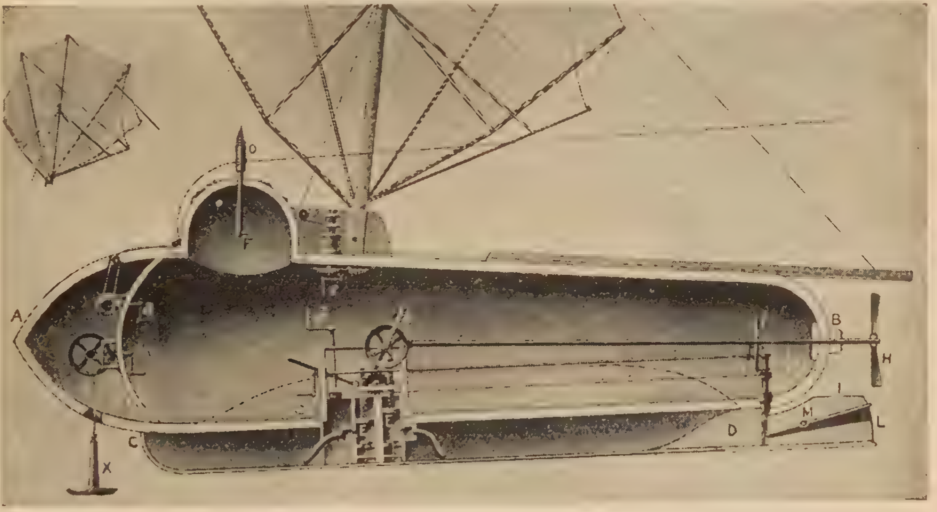


© *Munn & Co.* *Courtesy Scientific American*

As we all know, there are vessels that travel under the surface as well as upon the surface of the sea, and that these undersea craft are used only in time of war. But how many of us know that the first man who ever worked out a practical form of submarine was the same Robert Fulton, whose inventive genius wrought such mighty changes in ocean travel and traffic in times of peace? This picture gives you a good idea of how Fulton's submarine did its work.

Instead of firing a torpedo at a vessel as is done in the use of the submarine of today, it was necessary to creep under it and screw a spike into the wooden hull. In this spike was a hole through which was passed a rope with the torpedo on the other end. Having made all these arrangements, the submarine pulled away with the cord attached to it and so made the torpedo bump against the bottom of the vessel and, exploding, blow a hole in it.

The Machinery that Made It Go

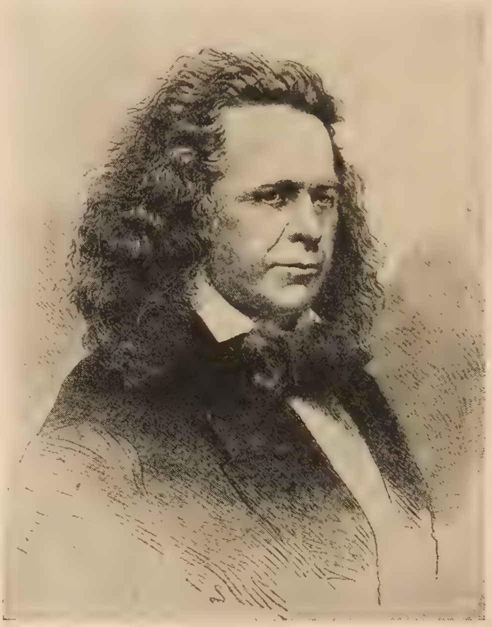


© *Munn & Co.* *Courtesy Scientific American*

This picture will give you a better idea of what those two men are doing in the submarine in the preceding picture. You see this submarine was to be propelled and steered by hand. The parts indicated by the letters are as follows:

A B, the shell or hull; C D, the iron keel; E E, pumps for regulating the submergence of the craft, by taking on or throwing out a small amount of water from the ballast tank; G, bulkhead cutting off the forward compartment, G A C, from the remainder of the interior, and mounting the cranks a and b which control the anchor, X, and the floating mine, through individual windlasses; F, handle attached to the barbed spike, O, which is thrust into the wooden hull of an enemy warship; H, screw propeller operated by hand power applied at e; L, ordinary rudder manipulated by handle d; I, submerging rudder, pivoted at M and controlled from lever g; c, mechanism for raising and lowering the mast and sail, Y.

time to be of wide use and to make more bearable all the dreadful horrors of the Civil War. Soldiers could leave their pictures behind to comfort their families if they never returned. The sewing machine, in house and power factory, kept the brave boys in blue and gray supplied with clothing. The printing press multiplied the newspapers. The telegraph brought quick news of battles to anxious hearts; and one reaper took the place of many farmers in the fields.



A Man Who Kept on Smiling

When you introduce any very new thing, a machine or an idea, you must be patient and work hard, or neither the machine or the idea will get into general use. Some men bear this experience without smiling, some smile and drop their work and go at something else, but Howe smiled and went on. He had a pleasant humor, a quick wit, and a square chin and all three helped to carry him through. He also had a soft eye and a placid Quaker face (he was a Quaker) and was shrewd, as Quakers so often are. As a boy he was playful and loving and had many good chums. As a man he was so kind and sociable that even in the darkest days he never lacked friends.

Not satisfied with all the work which his machine accomplished for the government during the Civil War, he, although lame, organized a cavalry regiment, presented each officer with a horse, refused the title of colonel, and himself joined the army as a private and served until his health gave way.

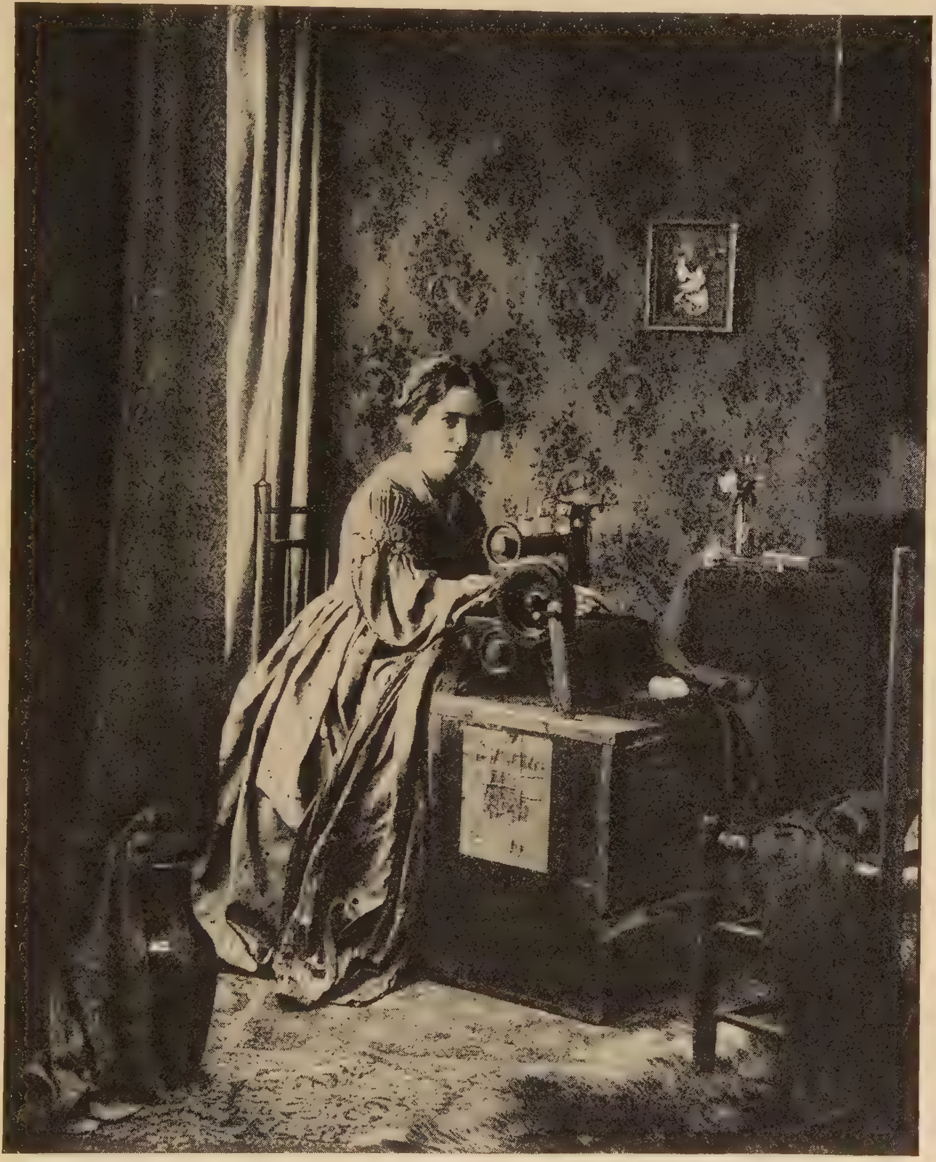
You can see by his collar and coat that he lived at a later time than Whitney, for both are more nearly like those we wear today. He didn't wear his hair long to be eccentric, but like many artists, he was usually too busy to go to the barber.

The Inventor of the Reaper

Every American should know and take pride in the story of Cyrus H. McCormick, who, with an invention as simple as the cotton gin, increased the supply, and decreased the cost, of the world's bread. In his humble beginnings and difficulties overcome, he compares with George Stephenson, the English inventor of the locomotive. He was born within a few days of Lincoln, in a log cabin crowded with nine children, on a poor, rough farm in West Virginia. His father, a frontiersman of pious, Scotch Covenanter stock that had come to America before the Revolution, was a man of sterling worth and undaunted courage and resource. A backwoods mechanical genius, he made a hemp break, clover huller, and was experimenting with a reaper when young Cyrus was born.

Father and son were birds of a feather, inseparable as soon as the baby could toddle. They shared every task, and worked together on every ingenious contrivance that would lighten toil. While still a boy Cyrus began to "tinker" with his father's reaper. At twenty-one he mounted the seat and proudly clattered out of the barnyard on a machine that would cut standing grain. But it was ten years before he could make another. The farm was forty miles from a blacksmith shop, sixty from a canal,

How the Singer Worked in '51



This is how mother looked back in 1851 and this is the kind of a "Singer" that helped her make her pretty dresses and the dresses of the children. You see the machines were set up on the boxes in which they were shipped—no nice neat furniture about them, as we have in the sewing machines of today. Through that slot a rough wooden arm connected the wooden treadle with the balance wheel. You see this wheel didn't get its motion over a belt, as it does in sewing machines today.

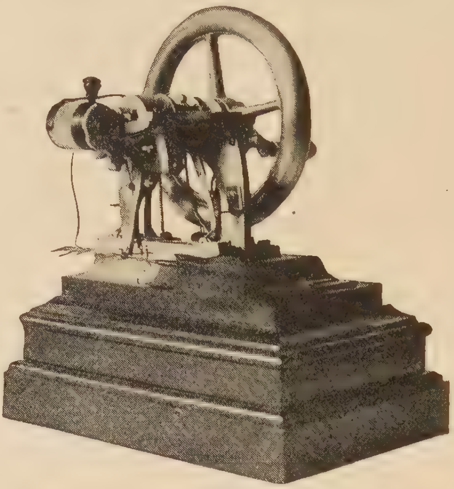
The little peg reaching out from the arm was used in starting. Haven't you noticed that mother and the seamstress always give this wheel a little whirl before they start the treadle? The poster you see on the end of the box told what a good thing the sewing machine was and how to take care of it.

and iron was seventy-five dollars a ton. In desperation he built a crude blast furnace of stones and clay, and smelted ore that he dug out of the hills with his pickax. In five years he made and sold one hundred machines.

At the age of thirty-seven, already turning gray, he had accumulated three hundred dollars. With this in his belt he mounted a horse and rode from New York to Missouri to try to interest some man with money in his invention. Most people laughed at him. Then, after two minutes' talk and a keen inspection of the model, William B. Ogden, enterprising mayor of the little city, Chicago, that built the first ten miles of railroad west of Lake Michigan, bought a half interest in the invention and furnished money to build a small factory.

The rest was comparatively easy. Five thousand reapers were sent into the fields of the prairie states to harvest grain in the summer of 1847. And with the opening of the Civil War, McCormick reapers released half a million farmer boys to fight for the Union. Europe was amazed to see the United States supporting two armies and still selling wheat in Liverpool. The use of the reaper spread to every grain-growing country in the world, and brought into cultivation millions of acres of land that must have waited long on human labor.

Howe's "Toy" Sewing Machine



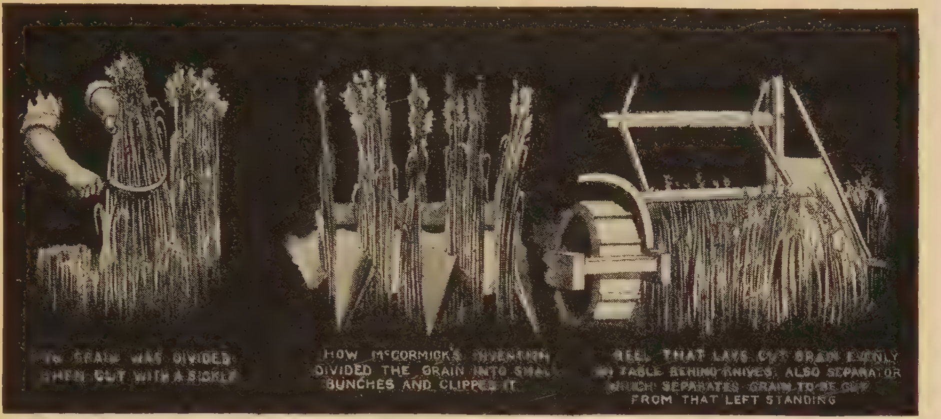
This is another one of the endless number of interesting little machines that you will see in the great mechanical "toy" shop at Washington, in the patent office. It is hard to believe, but the fact is when Howe first invented his machine, the public were interested in it as a toy but not disposed to use it. "What do you want to sew faster for"? That's a queer question to ask but that is what the people and manufacturers and everybody asked when Howe first showed his machine. So, like all inventors who succeeded, he had to be very patient as well as ingenious. When he asked tailors to try his machine, they refused because they said if it got into general use it would throw them out of their jobs. As people were already getting enough clothes to wear, what would happen if you made more clothes than there were people to wear them? Why, clothes makers would be out of work half the time! That was the way they argued. But Howe kept at it and finally got his machine into use. Among other things, it helped to win the Civil War. It provided millions of uniforms, tents, sails, cartridge cases and sewed shoes that couldn't possibly have been supplied by hand.

How easily that invention could have been lost! Made in poverty and obscurity that were all but impossible to overcome, it was received with ridicule by neighbors and with contemptuous indifference by manufacturers and capitalists over a ride of fifteen hundred miles. That we have this indispensable machine today is due, not only to the genius of the inventor, but to his courage and tenacity of purpose.

The Story of Samuel F. B. Morse

The telegraphic instrument, made about the same time, was a conquest in physics, comparable to the steam engine of James Watt. A reverent world took off its hat when the inventor tapped the first sentence: "What hath God wrought?" over the first wire from Baltimore to

The Harvest Hand with the Iron Fingers


THE GRAIN WAS DIVIDED
THEN CUT WITH A SICKLE
HOW McCORMICK'S INVENTION
DIVIDED THE GRAIN INTO SMALL
BUNCHES AND CLIPPED IT
REEL THAT LAYS CUT GRAIN EVENLY
ON TABLE BEHIND KNIVES, ALSO SEPARATOR
WHICH SEPARATES GRAIN TO BE CUT
FROM THAT LEFT STANDING

These three pictures show you how the reaper is made to take the place of the harvest hand with his sickle. The harvester grasped a little bunch of wheat with one hand and held it, while with the cycle in the other hand he cut it off. In the McCormick harvesting machine the same result was accomplished but in another way. The next time you get your hair cut, notice how the barber takes the hair between his fingers and snips it off wisp after wisp. You see Mr. McCormick worked out much the same idea in the "business end" of his harvesting machine. Then later the inventor of the hair clipper borrowed the idea for the barber who, you know, uses the clipper as well as scissors in cutting your hair.

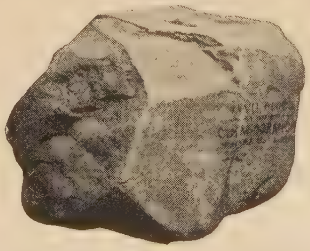
The third picture shows you how the wheel in turning laid the wheat against the blades. On the left is the separator which separated the grain to be cut, and on the right is one of the two drive wheels on which the reaper moves along.

The next picture and the explanation of it tells you how this drive wheel drives.

Washington. He had wrought a man of scientific mind, lofty imagination, creative genius, and consecration to a great task. This invention was understood at once to open up a new field of discoveries in applied electricity.

Fulton was in London, with the idea of the steamboat in mind, and Whitney was in Yale College when Morse was born, in 1791, in the parsonage of a Congregational minister in Charleston, Massachusetts. Descended from four of the best and most intellectual families in America, he had every social and educational advantage. He was graduated from Andover and Yale with distinction before he was twenty. This Puritan youth showed the same qualities of mind, interests and talents as the Irish immigrant lad, Fulton. He spent his vacations experimenting in chemistry and electro-magnetism, and he earned his first money by painting miniatures. A talent for art and a gift for invention are often found together. Both imply imagination and creative ability.

The Stone and Our Daily Bread



This stone has a very dignified look. It certainly has a right to look dignified, for it helped to make the first of the harvesting machines on which the world now depends for its daily bread. This stone did duty as an anvil in the old McCormick blacksmith shop.

A Homesick Boy's Unconscious Prophecy

At twenty years of age Morse was sent to London to study art. A homesick boy, he wrote to his mother: "I wish that, in one instant, I could tell you of my safe arrival; but we are three thousand miles apart, and must wait

The Birthplace of the Great Reaper

This little old blacksmith shop in the hills of Virginia is the very place where the farmer boy, Cyrus McCormick, first began to work out the design of the reaper. You mustn't suppose, however, from the looks of the place that McCormick's father remained poor. He came to own several farms, a sawmill and gristmill, and had shops for blacksmithing and carpentering like this on the different farms to make it convenient for repairing tools. At the age of fifteen, Cyrus had invented a cradle which he used in the field in competition with his father's hired men.

four long weeks to hear from each other."

Twenty-two years later he was on his way home from a trip abroad He had won fame as an artist, had painted the portrait of the Marquis de Lafayette and organized the New York Academy of Arts and Design. Important commissions and eager students awaited his return. At forty-two he had no other thought than to devote his life to his chosen profession. But he still had his old interest in electricity, and in London had heard much of Michael Faraday, the famous physicist, who had recently discovered the principles of the dynamo. On shipboard were both scientists and manufacturers who were interested in electric power and transmission. Morse in the course of conversation remarked thoughtfully:

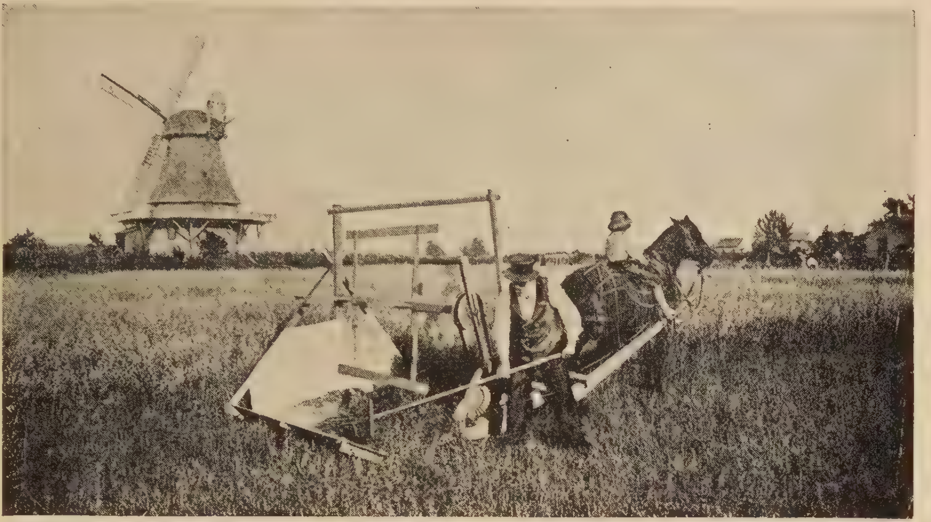
"If the current could be broken and restored at will we would have a means of quick communication."

"Interesting," said the others and promptly forgot about it. But the idea possessed Morse. Then on the deck he worked it out in a drawing that showed a battery, a charged wire, a keyboard, and a recording pencil to be moved by sparks tapped out in dots and dashes over the wire. And he seems to have decided to give up the life of honor, ease and even wealth which lay before him. On his arrival he consulted no one. His wife had long been dead, his children scattered among relatives. He disappeared into a little shop in New Haven.

But Morse Didn't Forget

Then followed twelve years of poverty, toil and ridicule; "wasted years," they were called by his best friends. Even scientists thought his idea wild and visionary. He slept in his workshop, cooked his own food, refused commissions for pictures, consented to do no more than teach an art class to pay for his bare necessities. Suddenly his name was on every tongue. His patents se-

The First Harvest Hand with the Iron Fingers



This picture shows how the first McCormick reaper was built and how it worked. A reaper has only two wheels on the ground. These are called the drive wheels because as the reaper moves forward, these wheels drive the machinery that does the reaping. One of these drive wheels has teeth on the inside of it that fit into the teeth of a wheel on one end of what is called the disc shaft, much as the teeth in the stem-winder of a watch fit into the teeth of the wheel that winds the spring. (Ask your father to show you, unless you have a "stem-winder" of your own.) This arrangement of one cogged wheel at right angles to another is what is called a beveled gear. On the other end of the shaft that connects with the drive wheel is another beveled gear arrangement which you can see in the picture.

The thing in the machine that takes the place of the harvester's sickle, is a long, straight bar with triangular blades fastened on it. The end of the sickle bar is attached to a wheel by a "peg" on one side of the center of the wheel so that, as the cog-wheel causes the "pegged" wheel to revolve, the cycle bar is given a back and forth motion which cuts off the bunches of wheat between the iron fingers.

The "paddle wheel" you see in the picture, is connected by that belt to the axle of the drive wheels. As the machine moves forward, the paddles brush the wheat up against the blades. At that time there was no device in the machine for sweeping off the wheat as it was cut, so a man followed along and raked it off as you see this man doing.

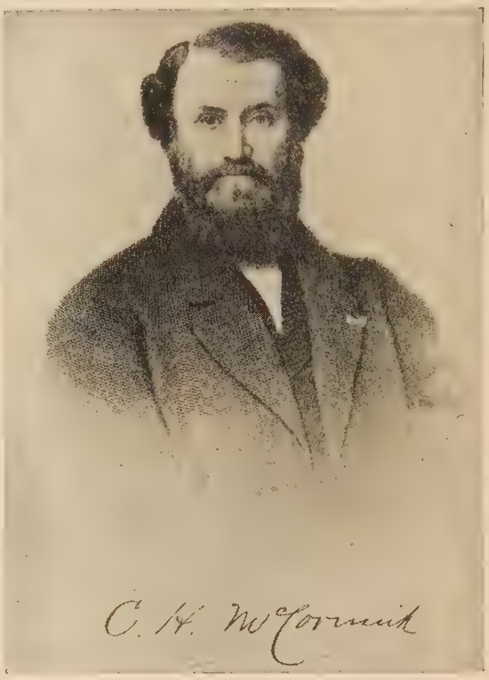
Reaping a Just Reward

cured, he persuaded Congress to appropriate $30,000 to build a telegraph line from Baltimore to Washington. He lived to the age of eighty-one, to reap the honors and rewards of his extraordinary achievement. He saw wires stretched out to the Pacific coast and others connecting the capitals of Europe. And Cyrus W. Field had the benefit of his advice in solving the problems of laying cables under the Atlantic Ocean.

Other Great Electrical Inventions

Three years after Morse died in 1872, Alexander Graham Bell invented the Bell telephone, and exhibited it at the Centennial Exposition in Philadelphia in 1876. Edison already had his first factory; and in 1880 special trains were run from New York City to Menlo Park, to see "the wizard's" town blazing with the new electric lights. Electric lighting was a novel feature of the Paris Exposition of 1889. The Columbian Exposition in Chicago, in 1893, however, had the very first building devoted to electrical exhibits. Visitors reached the grounds by electric trolley cars and third-rail elevated trains, the entire park was brilliantly lighted by incandescent lamps and arc lights, and all the machinery was operated by dynamos. Most of this amazing exhibit was due to the genius of Edison, whose inventions covered every department of heat, light, and power. His work is so important that we have a special sketch of him among the World's Helpers.

McCormick, as a Famous Artist Saw Him



Here they are again—the square chin, the steady, level eyes, determination, patience; the power to labor and to wait. McCormick not only endured with patience the struggle to get the value of his machine recognized, but for several years, while experimenting with it, and showing its operation in the field, he refused to begin making these machines for sale until he had made a number of improvements that these experiments suggested.

Cyrus, the farmer boy, could never have thought of having this picture made when he was working in that little old blacksmith shop. It is from a portrait of him by Cabanel. Although before McCormick was grown his father had become a wealthy farmer, it would have taken several of his farms to pay the price charged by the famous painter for his work.

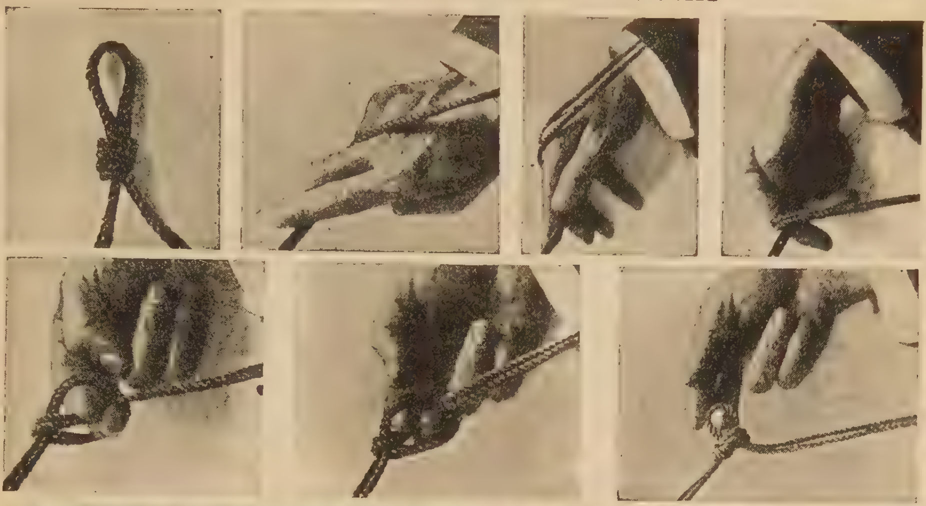
The little ribbon in his coat is the decoration of the Legion of Honor which was given him by the French emperor, Napoleon III, after seeing the reaper work on his farm at Chalons.

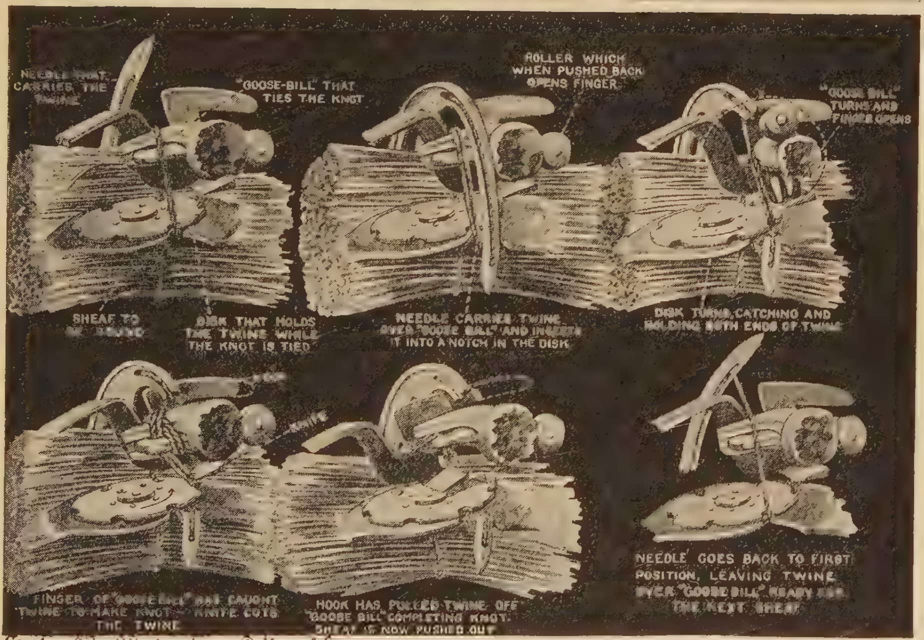
The First Iron Man-of-War

Now let us go back and trace the progress in other fields. The next important invention after the telegraph and reaper, was the "Monitor," the famous, iron-clad naval vessel with revolving gun turret that John Ericsson built for the United States for use in the Civil War. Born in Sweden in 1803, he found no market for his engineering ability at home. In London he improved the locomotive; and then he came to America where, for fifty years, he gave us the finest fruits of his genius. His most notable work was in naval construction. For Fulton's cumbersome side-wheel he substituted the screw propeller, thus securing greater stability and speed. He placed the engine-room below the water-line, where it was safer from cannon fire. Then he boldly encased wooden hulls in thick iron plates which could not be pierced by the small shells of that day. Everyone else predicted that an armored vessel would sink of its own weight. The "Monitor" was laughed at as "an iron cheese box on a raft." But its path was strewn with destruction, and it completely revolutionized naval construction and armament. Old wooden ships were thrown on the scrap-heap.

The period between 1860 and 1880 was marked by mechanical improvements that expanded many lines of industry, and by great engineering works. A self-binder was added to the reaper. Barbed wire fenced in millions of acres of treeless plains for cultivation. Machines for making tin cans made the can-

How the Twine Binder Works




NEEDLE THAT CARRIES THE TWINE
"GOOSE-BILL" THAT TIES THE KNOT
ROLLER WHICH WHEN PUSHED BACK OPENS FINGER
"GOOSE BILL" TURNS AND FINGER OPENS
SHEAF TO BE BOUND
DISK THAT HOLDS THE TWINE WHILE THE KNOT IS TIED
NEEDLE CARRIES TWINE OVER "GOOSE BILL" AND INSERTS IT INTO A NOTCH IN THE DISK
DISK TURNS, CATCHING AND HOLDING BOTH ENDS OF TWINE
HOOK
KNIFE
FINGER OF "GOOSE BILL" HAS CAUGHT TWINE TO MAKE KNOT—KNIFE CUTS THE TWINE
HOOK HAS PULLED TWINE OFF "GOOSE BILL" COMPLETING KNOT. SHEAF IS NOW PUSHED OUT
NEEDLE GOES BACK TO FIRST POSITION, LEAVING TWINE OVER "GOOSE BILL" READY FOR THE NEXT SHEAF

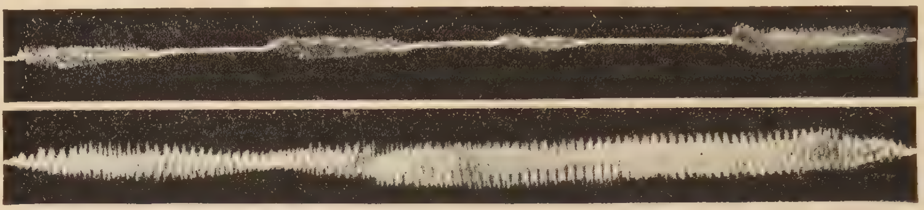
Courtesy Scientific American. © *Munn & Co*

Before twine could be used in binding sheaves it was necessary to invent a machine that would take the place of the human hand. The machine that does this is called a knotter, and it acts quite a little like the human hand in doing its work. The first picture of the hand shows the twine lying across the fingers. In the second picture of the machine, you see the needle brings the other end of the twine up around the sheaf and over the "goose-bill." This doubles the twine much as it is done by hand.

Then the "goose-bill" (which is the machine's finger) starts to turn as you see in the third picture, and as it turns, begins to open, ready to catch the above twine as it goes around. By the time it has turned entirely around, the "goose-bill" has caught the twine and holds it securely. In the corresponding picture of the hand, you will notice that the fingers open in the same way and later secure the twine. Then the hook (marked in the picture) moves to the left, pushing the knot off the "goose-bill" and at the same time the knife cuts the twine below the knot. But the twine would be pushed entirely off the "goose-bill" in this operation, and so the sheaf wouldn't get bound at all, if the "goose-bill" did not hold the two ends very securely, so that the knot be completed as you see in the fifth picture.

ning factory possible, and increased the world's supply of preserved foods. Dynamite, invented by Alfred Nobel of Sweden, and the compressed air drill aided and extended mining and oil production. Powerful elevating machinery lifted ore from deeper mines, and carried grain to the tops of tall mills and storage elevators.

Two Voice Pictures



These two pictures show the changes made in the electric current passing over the telephone wire, when you say "New York," and when you say "San Francisco." Notice how the "sound pictures" are divided into syllables, a short wave for "New" and a longer wave for "York," while in the sound picture of "San-Fran-cis-co" there are four syllables of appropriate lengths.

When we want to say that anything was done very quickly, we often use the expression, "Quick as a wink." As a matter of fact, however, the electric waves passing over a telephone wire when you say "Hello" carry the words so fast that you would have to wink about fifteen times in a second to keep up with it; while, if your "Hello" traveled through the air without the help of electricity, it wouldn't get to San Francisco in less than four hours.

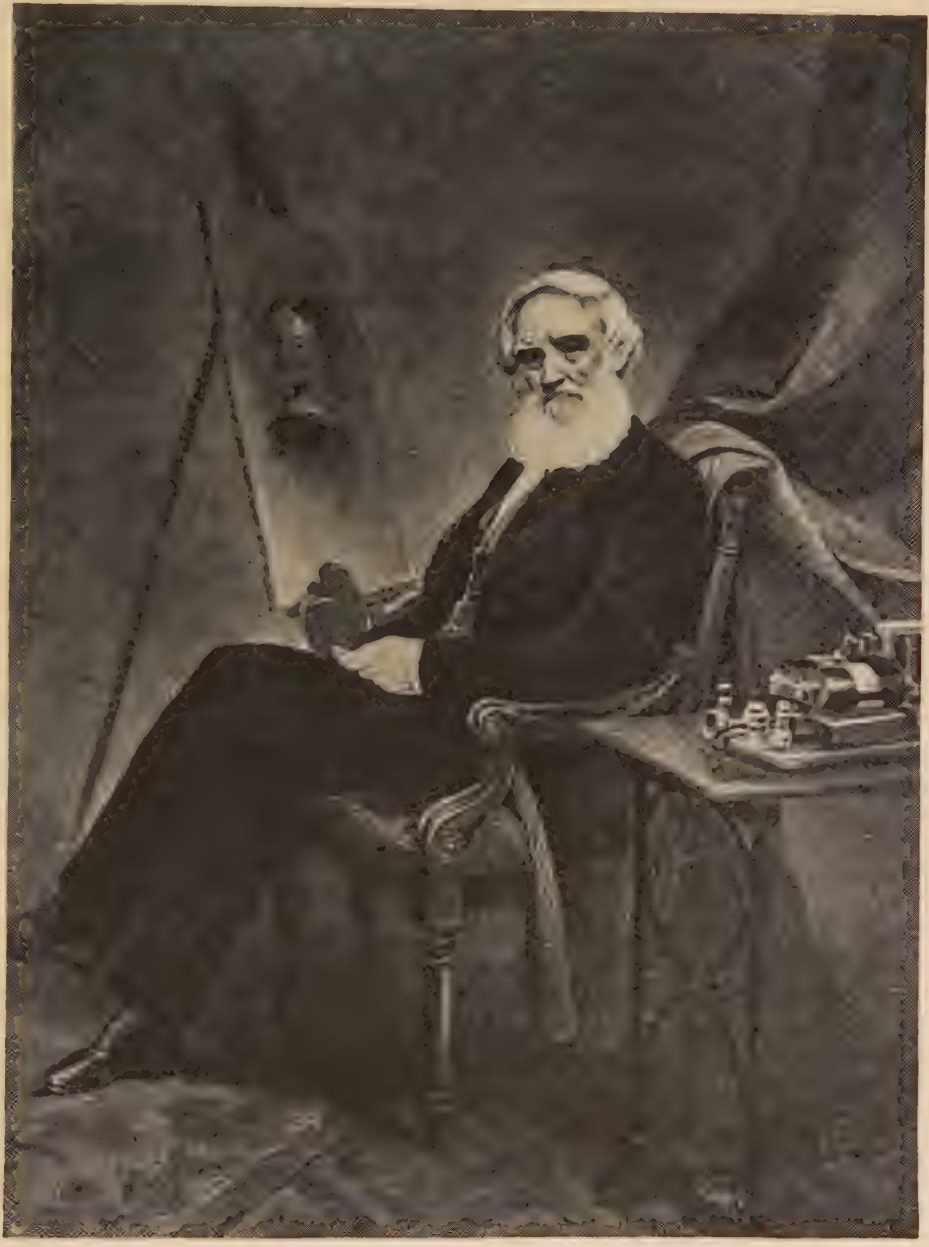
The Westinghouse air brake made travel on railroads safer, and the Pullman sleeping car trebled night travel, so the railroads could operate profitably twenty-four hours a day. The cable car, abandoned now for the trolley and the elevated third-rail system, released horses and mules from killing work, and the gas engine brought power into many a mine, shop and farm where steam could not be used. The typewriter multiplied correspondence and extended business, and the typesetting machine enlarged the newspaper. The use of wood pulp enormously increased the world's supply of paper, and chemical processes recovered the sugar from beets, and syrup from corn. Oil-refining machinery not only improved lamp oil, but gave us gasoline, machine grease and many other useful products from petroleum. In every industry mechanics and chemistry have turned factory waste into valuable by-products.

Engineering, Chemistry and Mechanics

Even while our great Civil War was being fought, gigantic engineering works were begun and some of them brought to completion. The first Atlantic cable was laid in 1866; the Union Pacific Railroad was opened to Sacramento in 1867. The Eads pier and steel arch bridge across the Mississippi River at St. Louis was completed in 1874. Ten years later suspension bridges spanned the Ohio River at Cincinnati, and the East River from New York to Brooklyn. The use of enormous quantities of steel in bridges, rails and buildings was made possible by a cheap and quick process of converting pig-iron into steel, invented by Henry Bessemer of England. The first "skyscraper" office building was erected in Chicago in 1885, by making a bridge construction framework of structural steel on a bed of concrete and railroad iron.

In the thirty years since, we have pushed three more transcontinental railroads out to the Pacific Coast; reclaimed desert lands of the West by damming mountain streams, tun-

Morse and His Life in a Picture



The whole story of Morse and his character as a man is told in this picture. He was an artist, an inventor, a scholar, and a polished gentleman. He had unusual talent both as a painter and a sculptor.

That telegraph instrument always stood on a table at his side in his library, and he used to talk with it to his friends hundreds of miles away, just as we call people up by the telephone today. You see from the form of it that it was a printing telegraph, so that his friends who had an instrument just like it could read what he had to say without knowing the Morse telegraph code.

To Carry Your Voice Across the Desert

This team of six horses and two mules is hauling eleven eighteen-foot telephone poles across the sagebrush-covered wastes near Golconda, Nevada. The country is mountainous and there are no roads, as you see. Such difficulties as these have to be overcome every day, in order that every nook and corner of our big country may have a telephone line.

neling ranges, building viaducts and digging canals. We have developed the mines and transportation system of Alaska; laid cables across the Pacific; chained the power of Niagara Falls; tunneled under the Hudson River; built the colossal waterworks of New York and Los Angeles, and dug the Panama Canal. Many people think our next big task should be to control the floods of the Mississippi.

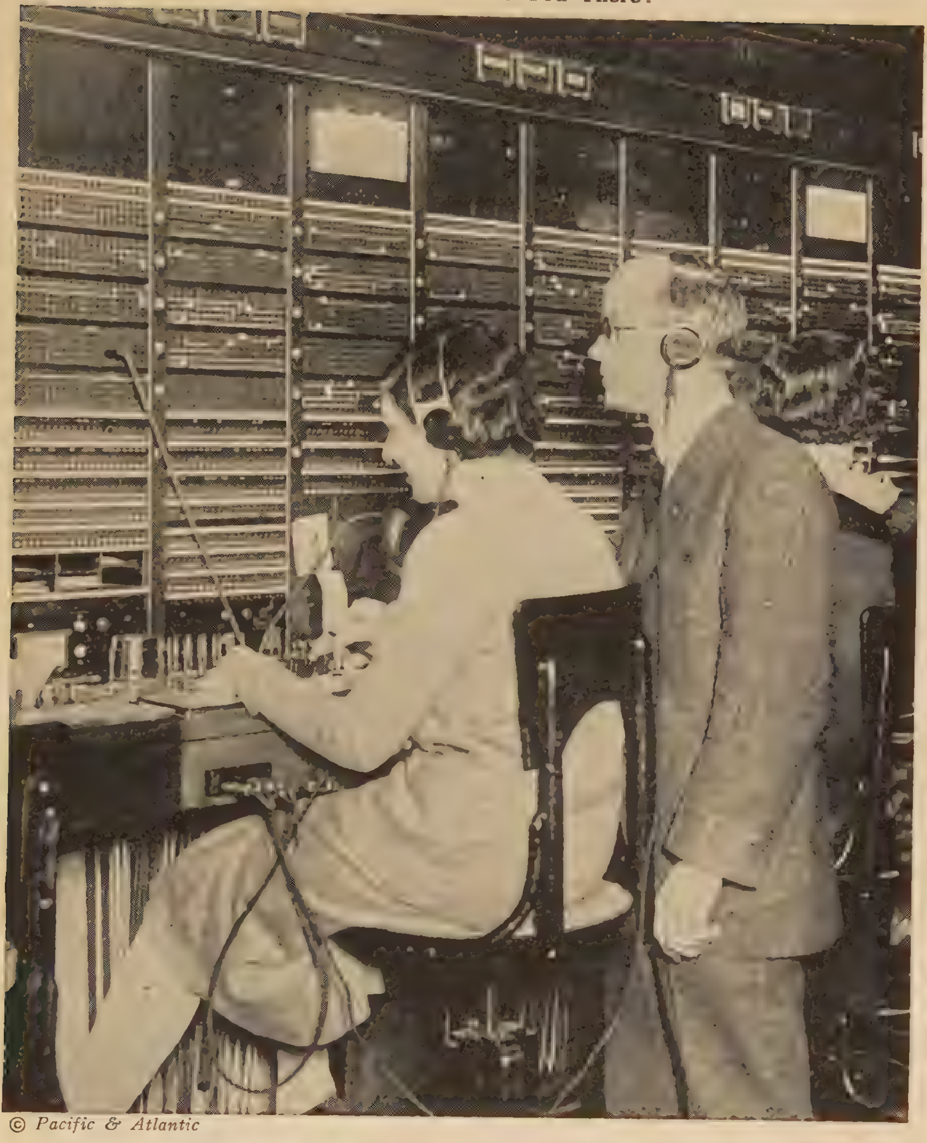
Great Work by Human Hands

The Three Great Fields of Invention

The very multiplicity of things done in this age is confusing. Let us see if we can simplify it. Discovery and invention have all been in three fields: Physics, which considers the properties and powers of steam, electricity and air; second, in mechanics and engineering; and third, in chemistry. All western countries have contributed to every line of progress, but England has the greatest honors in her physicists, working in scientific laboratories and giving their discoveries freely to the world. The United States has no one to match with Watt, Davy, Faraday and Kelvin. Germany has made the greatest contributions in chemistry. Italy and France have a few noted inventors, but the United States is pre-eminent in applied electricity, mechanics and engineering. Marconi, an Italian, invented wireless telegraphy, almost the only thing Edison overlooked, but we have capped that with the wireless telephone. And an American first navigated the air.

And this age has developed a new spirit—a brotherhood of nations in every thing progressive. You re-

Hello, London! Are You There?



© *Pacific & Atlantic*

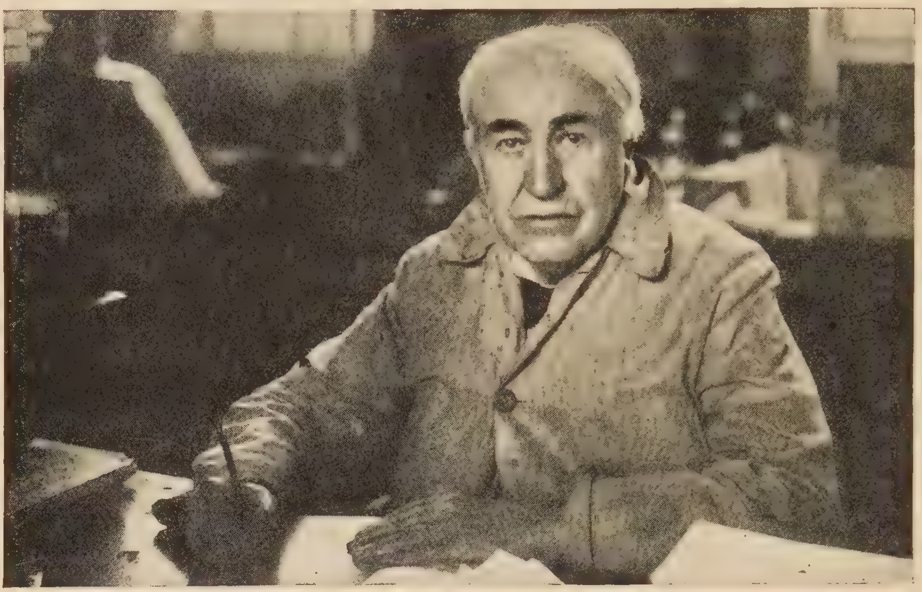
Imagine sending your voice across wires and sound waves from New York to London!

This picture was taken just before the service between the two great cities of the world was inaugurated. The Telephone Superintendent standing beside the New York operator is connected with London, receiving final instructions before the hook-up is completed.

Let's study this picture a few minutes. Those cords hanging down so straight, almost to the floor, are composed of dozens of tiny copper wires; they come up through the switchboard and are tipped by brass plugs. There are eight pairs of cords to each position, the back one is the "answering" cord, the front one the "ringing" cord. There is also a small pair of black keys to each pair of cords.

When you take down the receiver at home, a tiny light appears in front of the operator, she pushes back one of the keys, picks up the corresponding "answering" cord and plugs it into the "jack" just above the light (this puts the light out), saying "Number, please." You give her the number, which she quickly finds in the "multiple block" of jacks above the lights, plugging in the ringing cord, at the same instant drawing back the little black key, which rings your number. All this takes only a few seconds. This is what is called "manual" operating. When you use a "dial" phone, you are connected to your number automatically.

A Great Inventor and His Secret



If there ever was a man entitled to be called genius it is this man Edison. In fact, the word "genius" does not seem to have been strong enough to express the popular idea of him. He has been named "the wizard," because he has invented or perfected so many remarkable things—such as the phonograph, the electric light, the moving picture camera.

But do you know what Mr. Edison himself says a genius is? "Nine-tenths perspiration and one-tenth inspiration; and it is the perspiration that brings on the inspiration." That's his funny way of saying that what we call genius grows out of work, very much as corn grows when you work it with the hoe or plow. In this picture you see him, "all dressed up," in his workshop. When he gets that old linen duster on, things begin to happen, because he makes them "happen." You see he is figuring out something new and has just looked up for a moment to accommodate our camera man.

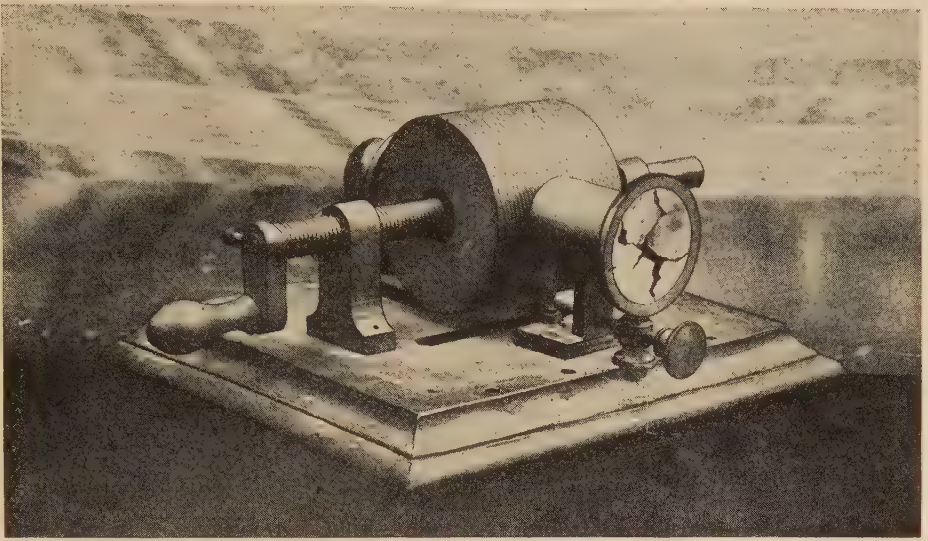
International Brotherhood of Invention

member how jealously England guarded the secrets of the steam engine and textile machines? Now, by mutually protective patents, every new invention is shared with all other countries. Usually, as in the case of the automobile and flying machine, scientists and mechanics work on the same idea, independently, in several countries, and solve a problem in different ways. The Wright brothers of Ohio built the first successful aeroplane, but they had the benefit of the mistakes, achievements, and experiments of Maxim in England, Santos-Dumont in France, and Professor Langley in Washington. There are now several types of flying machines; and Germany has developed the gas balloon into the engine-driven Zeppelin.

How One Invention Grows Out of Another

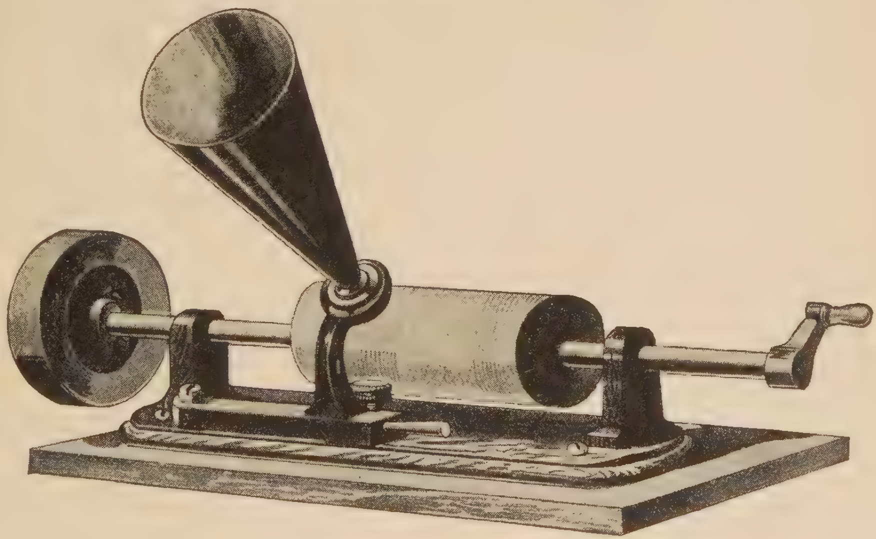
Indeed, every invention rests on discoveries of the past. The steam engine and dynamo were the result of a century of work in scientific laboratories, and their full possibilities were not at once realized. The steam pump was in use in mines a half century before the steamboat was invented and seventy years before the locomotive. Franklin captured the electric spark a hundred years before Morse sent it over a wire, and it was another generation before Edison gave us the electric light. The photograph preceded

The First of All Talking Machines



This is a model of the original Edison phonograph, the father of all talking machines. It is now in the South Kensington Museum, London. Mr. Edison had a representative in England in the early days, named Colonel Gourad, to whom he gave this model and Colonel Gourad presented it to the museum.

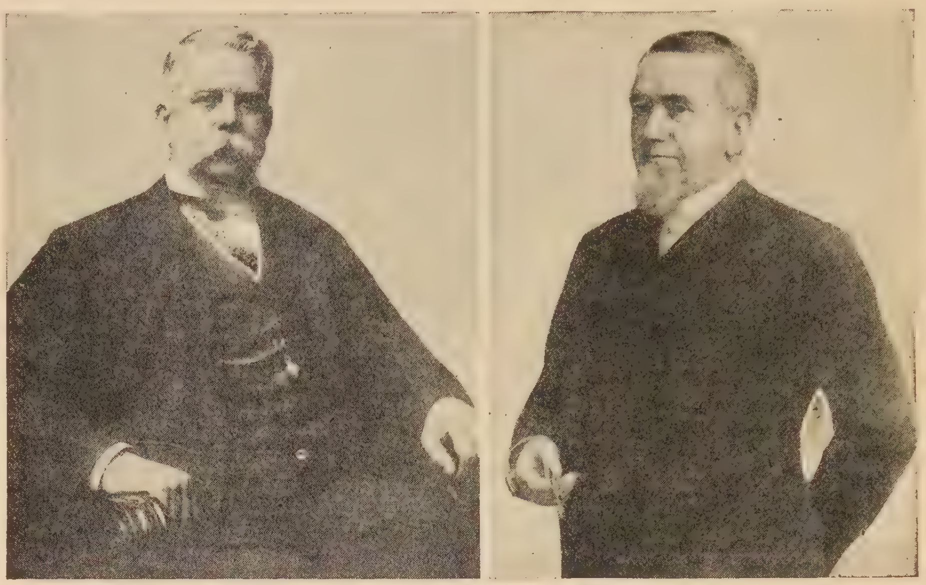
The Phonograph that Went to School



© *Underwood & Underwood*

This picture has frequently been published as the "first phonograph," but it is not. It is a model of the kind of phonograph that was first used in schools. It was made cheaply in order to illustrate to pupils, in a simple way, how the phonograph "hears" and "remembers" things. The words spoken into it were recorded on tin foil, instead of wax cylinders or discs as in the talking machines and musical phonographs of today. The heavy wheel at the left was to make it run smoothly, the wheel doing a work similar to that of the balance wheel on the steam engine. The screw and peg were for use in adjusting the recorder and reproducer.

Two Typical American Business Men



© *Gessford*

The wonderful development of America has been due not alone to the fact that we are a great nation of inventors, but that Americans are the best business men in the world. One of the most distinguished names identified with our industrial and commercial development is that of George Westinghouse (at the left) and here he is looking at you with the frank, fearless eyes and the genial expression which was one of his most attractive characteristics.

One of the stories his friends used to love to tell about him was that of his attempt to interest Commodore Vanderbilt in his air brake, when it was first put on the market. Then entirely unknown, he called at the office of the great railroad man, but when the office clerk learned his business and asked Mr. Vanderbilt if he would see him, he sent back word that he didn't have any time for cranks.

You see he was as slow about believing that you could stop a railroad train with air, as the farmers were in adopting the McCormick reaper. Some time afterward when the air brake had come into general use, it was Vanderbilt who called on Westinghouse. Extending his hand with a smile, Westinghouse said:

"I haven't got time for cranks, but I'll see you just the same." And they had a hearty laugh together before proceeding to business.

But now for the story of the invention of the sleeping car. This invention has done more perhaps than any other one thing to make travelling in comfort possible on the modern railroad, particularly in this country of "magnificent distances."

Sleeping on a train, in a narrow "Pullman" is quite different from sleeping in a big, broad bed that holds still, and some people have difficulty in doing it at first, but experienced travelers think no more of going to sleep in Chicago and waking up in Omaha, say, than you do of going to sleep in your own bed now and saying "Good morning, Merry Sunshine," the next day.

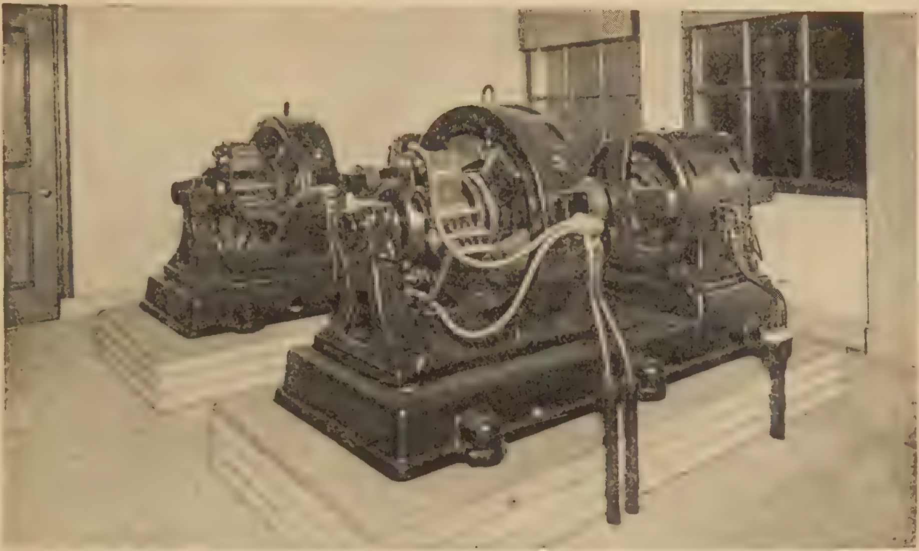
Before George M. Pullman perfected the sleeping car, there were coaches for night travelers in which you could lie down on a shelf and sleep—if you could. Usually you couldn't. These shelves had neither sheets nor pillows, and roads in those days were full of bumps.

Somebody described these sleeping cars as "nightmares on wheels." It was when going from his native state, New York, to Chicago, that Pullman put in a night in one of these cars, and it was this personal experience that led him to invent the sleeping car that is now used all over the world. Mr. Pullman's picture is shown on the right.

the moving picture by several decades, and the gas engine was long in use before anyone thought of the automobile. And, did you know that Fulton made a diving boat that would fire a torpedo under water, nearly a hundred years before the submarine was perfected for practical use in warfare?

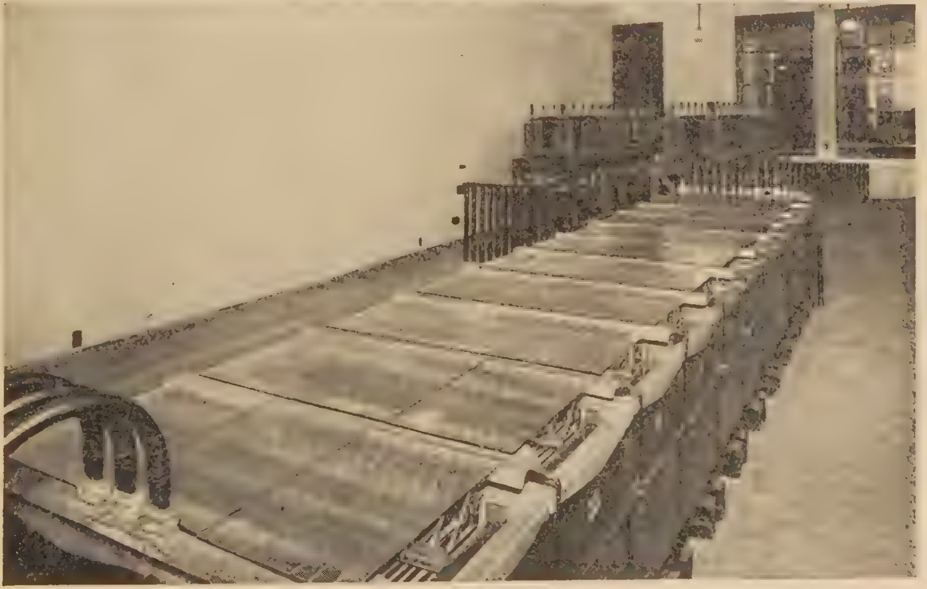
What next? No one knows. Amazing discoveries, creations and improvements are still being recorded every year. Scientific and practical men alike place no limits upon what may be done, since the seemingly impossible has been done so often. There are still unexplored fields, unsolved problems in mechan-

The Power Room



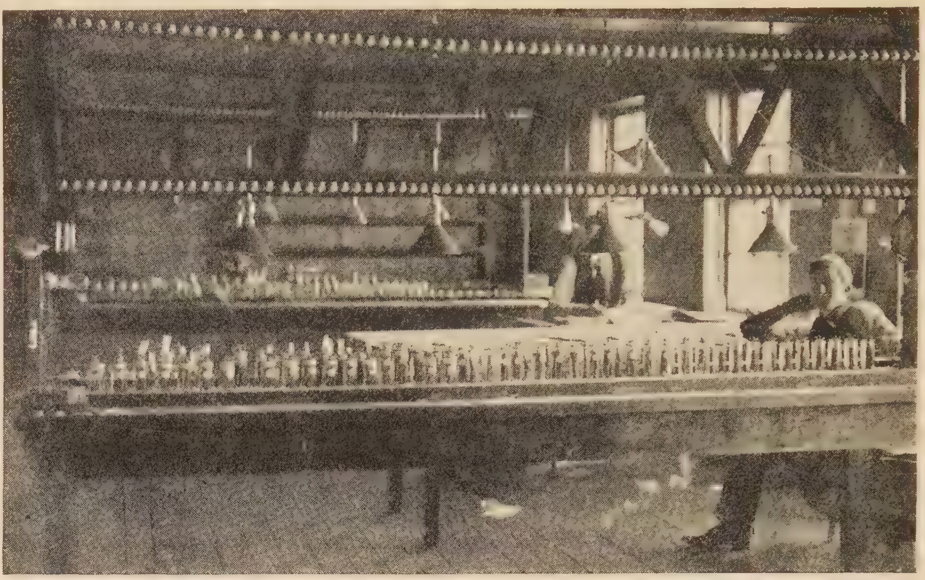
The smaller apparatus is an electric motor which turns the armature coils of the dynamo in the foreground. In revolving, these armatures (the round, cheese-shaped affairs) generate a powerful current in the coils of wires making up the core at the center of the dynamo. From this core the current passes out over the wires enclosed in the cable at the side.

Where the Dynamo Electricity is "Made Over"



The cables from the dynamo can be seen entering the battery in the foreground at the left. This battery is composed of eleven troughs called cells, and is large enough to supply current for a very large telephone system. Each cell contains a solution of sulphuric acid, in which lead plates are immersed. The current from the dynamo sets up a reaction between the lead and the acid, generating a different and more usable kind of current which passes out of the battery through the cables at the far end, going to all parts of the telephone system. Each lead plate in connected with the long lead bar between every two cells, and thus with the plates of the next cell. The connection is made by a strip of metal which runs from each plate and is welded into the bar of lead.

How Inventors Try and Try Again



Practical ideas don't come to inventors already finished; they have to be worked out. This picture will give you something of an idea of how Edison worked out one of his many inventions, the Edison storage battery. Each of the jars on the table in the foreground is one of these batteries, but each is a little different from the other. These young men take a look at the jars from time to time to see which one is making the best record, and all these experiments put together determine how the final battery is to be made.

ics, physics, chemistry and engineering where future inventors are free to win fame, fortune and the admiring gratitude of the world. But the conditions of success remain the same. Men will need to know all that has been done in any one line before, and to possess the same qualities of mind as those who have done the great deeds of the past.

Our Political History from the Revolution to the Civil War

IF you are an American you love your country, but you are apt to think foreign lands more interesting than your own. Perhaps you know and envy some lucky friend who has traveled or served abroad and seen palaces and castles, ancient temples and cathedrals, galleries of "Old Masters" of art, and the places of dead kings, romantic lovers, and battles long ago. Compared with the countries of the Old World we have few historic shrines. Here, except for the Indian mounds and cliff dwellings, the works of man are new. Our beautiful Capital is only little over a century old. Our history appears to be only the story of the conquest of a wild continent; and our heroes are bold explorers and hardy pioneers.

Greatest Chapters in the History of Liberty

But, did you ever think that for every American who took a pleasure trip to Europe, hundreds of eager immigrants came to the United States to live? They looked upon our country as the most fortunate on earth. They were inspired to the great effort and risk of leaving their native lands, to make new homes in America, by the promise of liberty, justice and equal opportunity that they find in the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution.

Have you read these documents? They are printed in the back of your school history. They look dry and uninteresting, but really they are the opening chapters of our dramatic, national story, and the beginning of a better day in the political history of the world. People all over the earth are freer and happier today, because these were written; because the liberty-loving leaders of our Revolution had a new conception of human rights, and a noble faith in the ability and the virtue of the common man.

The Study of Citizenship

Unless you read them you cannot understand the principles and basic laws on which our government was founded. Nor can you understand its subsequent history; the mistakes we have made and paid for in blood and tears, the dangers which may threaten us again, from within and without. Nor can you understand your own duties and privileges as a citizen. When you grow up, you know, you must help conduct public affairs and safeguard our free institutions.

Begin by reading the Declaration, and thinking what the world was like at the time it was signed. It enumerates a long list of grievances and injuries, which England thought it entirely within her rights to inflict upon loyal colonists. The services of foreign soldiers could then be bought. King George III hired 29,000 Hessian Germans of their Grand Duke, to fight his own subjects in America. The notion that "all men are created equal, with a right to life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness," was a bomb shell in the royal courts and camps of Europe.

France did help us with men, ships and money. But, while the French people sympathized with us, it must not be forgotten that the King of France had long been at war with England. Only a dozen years before, England had conquered all the French possessions in America, and France was glad to see her lose her rich colonies in return. King Louis soon had cause to regret his help, and to be alarmed at our success; for the French Revolution broke out in 1789, and a monarchy a thousand years old was overturned. The empires and kingdoms of Europe combined to punish France, to restore her royal family to the throne, and to beat back the rising tide of republicanism. If people could rebel and set up self-governing republics no monarchy would be secure.

Our Great Experiment in Government

This task of fighting the armies of France under Napoleon, kept England busy for twenty years. She had no thought of attempting to reconquer her lost colonies. Indeed, many of her liberal statesmen rejoiced that they were free. But with her powerful navy she continued to interfere with our sea-borne trade and there were long disputes over the surrender of the interior trading posts. So, "to provide for the common defense," as well as to secure public order and credit, national responsibility, and the prosperous development of the country, the thirteen states were obliged to form "a more perfect union." They framed a constitution, set up a federal government, and claimed a place in the family of nations.

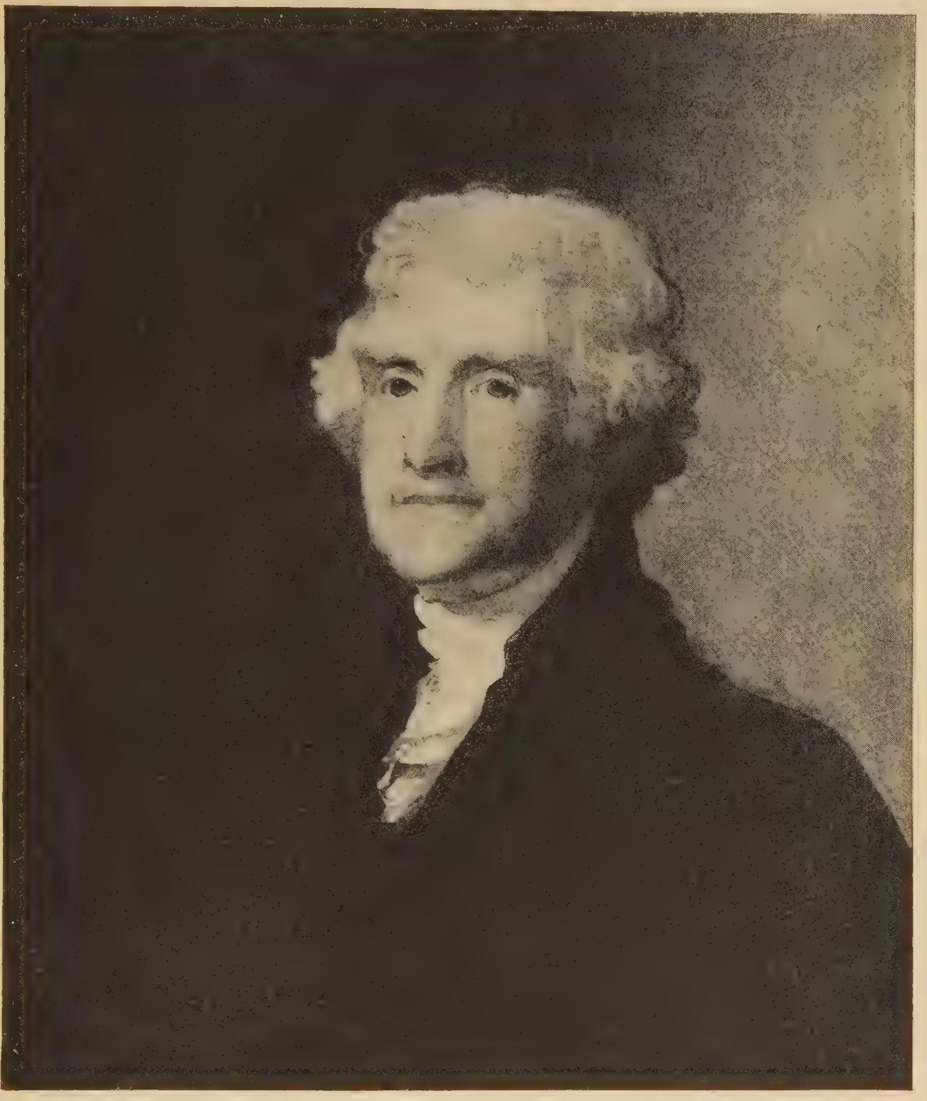
Perils of Our Ship of State

This was a doubtful experiment. Government by the governed had succeeded in The Netherlands, but that was a small, compact country, whose people were mostly Dutch and of similar habits, interests, and opinions. In America there were people of every nationality of western Europe, scattered from Maine to Georgia, and inland to Kentucky. Ninety-seven per cent of them were on farms. This population was sure to be increased by unknown elements, for we offered asylum and citizenship to the discontented of all lands. The country, too, had already begun to expand across a vast, unexplored wilderness, and pioneer life to develop a new type of self-reliant men remote from the seat of government. And one-tenth of our population of 3,000,000 people were Negroes, who were held in slavery. A few men like Benjamin Franklin and Patrick Henry, saw the inconsistency of slave-holding in a free country, and thought it so dangerous that it might yet disrupt the Union. You can see that the best, wisest, and most liberal statesmanship was needed to build, launch and pilot our new Ship of State.

Slow Growth of the National Spirit

We had a very solid foundation to build on, however. The people then in the country had brought with them a thorough knowledge of

Gilbert Stuart and His Jeffersons



Gilbert Stuart, one of the greatest of early American artists, painted several portraits of Jefferson. The original from which this one was copied was painted in Philadelphia, when Jefferson was fifty-seven years old and was serving as vice-president. His coat is a velvety, grayish black, the background is a dull, neutral olive tone, as in most of Stuart's paintings. Stuart was first of all a portrait painter. He cared little for the rest of the body or the surroundings of his figures, putting all his emphasis and good work on the head. He would tell clever anecdotes of his interesting life to his sitters, trying to kindle them to interest and thus bring out their most characteristic and natural expression. He was wonderfully successful in reading people's true characters, and in catching their most typical expressions on his canvases. It usually required only four or five sittings for him to complete a picture. The face in this portrait is that of a simple, kindly, intellectual gentleman, and that is what Thomas Jefferson was. We are told that he was "over six feet tall and very erect. His features were delicate, his eyes a bright hazel, his hair auburn, his complexion ruddy." He was one of the most scholarly men of his time, a good singer and violinist, a graceful dancer and an excellent horseman. He was a deep thinker and a brilliant and forceful writer, as he has proved for all time in his writing of the Declaration of Independence, but he was never a successful public speaker. He carried his democratic beliefs to the extent of being careless about his dress, sometimes going about in shabby clothes and down-at-the-heel shoes because he thought fine dress and display of all kinds to be wrong.

local self-government in England, and this had been used as the model for the self-governing colonies of America. And the English system of courts and common law, legislative bodies and administrative offices had been established everywhere. But the political experience of the people, in managing the affairs of the thirteen states that had risen from the old colonies, was both an advantage and a disadvantage. The states differed in size, population and climate, industries, wealth and social ideals. The little states feared the big ones, and the lower classes were jealous and suspicious of the upper. And except in the way of trade, much restricted by England, none of them had had any dealings with the outside world.

It is not surprising, therefore, that there was an exaggerated notion of the dignity and importance of the state, and a limited conception of the nation. The United States of America was looked upon as an artificial thing, created by the states for their convenience and safety. Until long after the Revolution there was intense local, and then sectional, patriotism. But love and loyalty to the country as a whole, was a plant of slow growth.

The Loose Confederation

Until four years after the Revolution the country was governed by the same loose confederation that had almost lost the war. We really had thirteen small, independent countries, which maintained little armies, and passed laws that created disputes and hampered trade. With no means of paying the public debt incurred in the common defense; no revenue for general expenses; no credit; no power to regulate domestic or foreign trade, or even authority to enforce peace between the states, the country drifted rapidly toward helplessness and ruin.

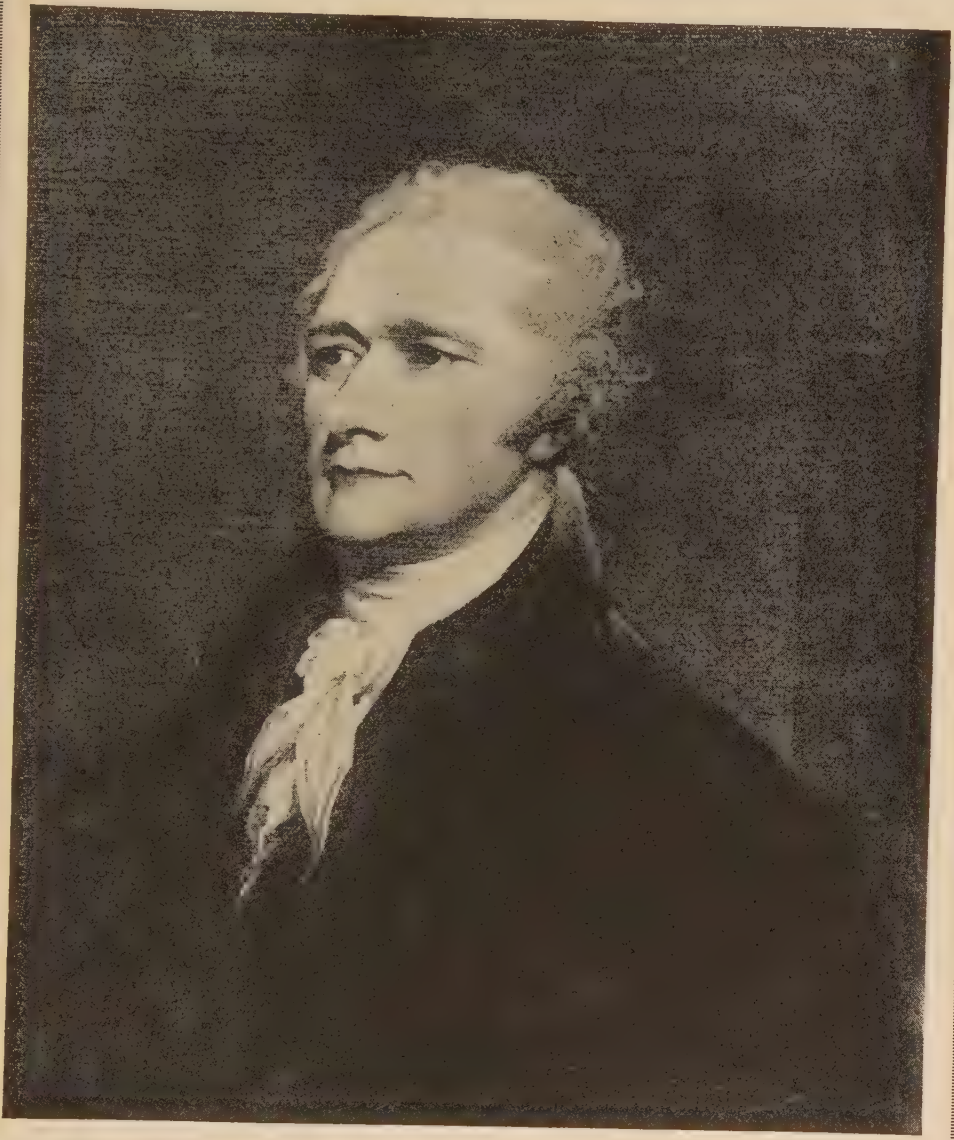
First Step Toward a Binding Union

In 1787 a Constitutional Convention was called, to devise some plan of closer union. Everyone was agreed in demanding a republican form of government. But the debates over the Constitution and afterwards developed two widely differing opinions as to the form of republic that would be acceptable to the people. As these two views have permeated, and must continue to permeate all our law-making and political practice, it is necessary for every citizen who expects to take an intelligent part in the government of the country, to have â clear understanding of them.

Jefferson's Idea of Union

One of these conceptions of government was held by Thomas Jefferson. You have had a sketch of the author of the Declaration, and his lofty political philosophy. The apostle of personal liberty, he had a sublime faith in the right and the ability of every man to govern himself. He wanted only enough government to secure public order and safety, and he firmly believed that, even in a republic, a strong central power, supported by an army and navy and with ample revenues, would lead to the same tyranny and corruption as in a monarchy. He insisted upon home rule for every state, city, county, township, and village in the country. He thought the defense of the nation should be left largely to the state militia, and was the champion of free trade. The followers of Jefferson called themselves Democratic Republicans.

Trumbull's Portrait of Hamilton



Alexander Hamilton was short and slender, erect and dignified. His eyes, as you see, were deep-set and dark, his hair light. This portrait of him is by John Trumbull, and is one of the finest that that great historical painter ever executed.

Hamilton's manners were charming and, for so great a man, his simplicity was marked. Today we still feel the influence of his clear thinking and sound judgment in our interpretation of the Constitution and the powers of the central government. The alert, bold poise of the head, the steady eyes and firm mouth of this portrait show that Trumbull has caught the spirit of the man—his intense feeling, aggressive mind, determined will, and high courage. The original painting is in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts, but it is so popular that we see copies of it everywhere.

Opposed to Jefferson was a party led by an equally ardent patriot, and one of the greatest political thinkers and writers of the day. It is difficult now to realize that we might so early have missed having the ideas and the services of this brilliant statesman, who shares with Jefferson the glory of having founded our republican institutions.

Alexander Hamilton was born, the son of a Scotch father and a French mother, on the little West Indian Island of Nevis, in 1757 His father failed in business, so the boy was obliged to take a clerkship in the office of a West Indian importing merchant. But at thirteen he showed such remarkable gifts of mind and strength of character, that friends of the family raised funds to send him to King's College, New York (now Columbia University). At seventeen he wrote letters to the press, in defense of the rights of the American Colonies, that were ascribed to the noted lawyer and diplomat, John Jay. He was in the army at nineteen, commanding a company of artillery, and was soon made an aide-de-camp on Washington's staff.

During the eight years of the war Hamilton studied for the New York bar, became such an authority on sound finance that he was often consulted by William Morris, that patriotic banker of Philadelphia, and formulated his theory of republican government. Washington was a quarter of a century older than Hamilton, but profited by his political views. So did John Adams, John Jay, William Morris and James Madison.

Hamilton had an imperial imagination. He foresaw the vast extent and high destinies of the United States of America, and insisted that, in a world ruled by kings, who were hostile to republican ideas, the country should guard itself against the dangers of internal weakness and division of authority. He thought that the federal government should be superior to the states in everything that affected the general welfare, and that the President and Congress should be supported by an adequate army and navy and ample revenues. He conceded the principle of home-rule in local affairs to the states, and thought that this, together with a wide suffrage, frequent elections and limited terms of office, should make the country secure against official tyranny and corruption. Men of Hamilton's opinion were known as Federalists.

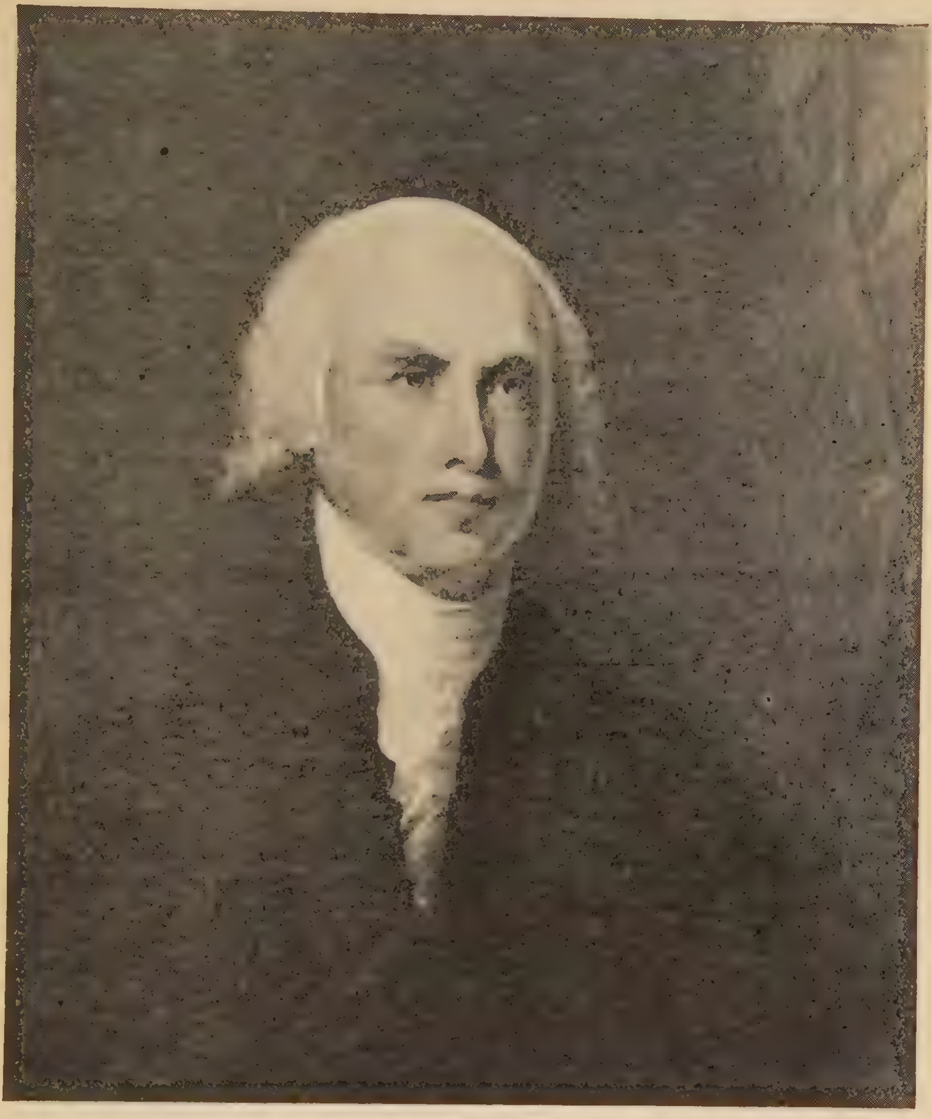
Hamilton's Idea of Central Control

The Great Compromise in the Constitution

The groups which favored and opposed a strong Federal government were so evenly matched in numbers and eminent leadership, both in the Convention and in the State Conventions that ratified the Constitution, that the only solution possible was a series of compromises. Consequently, each party has honestly found, in the fundamental law of our government, authority to put its principles into practice. Administrations have, at times, shaped laws and events toward Jefferson's view, and at times toward Hamilton's. Thoughtful historians are of the opinion that this elasticity is a source of strength. The country bends this way and that, in obedience to the popular will, but it has come through every crisis without breaking, and has even stood the strain of civil war.

Now, although the country was

Madison the Scholar President



Gilbert Stuart's portrait of Madison shows us a dignified little man with the pale face of the scholar who burns the midnight oil. His hair itself was light but, as you see, following the fashion of the time he wore a powdered wig. When Madison first appeared in the Virginia Legislature at the age of twenty-five, his clothing was so somber, so different from the gaily colored garments of the fine gentlemen about him, that people took him for a preacher.

People who knew him said that James Madison was an interesting talker, didn't lose his temper easily and was always ready to laugh at a good joke. He was considered the broadest and most accurate scholar among all the well-informed, keen-thinking men of that day. Henry Clay thus contrasted him with Jefferson, whose lifelong friend Madison was: "Jefferson had more genius, Madison more judgment and common sense. Jefferson was visionary, Madison cool and practical." As a young man he was the champion of religious freedom and absolute separation of church and state. As an old man, he watched the development of slavery with growing sorrow, and never failed to regret the presence of the institution in America.

For the story of how this learned, dignified gentleman fell in love with and married pretty, saucy Dolly Todd, the belle of Washington, read our story of Dolly Madison.

divided between the Federalists and the Anti-Federalists, in the first presidential election, there were no party organizations as we know them today. Regardless of his opinion, every man trusted and wanted Washington; and he, never a bitter partisan, persuaded both Jefferson and Hamilton to accept places in his cabinet. But two such strong men of opposite convictions could not work well together, and Washington's sympathies were with Hamilton.

No "Entangling Alliances"

In Washington's two terms there were serious disputes over the assumption of state debts, the tariff, and the establishment of a national bank. Jefferson advocated free trade and state banks. The cabinet was disrupted over the French Revolution. Since France had helped us, Jefferson insisted that we should go to the help of the French people in their struggle for liberty. It was a generous impulse, but European countries had been fighting each other for a thousand years, and Washington and Hamilton thought we should keep out of Old World quarrels—make no "entangling alliances."

Birth of the Monroe Doctrine

This was our first international policy, and it is one to which all parties later subscribed. Even the Democrats soon saw the wisdom of it. A Democratic president, James Monroe, twenty-five years later, announced that the United States would not permit European governments to interfere in the New World "for the purpose of oppressing or controlling" the free governments there. This is the famous "Monroe Doctrine," formulated to protect the republics of Mexico and Central and South America, which had rebelled and won their freedom from Spain. The "Monroe Doctrine," consistently followed for a century, has saved us endless trouble. European governments accepted it unwillingly, but only one serious attempt was ever made to dispute it. Taking advantage of our Civil War in the sixties, Emperor Napoleon III of France attempted to force an empire on Mexico. This ended in failure and tragedy to a foreign prince when, at the close of our war, the United States obliged the French troops to withdraw.

Beginning of Our Two Great Parties

Disagreements in Washington's cabinet were so serious that Jefferson resigned and organized the Democrats for active opposition to the administration. James Madison, then a senator from Virginia, deserted the Federalists and joined the forces of Jefferson. With James Monroe and Edmund Randolph, the Democrats had four able leaders, three of whom afterwards held the office of president for eight years each. The Federalists were left in control of the government, and elected John Adams for one term, but they also had to organize to fight a large and energetic minority.

Democrats and Republicans

Thus were born our two great political parties. The Democratic party, although it has often been divided into factions, and even split in two, has kept its name and identity down to the present day, and is still true to the principles of Jefferson. The Federalist party has had a different history. With the death of Washington in 1799, and of Hamilton in 1804, it was left without able leadership, and went into eclipse. With the War of 1812 it disappeared altogether. But Hamilton's principles lived, in an important faction of the Democrats, and events conspired to revive it about 1830, under the name of the Whig Party. The Whigs flourished for more than twenty years, under as brilliant political leadership as this country has ever seen, and elected two presidents. The northern Whigs joined with other Free-Soil parties in 1856 to form the Republican party of today. Republicans still form Hamilton and Lincoln Clubs, after their two greatest leaders; Democrats form Jefferson and Jackson Clubs.

Why Political Parties Are Necessary

Like a Football Game

Political parties are necessary in a self-governing country. Their function is to determine the few questions of greatest public importance which need attention at any one time, to state opposing views as to how those matters should be dealt with, and to line up the voters for team-work, as in a match game. The stronger team, that is the party with a majority of the votes in a majority of the states, wins the game, and is said to be "in power." While in, it runs our government as literally as steam runs a locomotive. If it abuses its power it is liable to be defeated at the next election.

The minority keeps its organization in training and on the watch for any weakness or foul play of the party in power. And smaller parties, working for some reform, have much influence by voting with the big party that will help them most. No important body of public opinion can be ignored, if it is organized. And every citizen who would take an intelligent and influential part in the government of his country, must belong to a party, and work with it for definite ends. If he changes his opinion he can, of course, change his party.

The history of a party is written in the biographies of its leaders The Federalist party died for lack of leadership. The early Democrats were more fortunate. Jefferson lived until 1826, and he was succeded by Andrew Jackson, who left his party so strong that it survived his death in 1845. So, with the inauguration of Jefferson in 1801, the Democrats came into a power that they held, with but two interruptions, until 1860 and the Civil War.

Washington, Jefferson and the Third Term Precedent

Jefferson served eight years. Following Washington's example, he refused a third term. Both thought it dangerous to our free institutions for one man to remain in office too long. Thus a Federalist and a Democrat established a patriotic precedent that has never been broken.

Value of Change in Office

Experience has shown, too, that it may be equally bad for one party to remain in power too long. Even if it does not become corrupt and tyrranical, it tends to perpetuate one viewpoint, and to stand in the way of progress. The people could not possibly trust the wisdom and patriotism of Jefferson more than they had trusted Washington; but many states had become alarmed by twelve years of Federalist rule, and the Hamiltonian policy of strengthening the power of the federal government. These were re-assured by the election of Jefferson, champion of states' rights. This was a good thing, for in these early days dissatisfied states looked upon secession from the Union as the proper remedy for any and all political ills. Virginia threatened to secede if her state sovereignty was encroached upon, and Kentucky and Tennessee for the opposite reason—if the government failed to come to their relief and compel France and Spain to open the Mississippi River to their commerce.

Jefferson and the Louisiana Purchase

Jefferson settled that matter by taking $15,000,000 from the United States treasury and buying Louisiana from France. He "stretched the Constitution" according to his own doctrine, in order to acquire a magnificent trade beyond the Mississippi, and benefit the three states west of the mountains. Washington or Adams would probably have done the same thing, very certain that they were acting within their constitutional power. Both parties had the same motive,—to benefit the entire country, and to add to the power and credit of the United States, by giving it an immense public domain. This is one of many striking incidents in our history which prove that, in an emergency, a patriotic president of any party can usually be trusted to do the right thing. The "Monroe Doctrine" is another instance, and the "Force Bill," by which President Jackson compelled South Carolina to obey the tariff law passed by Congress, is another.

Jefferson's long term in office was marked by a national vision that Federalists were surprised to find in him, but his foreign policy was attacked with bitter criticism. He satisfied his own party by cutting down the public debt, reducing the army and navy, and stripping his office of ceremony. "Jeffersonian simplicity" freed our White House of the elaborate etiquette of royal courts.

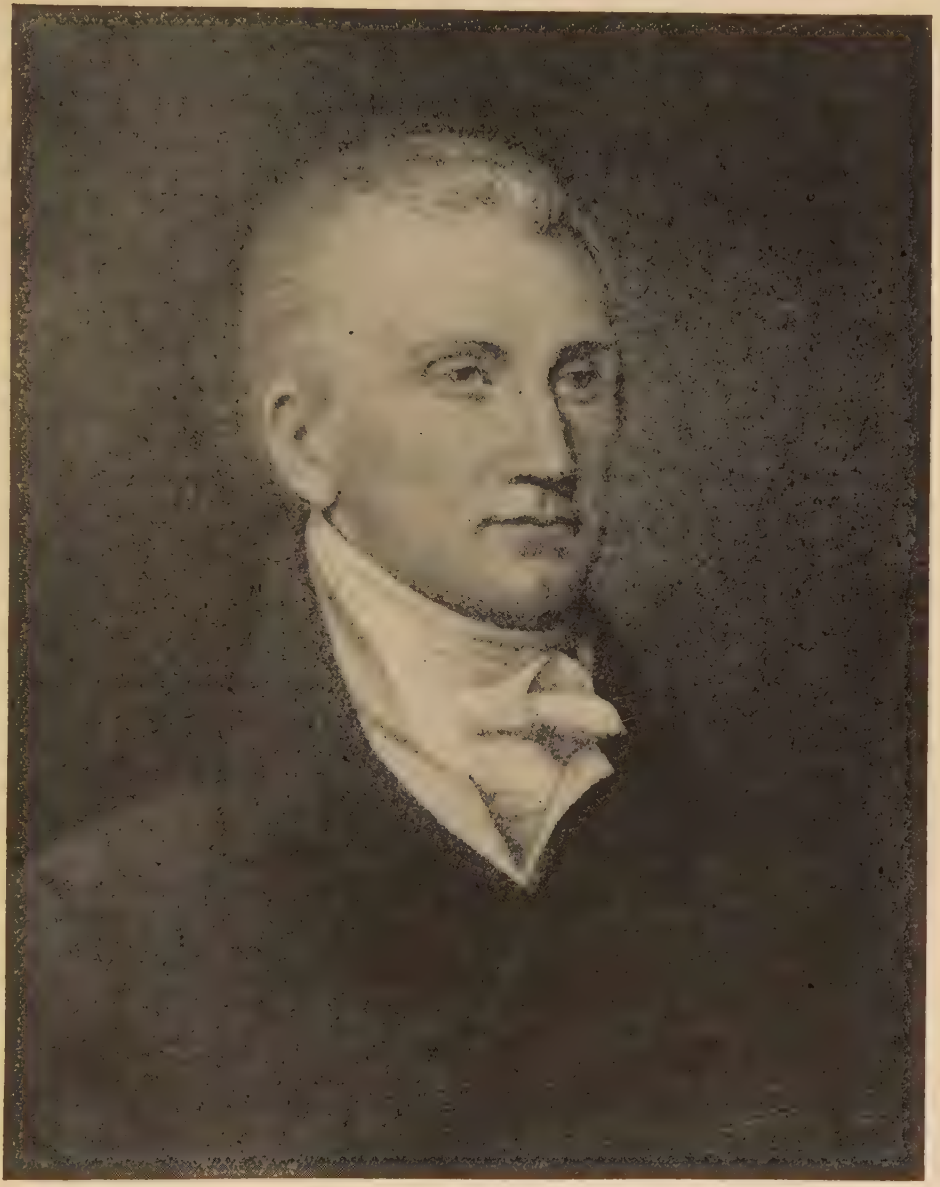
Meaning of "Jeffersonian Simplicity"

Why We Won the War of 1812

As you know, we had a second war with England in 1812. This had long been foreseen, but because of the Democratic policy of reducing the army and navy, the country was unprepared for it, and the militia of the states was unequal to the task. And it should be clearly understood that we won this war after unnecessary loss, and the bitter humiliation of having our capital burned. And we won it only because England could not give her entire attention to us, while engaged in the European coalition which overthrew Napoleon. She made peace with us in December, 1814, to leave herself free for the decisive battle with Napoleon at Waterloo in the following August.

The Napoleonic wars spread to America as early as 1810. When Spain was conquered by French armies, the Spanish colonies in Mexico, and Central and South America seized the opportunity to rise in rebellion. President Monroe promptly recognized the new Spanish-American republics, and courageously challenged the monarchies of Europe to interfere with them. In the days of wooden navies, driven by sails, it was indeed a serious undertaking for any foreign power to attack us. For quite a hundred years the Atlantic Ocean was a real protection to us, and we were left to work out our destiny in peace.

The Man Who Gave Us the Monroe Doctrine



James Monroe was six feet in height but so stoop-shouldered that he did not look that tall. He was a fine looking man, as you see. His deep-set eyes were mild and grayish-blue, and even as a young man he was deeply wrinkled. Monroe, like so many of the great statesmen of the Revolutionary Period, was born in Virginia. He came of mixed Scotch and Welsh parentage. He held various public offices under both the state and national governments, and was especially successful in foreign diplomacy. He is most famous for the Monroe Doctrine which did not originate with him, however. It was one of the many sound political principles which Washington recommended, but it was Monroe who crystallized it in its present form in a message to Congress, while he was president. Credit for some of its provisions must also be given to Monroe's able secretary of state, John Quincy Adams.

But this ocean was no barrier to the republican ideas that flowed from the New World to the Old. France was conquered in 1815, and her ancient royal family restored to the throne—for a time. It was, indeed, not until 1871 that the French Republic of today was finally established on the ruins of the second Napoleonic Empire. But in the meantime the power of the King of England was much limited, and that of her people enlarged, and home rule was given to the big British colonies. Italy fought for freedom, and united her petty kingdoms and principalities under a constitutional monarchy. The several hundred petty states of Germany were reduced to thirty-eight, which were later combined by Bismarck into the German Empire. Greece and the Balkan States slowly won their freedom from Turkey; Nihilism aroused Russia from sleep and freed the serfs; and Japan emerged from her age-old hermit despotism into an enlightened and progressive country under a constitutional emperor. The Revolution started a mighty wave of liberty that, in one century, rolled around the world.

A World-Wide Wave of Liberty

Origin of the Tariff Question

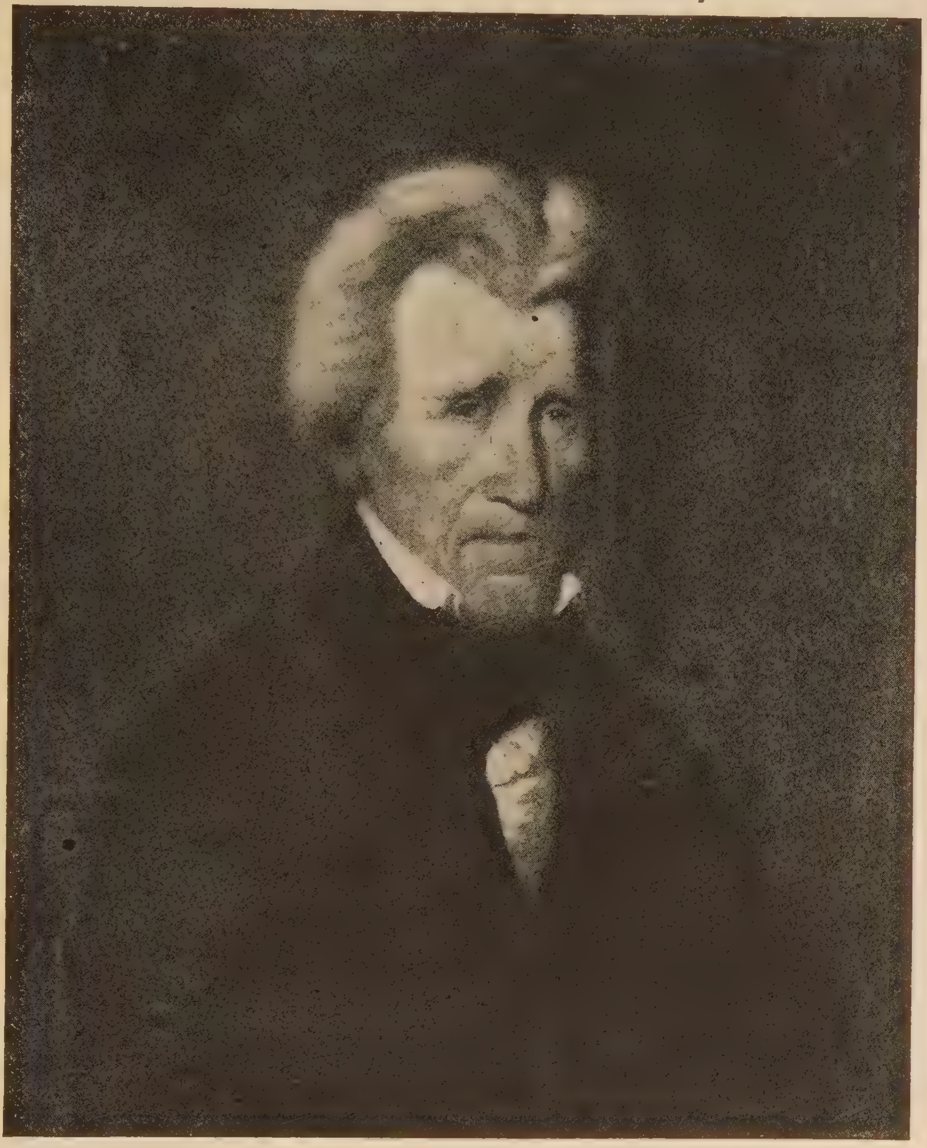
Our troubles were chiefly internal We had to learn how to govern ourselves. It had been foreseen that it would be difficult to mete out equal justice to every one, in such a big and varied country, where the needs of one section might be the opposite of the needs of another. But no one foresaw the animosities that were to grow out of the tariff, or duty on all foreign goods entering the country, which was Hamilton's device for providing a revenue for the federal government. The Democrats believed in free trade, but they could not suggest a better way to raise necessary revenues, and they finally accepted the principle of a tariff for "revenue only." This system of indirect tax was fair enough, bearing equally on all the states, in exact proportion to their use of foreign manufactures, as long as the entire country was largely agricultural.

The War of 1812, however, brought about an unexpected change. The embargo imposed by Jefferson, by cutting off trade, suddenly obliged us to go into every sort of manufacturing. But the factories were all built in the northern states by those "handy" Puritan Yankees, and by the Dutch, Quakers, Scotch-Irish and Germans, of New England, New York and Pennsylvania. The southern states, with their large plantations, numerous slaves and simple crops, remained agricultural. When peace was signed, English goods poured in, cutting prices. This delighted the people of the South, who, having to buy nearly everything they used, wanted things cheap. But the new factories of the North were threatened with ruin. When the tariff was raised in 1816, for the avowed purpose of protecting home manufactures, there were cries of distress from the South. No scheme could be devised by which the South could have free trade and the North protection. So a bitter struggle for the control of Congress, and of the tariff question, arose between the two sections.

The Tariff, Slavery and the Civil War

It seemed highly probable that the northern states would gain and keep the control, for they were increasing rapidly in population by foreign immigration to their indus-

The Character of "Old Hickory"

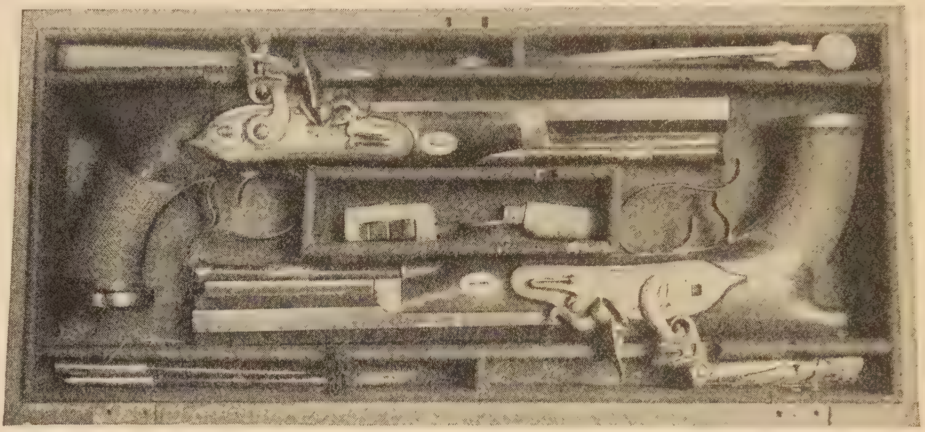


Painting by Earle, National Gallery of Art, Washington

Andrew Jackson's long, narrow face, deep-set eyes, tight-lipped mouth, and square chin tell a story of his character that cannot be mistaken. You know how his daring campaigns against the Indians in the South won him the nick-name "Old Hickory," and you know how he was twice wounded in duels which originated in bitter quarrels. He was a stubborn man, for once an idea or a prejudice took root in his mind it was hard to change it. And he was hot-tempered. As a soldier he was dashing, very popular and absolutely without fear. His personality was so strong and his popularity so great, that he was able to oppose one of the doctrines that was widely held in his party—that of states' rights—and at the same time become his party's most powerful leader. The election of Jackson marks the advent to power of the new turbulent "backwoods" democracies of the West. Compare his face with that of Madison, the scholar, and Washington, the dignified, thoughtful statesman, to see if you can find evidence of the difference in their personalities.

trial cities, and the pioneer movement to the region around the Ohio and the Great Lakes was adding to the number of states. Ohio, Indiana and Illinois were all admitted to the Union by 1818. Emigrants would not go into the southern states, where, with unpaid black labor, there was no employment for them. So the South saw the only chance of keeping its proportionate representation in Congress, in the extension of slavery into new agricultural states west of the Mississippi.

Jackson's Duelling Pistols



This is a picture of Jackson's duelling pistols in a portion of the box in which they were kept. The lid has disappeared with the barbarous custom of duelling itself. It is easy to see the wisdom of our laws which do not permit men to carry deadly weapons in times of peace. Duels were most common of all in the times when every man wore a sword.

The Famous Missouri Compromise

It was in this way, and not, at first, as a moral issue, that the institution of slavery entered national politics. The first battle in Congress was fought over the admission of Missouri in 1820. It came into the Union as a slave state, but under the famous "Missouri Compromise," by which it was agreed that, in all future states north of its southern boundary, slavery should be prohibited. But this very compromise served to make visible to the political thought of the day, the line of division between the free and the slave states. It was inevitable that there should soon be a sectional division of political parties

You must remember that, immediately following 1812, there was only one party in the country—the Democratic. But by 1820 the tariff, slavery and states' rights questions had split the Democrats into four factions, two in the North, two in the South. In 1824 there were four presidential candidates, each of whom claimed the name of Democrat. The protective tariff views of manufacturing New England and the West prevailed in the election of John Quincy Adams.

He called himself a *National* Democrat, a name very suggestive of the old Federalist party. And do you recognize the influence of his ancestry? His father, John Adams, the early president, was still living. His son held Democratic principles with Hamiltonian leanings. A few years later he was one of the organizers of the Whig party, which advocated Hamilton's political philosophy. Adams, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster were the leaders of the Whig party, which became identified with the interests and social ideals of the northern states. The Democrats, uniting under the leadership of Andrew Jackson, became the party of the South.

Democracy and the South

Had the two sections been solidly arrayed against each other, there would have been secession and civil war fully a generation before Lincoln's election. But there were some Whigs in the South and many Democrats in the North. Henry Clay, the leader of the Whigs in the House of Representatives, was from Kentucky; and up to the war Illinois was represented by Democratic senators. And there was division in both parties. Clay, of Kentucky, for instance, differed on many points with Adams and Webster, of New England; and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was a more uncompromising states' rights man than Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. In both parties the more moderate view was held in the states west of the mountains. This accounts for Lincoln's understanding and sympathy for both sections. Born in Kentucky, in 1809, he grew to manhood near the Ohio River in Indiana, in a region of the country where Jackson and Clay had nearly equal following.

The tariff was finally hammered down to the old "revenue only" basis in 1842. But long before this question was settled satisfactorily for the South, slavery had become a menacing issue.

At some time slaves were held in all the colonies. But Negroes did not thrive in a cold climate, nor could they be used profitably in the many complicated tasks of the small farms and workshops of the North. There slave-holding was gradually abandoned, and it was on the decline in the South when a fresh impetus was given to it by the invention of the cotton gin. Millions of acres of wild land were cleared and planted to this simple crop, that could be grown with slave labor, from the Gulf to the Ohio and Missouri Rivers.

At that time the extension of slavery into the territories and new states was opposed in the North chiefly because it would restrict the field of free white labor. Benjamin Franklin had helped form the first Abolition Society before 1800, but it was not until 1831 that abolition sentiment had grown to the point to justify William Lloyd Garrison in beginning the publication of *The Liberator* in Boston. Soon thereafter John Quincy Adams represented an anti-slavery wing of the Whigs in Congress. After 1833, when England abolished slavery throughout the British Empire, a strong moral feeling against the institution developed throughout the civilized world. In some of our border states the gradual emancipation of the slaves was seriously considered.

Growth of Abolition Sentiment

But the organization of strong abolition and free-soil parties in the North, and the establishment of "under-ground railway systems" by which runaway slaves were helped to escape to Canada, aroused alarm and resentment in the South. The industrial system of the South was based on slave labor, and sudden emancipation without compensation to the owners of slaves, or

The "Underground Railway"

provision for the freed Negro, would have brought ruin and anarchy to half the country. The Constitution had sanctioned the existence of slavery, a thing that Northerners were prone to forget or to ignore. Many plans were proposed for the gradual emancipation of the slaves, together with their removal to a separate Negro state or colonization in Africa; but none of these met with much success.

William Lloyd Garrison and the Liberator

Wm. Lloyd Garrison.

William Lloyd Garrison looks more like a mild school-teacher or preacher than the man of fiery eloquence and grim determination that he was. He got his education in the type-setting room of a printing office, and even when he was very young he advocated reforms that were many years ahead of his time. He was hunted out and dragged through the streets by a howling mob more than once, and put in jail for libel when he denounced the men who transported slaves from one place to another. But through it all he managed to print his paper, The Liberator, and to remain firm in his doctrine of immediate and absolute liberation for all the slaves. It was his tireless energy and clear, forceful way of presenting his arguments which helped the abolition sentiment to grow, until it pervaded the whole North. Unlike many radical reformers, Garrison lived to see this reform accomplished. After the Civil War was over and the Thirteenth Amendment abolishing slavery forever was passed, William Lloyd Garrison closed The Liberator office, because its work was done. Its motto showed the breadth of Garrison's views, which are more and more being realized among civilized nations: "Our country is the world—our countrymen are mankind." And these words, uttered in the course of one of his abolition speeches, show the character of the man: "I am in earnest—I will not retreat a single inch—and I will be heard."

Webster's Plea for Union

Instead of healing, the breach widened. Talk of secession was heard in both sections of the country. A free republic for the North and a slave republic for the South was thought, by many, to be the best solution. But as early as 1830 the most eloquent voice in the country, that of Daniel Webster, was heard pleading for the Union, and for a national patriotism that would settle all differences justly and peaceably.

For quite twenty years the two sections were very nearly evenly matched in Congress. Arkansas and Florida, and Texas by annexation and war with Mexico, were admitted as slave states. The free states added Michigan, Wisconsin and Iowa. There were long and bitter fights over Kansas, Nebraska and California,—in Kansas taking the form of pro-slavery and free-soil colonization, and civil war—but all came in free.

The Dred Scott Decision

Between 1845 and 1852 the Democrats and the Whigs lost five great leaders by death, and both parties began to break up. The northern Whigs, uniting with the Abolitionists, Free-Soilers, and Know Nothings (an anti-foreign party) formed the Republican party in 1856, and began to develop a number of young and vigorous leaders. Abraham Lincoln who, as a Whig, had served a term in Congress ten years before, was one of the founders of the new party in Illinois. Then the Democrats were divided into Northern and Southern factions by the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and by the famous Dred Scott Decision of the United States Supreme Court By this decision slaves were declared to be property—not persons—and that they could be taken into any state or territory without loss of ownership by the master. Thus slave-holding could not be prohibited in the territories and all attempts to prevent its further spread were against the Constitution.

The North, this time, was alarmed. Many northern Democrats went over to the Republicans; and the Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1858, and John Brown's raid on Harper's Ferry, in 1859, a heroic but ill-advised attempt to incite the slaves to rebellion, divided the Democrats hopelessly, crystallized anti-slavery sentiment in the North, and resulted in Lincoln's election to the presidency. Before his inauguration in March, 1861, several southern states had seceded, and the war was begun by the firing on Sumter.

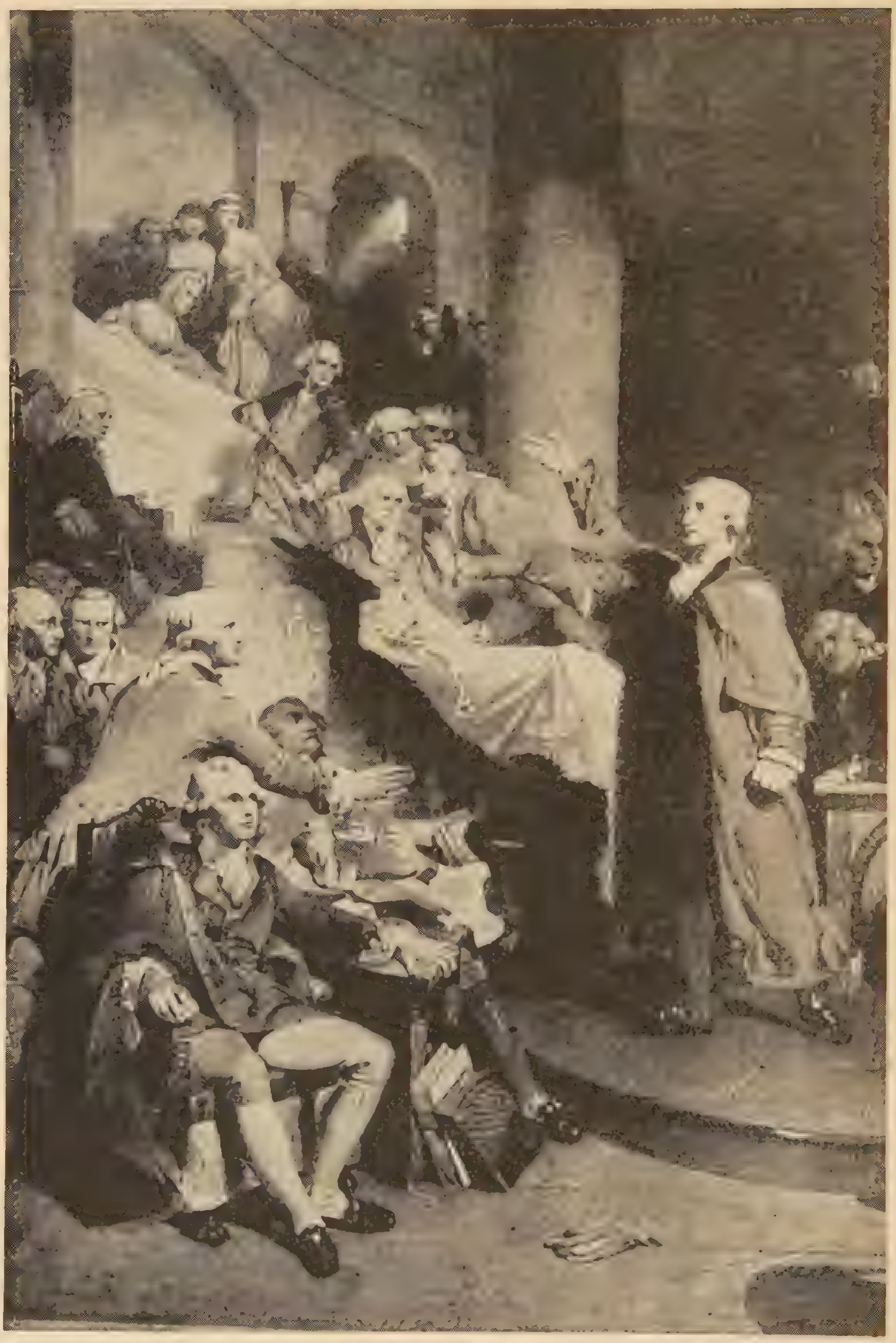
You can, perhaps, best understand Lincoln and other leaders of the Civil War period, both northern and southern, by knowing more of the troubled times in which they grew up, and of the great Democratic and Whig leaders who, for a generation, prevented the disruption of the Union. Two of them served as President; three were in Congress, orators who ranked with Patrick Henry and Lincoln, in what has been called the Golden Age of American Oratory.

The Tide River

Clear and cool, clear and cool,
By laughing shallow and dreaming pool;
Cool and clear, cool and clear,
By shining shingle and foaming wear.
Under the crag where the ouzel sings,
And the ivied wall where the church-bell rings,
Undefiled, for the undefiled.
Play by me, bathe in me, mother and child.
Dank and foul, dank and foul,
By the smoky town in its murky cowl.
Foul and dank, foul and dank,
By wharf, and sewer, and slimy bank.
Darker and darker the farther I go,
Who dare sport with the sin-defiled?
Shrink from me, turn from me, mother and child.
Strong and free, strong and free,
The floodgates are open, away to the sea.
Free and strong, free and strong,
Cleansing my streams as I hurry along
To the golden sands and the leaping bar,
And the taintless tide that awaits me afar,
As I lose myself in the infinite main,
Like a soul that has sinned and is pardoned again.
Undefiled for the undefiled.
Play by me, bathe in me, mother and child.

CHARLES KINGSLEY

The Climax of Henry's Speech



The Golden Age of American Oratory

THE period which immediately followed the disappearance of the last of the Revolutionary heroes was the one, in American history, which produced the greatest number of political leaders. The date is easily fixed, for Thomas Jefferson and John Adams died on the Fourth of July, 1826, while the country was noisily celebrating the fiftieth anniversary of its independence. Both had reached an advanced age and had, in truth, outlived their time.

Patrick Henry on Fire

This is a painter's conception of the scene in the Virginia House of Burgesses when Patrick Henry made the historic speech in which he referred to the fate of Charles I as a warning to George III. "Caesar had his Brutus," he cries with that gesture of his right hand as if pointing to the past, "Charles I had his Cromwell, and George III—" "Treason! Treason!" shouts the speaker. "Treason! treason!" echo the royalist members. Then the orator adds "and George III may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." While this picture is widely known and identified with the great event which it represents, and expresses well the spirit of the occasion, we must remember that it belongs to the old school of art which dealt more in symbols than in the details of historic events. The House of Burgesses had no classic pillars as here represented, nobody started to draw his sword as the British officer in the background is represented as doing, and there was no glove on the floor. The one shown in the picture is to express, after the classic manner, that Henry is throwing down the gauntlet to the king and to his royalist supporters in the colonies.

An Era of Political Strife

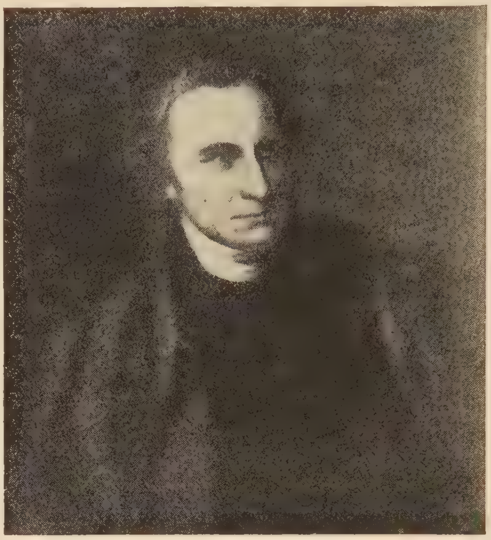
Party politics had become a dramatic feature of a more varied American life. North and South had begun to find in themselves irreconcilable differences; and pioneers, on the westward march, were discovering new needs and problems. Politically, the country was divided into warring factions, with every election a conflict of sectional interests.

Let us review a little, to avoid confusion. The two big parties, you remember—the Democratic and Federalist—were organized by Jefferson and Hamilton. Because of the folly of its later leaders, the Federalist Party soon disappeared. John Adams had the ability and the experience to lead it, but failed to win popularity. But he and his son kept some of Hamilton's principles alive in a New England wing of the Democracy. This, together with opposing views in the South and West, split the Democratic Party into four factions. About 1830, however, two of these factions united to form the Whig Party, which revived much of Hamilton's teachings. There were, again, two clearly defined parties in the country.

Radical Differences Within the Parties

But within party lines the Whigs were divided into three factions, each with its leader, and the Democrats into two. So, for the next twenty years, there were five political leaders in public life. All of them were aware that the country was drifting steadily toward civil strife, but, because of honest differences of opinion, were unable to agree upon what should be done about it. These men were John Quincy Adams, Daniel Webster, and Henry Clay, who led the Whig Party, but who differed radically on vital questions; and Andrew Jackson and John C. Calhoun, both Jeffersonian Democrats, but who interpreted Jefferson's teachings differently and quarreled bitterly.

How Patrick Henry Took Fire



Patrick Henry was not really Patrick Henry until he warmed to his work. When he made a speech he rose very awkwardly, and faltered and almost stumbled along at the beginning as if feeling about in his mind for the right word. In a few minutes, however, excited by the occasion, he seemed absolutely transformed. His action became graceful, bold, and commanding, and the tones of his voice like music. A man who heard him make the great "treason" speech said that his eyes seemed actually to flash lightning. "In less than twenty minutes," he says, "the audience in every part of the house, on every bench, and in every window, were leaning forward in death-like silence, their features fixed in amazement and awe."

All of these men were born in the Revolutionary period, between 1767 and 1782, when the nation was not in existence, and patriotism was for the state; and they all entered public life in the formative years of the young Republic: Adams in 1794, Clay and Jackson by 1800, Webster and Calhoun before the War of 1812. Clay, Webster and Calhoun were orators of the first rank.

One of the Revolutionary traditions that is usually overlooked, as having a profound influence on the next two generations of Americans, was the pride of the country in the fiery oratory of Patrick Henry. The people were stirred by eloquence in the pulpit, at the bar, and on the stump, as by nothing else. Every boy burned to be an orator, and an astonishing number of gifted public speakers were developed in the first half of the nineteenth century. There was an unbroken line of them from Patrick Henry to Lincoln. Lincoln was able "to think on his feet," and to move audiences to tears or laughter, at the age of twenty-two.

This was in 1831, when Webster, Clay and Calhoun were at the zenith of their powers and fame. For fully a quarter of a century every important speech which they delivered in the National Capital was printed in the smallest newspaper, to the exclusion of every other sort of news. And scarcely second in importance were the public activities of Andrew Jackson and John Quincy Adams. All this furnished a liberal education in public affairs to young men who, seriously concerned about these troubled times, were unconsciously preparing themselves to take charge of the country during the perilous years of the Civil War. From biographical sketches of these leaders, see if you can figure out for yourself the influence of each on Lincoln's character and political convictions.

The Democratic Leaders

During the first forty years of its history, the United States found its presidents in Massachusetts and Virginia, and from the class of scholarly gentlemen who had led the Revolution. Andrew Jackson, who served from 1829 to 1837, was the first chief executive to appear from the region west of the mountains. Originally poor, and self-educated, he was a typical product of the rough, pioneer period which followed the frontier era of Daniel Boone. A man of arrogant temper, independent opinions, blunt honesty, indomitable courage, and broad patriotism, he was one of the most original and forceful characters who ever appeared in the arena of American public life.

Character of Andrew Jackson

Born of Scotch parents, in a new and poor settlement in South Carolina in 1767, Jackson was to have been educated for the ministry; but the early death of his father left the family in poverty. As a boy of thirteen he saw service in the last years of the Revolution. After the war, his adventurous spirit and impatience of restraint, led him to seek the lawless wilds of Tennessee. There, before Washington's inauguration, he educated himself for the bar. A man of iron strength and tireless energy, he was soon busy prosecuting law-breakers, fighting Indians, and directing the labor of slaves in clearing a cotton plantation out of the wilderness near Nashville.

On the outbreak of the War of 1812, he organized forces of volunteers to conquer the red tribes of the South, which, armed from British forts in Canada, harried the frontier all the way to the Gulf. This task required two years, won him the nickname of "Old Hickory" for his extraordinary endurance of hardships, and also won for him national fame and a major-generalship in the regular army. Taking four thousand troops, he defended New Orleans against twelve thousand British regulars. This brilliant victory of January 8, 1815, is still celebrated by the Democrats as Jackson Day.

Jackson's Military Exploits

A hero on horseback, General Jackson rode into national politics, appearing in Washington as United States senator from Tennessee, just at the time when the Jeffersonian Democrats were looking around for new leaders. The country had never seen such a paradox as this gentle but fiery, forceful, tender and brave, crude but efficient frontier lawyer, Indian fighter and shrewd politician. He soon captured the popular imagination, and it presently began to appear that the leadership of the party would be safer in his hands than in those of the intellectual statesman and gifted orator, John C. Calhoun. He represented the more conservative views of the West on the tariff and slavery questions; and was one of the first public men in the country to insist that the federal union was superior to the states.

Although true to Jefferson's principles of free trade and state sovereignty, destroying the United States bank in the interest of the state banks, yet Jackson rebuked the extreme states' rights view of Calhoun, his own vice-president, that a state could refuse to submit to an act of Congress. When South Carolina, Calhoun's state, repudiated an unpopular tariff law, President Jackson joined with the Whigs to put through the Force Bill, which gave to the president the power to use the army and navy to compel rebellious states to obey federal laws. He intended, as he said, "to stamp this treasonable nullification doctrine" out of his own party. At a banquet he proposed a toast which Lincoln might have proposed thirty years later: "The Union—it must be preserved!" Calhoun followed with the defiance: "Liberty, dearer than Union!"

Jackson and the Nullifiers

In the face of such division, in the hard times which followed his destruction of the United States bank in 1837, and of the loss of the election of 1840 to the Whigs, Jackson held his party together and ruled it like an autocrat until his death in 1845. He left his party in power, and so well organized that it presented an unbroken front until split in two by the Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1858.

Secret of Jackson's Power

The immense political power that Jackson gained and held for twenty years, in the most turbulent times, was due in part to his personal popularity. Without that, leaders of the greatest ability and experience, like John Adams, have failed. But Jackson also had the qualities that win enduring fame. His sincerity, honesty, and patriotism have never been questioned. And his services were important. He played a large part in preventing the disruption of the Union, and in delaying the Civil War. And he gave to a divided people a dramatic lesson in national patriotism. In Democratic annals he takes his place beside Jefferson, and later leaders of the party have been rated as they approached the measure of these two.

Character and Abilities of Calhoun

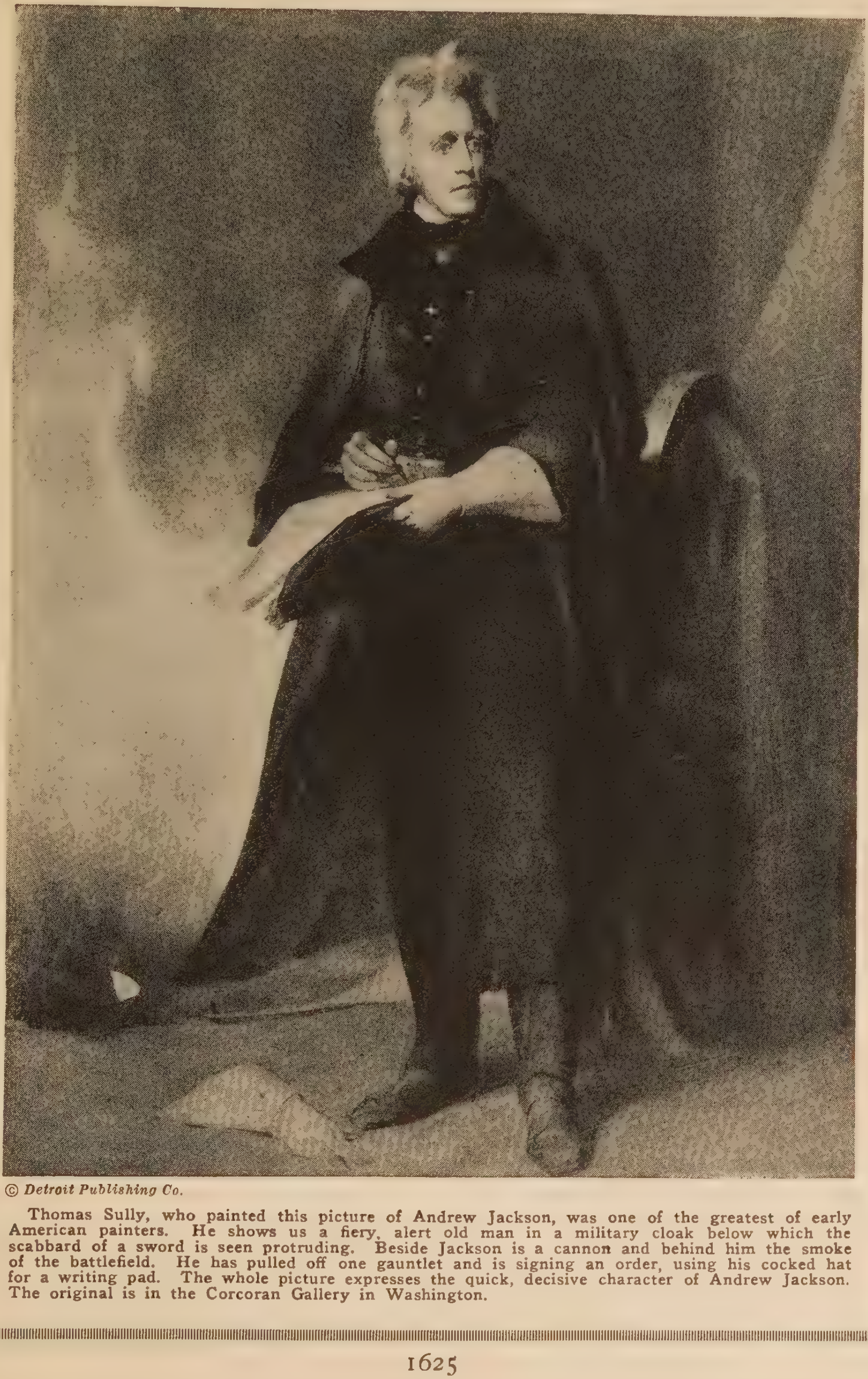
Jackson was not quite just to Calhoun, the very able Democratic statesman and brilliant orator who, in trained intellect and manners, was his superior. Calhoun was, indeed, a belated Revolutionary, who would have felt more at home among the philosophical gentlemen in Independence Hall, than in the boisterous, rancorous days in which he found himself.

His father had been a friend and disciple of Jefferson, and the son had often heard him quote from the Sage of Monticello: "That government is best which secures to the individual the largest amount of personal liberty that is compatible with public order."

Born in 1782, Calhoun was graduated from Yale College in 1801, with the reputation of a hard student and fine debater. Equally marked for his integrity of character and for his capacity for clear thinking, a brilliant career was predicted for him. Jefferson's inauguration, and the beginning of a long period in power for the Democratic Party, opened the way for Calhoun's early entry into public life. An influential member of Congress, and an orator of proved powers before 1810, he was conspicuous in opposing the protective tariff legislation which was the most serious domestic consequence of the War of 1812. To an ardent Southerner of his convictions, the imposition of a tax which burdened the South, for the benefit of manufacturing states of the North, partook of the nature of that centralized tyranny which Jefferson had feared.

Leading the revolt of the south-

Jackson, the Man of War



© *Detroit Publishing Co.*

Thomas Sully, who painted this picture of Andrew Jackson, was one of the greatest of early American painters. He shows us a fiery, alert old man in a military cloak below which the scabbard of a sword is seen protruding. Beside Jackson is a cannon and behind him the smoke of the battlefield. He has pulled off one gauntlet and is signing an order, using his cocked hat for a writing pad. The whole picture expresses the quick, decisive character of Andrew Jackson. The original is in the Corcoran Gallery in Washington.

ern seaboard states, Calhoun defended the right of South Carolina to refuse to obey the federal tariff law, and even to secede from the Union. He held his own in a debate with Webster, on the nature and the rights of the federal and the states' governments, that was one of the most eloquent and instructive in the history of the nation. He was defeated by the passage of Jackson's Force Bill; but he had made so strong a plea for justice to the South, that Henry Clay persuaded the Whigs to consent to a gradual lowering of the tariff.

His Debate With Webster

Of all the defenders of the institution of slavery, Calhoun was the most brilliant and convincing. From the time of the Missouri Compromise in 1820, until his death in 1850, he fought for the extension of slave-holding into the territories and new states. He brought about the annexation of Texas, and his policies were responsible for the bitter fights over Kansas, Nebraska and California.

That Calhoun was sincere and personally disinterested, no one doubts today. To his own disadvantage he led a violent faction within his own party. His defiance of Jackson cost him the presidency. Twice he rose to the vice-presidency, only to see men of lesser ability and distinction preferred for the higher office. He denied that he had any desire to disrupt the Union and head a southern republic. If he had had any such ambition, he could, at least, have split his party and brought Jackson to defeat. Remaining loyal, under severe provocation and bitter disappointment, it seems much more probable, today, that he kept his own followers from going to extremes. He had been dead ten years, and less able and more unscrupulous men were in control in his section of the country, when South Carolina seceded in 1860 and thus precipitated the great Civil War.

The Leaders Among the Whigs

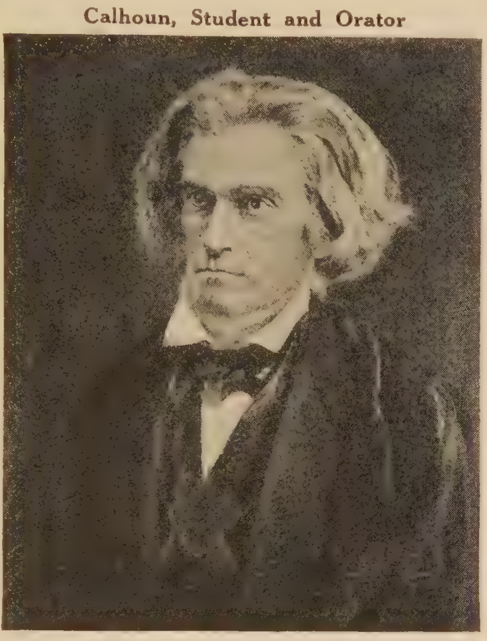
Of all the political leaders of his period, the seventh president of the United States, who was the son of the second, was the most fortunate in his birth and education. He had a remarkable father and mother, who founded one of the most distinguished and patriotic families in America. John Adams gave thirty-five years to the service of the struggling colonies and to the establishment of the republic. And his wife, as you know, was "the Portia of the Revolution." The son devoted sixty years to his country. And every generation of Adamses since, has furnished its able and learned men, brought up in the tradition of service and sacrifice owed to the United States.

The Adamses and the Nation

Lacking the qualities that win popularity, they have not always been rewarded as they deserved; but no Adams has ever surrendered his principles to secure his personal advantage. In this New England family, Puritanism, with its submission to discipline and its strong sense of duty, has made us its best contribution.

It was at the knees of his mother—Abigail Adams—that the nine-year-old boy heard of the signing of the Declaration of Independence. Jefferson wrote the document, but it was John Adams who, by three days of argument, whipped the courage of the faint-hearted up to the point of adopting resolutions that made every signer a traitor to King George. Men said that John Adams had "the clearest head and stoutest heart of any man in the Continental Congress." In constant correspondence with his brave, wise and devoted wife, he often said that he took "two clear heads and stout hearts" to the doing of every patriotic duty.

Calhoun, Student and Orator



Although Calhoun was by disposition and training a student, and "would have felt more at home among the philosophical gentlemen in Independence Hall than in the boisterous and rancorous days in which he found himself," he was, "of all the defenders of slavery, the most brilliant and convincing."

John Quincy Adams

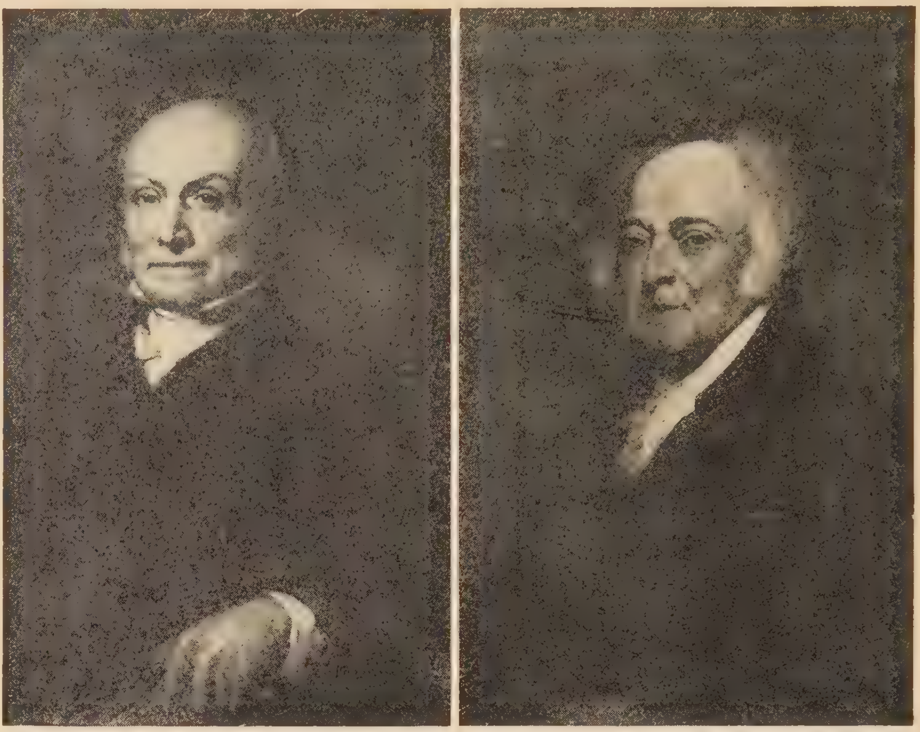
The son, John Quincy, was graduated from Harvard in the same year that Washington was elected president. Three years before his father had been appointed the first United States Minister to Great Britain. Learning under him the complicated business of diplomacy, the son soon became "the ablest diplomat in the American service," and was appointed successively to Holland, Portugal and Germany.

John Adams had been a moderate Federalist and so belonged to the party of Hamilton. The son was at first of the same political faith. With Jefferson's election he was recalled. He came home to fill the chair of rhetoric in Harvard, and to watch the Federalist Party die. For a time (1803-1808) he was United States Senator from Massachusetts, and strongly supported Jefferson's measures against the views of his own state. He became leader of an energetic New England wing of the Democracy that could not be ignored. President Madison sent him to the Court of St. Petersburg, and then to London. When next he came home it was to fill the office of Secretary of State under President Monroe. There was no other man in the country of Adams' ability, and he had had twenty years' experience in the foreign service.

While he was Secretary of State the "Monroe Doctrine" was declared. You remember that the policy of making "no entangling alliance" originated with Washington and Hamilton. It is Federalist in principle; but the Democrats saw the wisdom of it, and Monroe and John Quincy Adams enlarged it to the point of refusing to tolerate foreign interference in America.

Many early Federalist principles began, about that time, to find new and vigorous support. The War of 1812 had imperiled the country and developed a sentiment of national patriotism. The people responded

The Two Presidents the Adams Family Gave Us



The Adams family is the most famous in the political history of our country. These portraits of the two who served in the presidency, are by G. P. A. Healy. That of John Adams, at the right, is a copy of a portrait painted by Stuart. Both belong to the Ladies' Mt. Vernon Association, but are in the Corcoran Art Gallery in Washington. Of John Adams it was said that he had "the clearest head and firmest heart of any man in congress." You can see in their faces firmness, mental balance, and fearlessness. The portrait on the left is that of John Quincy Adams.

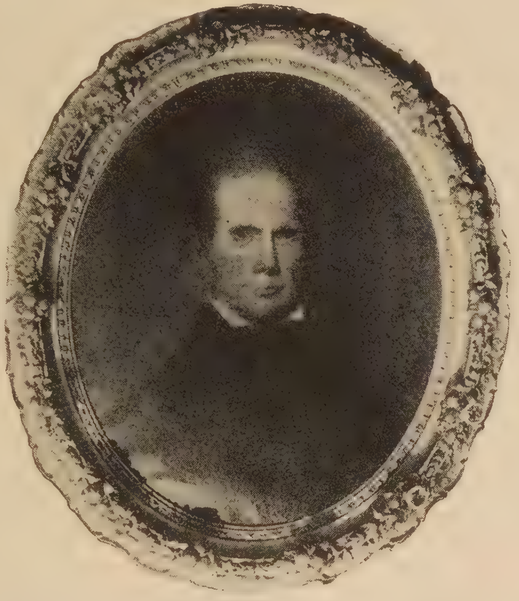
to the appeal to use goods "made in America," even if they cost more, and the first protective tariff law was passed in 1816. It was as a high-tariff, *National* Democrat that Adams was elected to the presidency in 1824. By 1830 the time was ripe for the formation of the Whig Party, and the revival of Hamilton's principles. During the last eighteen years of his life Adams was one of the leaders in Congress, with Whig leanings.

His Denunciation of Slavery

In 1833 Great Britain abolished slavery throughout the Empire, and a moral wave against the institution swept over western Europe and America. Abolitionism, in this country, spread from Puritan New England. Talk of secession, in that early day, was not all on one side. It was the ideal of many abolitionists to let the southern states depart in peace, and to form a free northern republic. The violent opinions and uncompromising attitudes of some abolitionists and Calhoun were equally disruptive.

Adams, while not an abolitionist, upheld the right to petition Congress against slavery, and fought a long and successful fight against Southern attempts to enforce "gag" measures. Without close party connections, this "old man eloquent" thus rounded out his long life of patriotic usefulness, dying in 1848 of a stroke of apoplexy received on the floor of the House. His unflinching resistance to pro-slavery dictation no doubt stimulated Free Soil emigration into Kansas and Nebraska after Adams' death. Never popular, he won his way and kept his very real influence in public affairs by sheer ability and force. Harsh and narrow in his sympathies, he was honest and patriotic, and everyone granted him the "clear head and stout heart" of his father.

Henry Clay in His Prime



This portrait of Henry Clay hangs on the wall in the home of one of his descendants, Major C. D. Clay of Lexington, Ky., who kindly permitted a photograph to be taken of it to illustrate the story of our Golden Age of Oratory. It shows Clay at the zenith of his powers.

The Young Law Student

Before Washington finished his second term, or the first building had risen on the site of the new National Capital on the Potomac, a young law student of Richmond, Virginia, emigrated to Lexington, Kentucky. Going by sailing vessel to Philadelphia, he crossed the mountains on horseback. From Pittsburgh, a little settlement around an old Indian fort, he floated down the Ohio on a flatboat. It was a quarter of a century before the Cumberland Road was opened from Washington to Wheeling, Virginia, and a Congressman from the West could travel in comfort by steamboat and stagecoach.

Kentucky, however, had been admitted as a state in 1792. Louisville, at the falls of the Ohio, was a busy, if rude, little town; and the tiny capital in the Blue Grass region had its white-pillared statehouse, and its good society of professional men and wealthy planters, when Henry Clay hung out his modest shingle as an attorney-at-law.

An Orator at Twenty-Three

The son of a poor Baptist minister of North Carolina, orphaned in childhood, he was imperfectly self-educated, according to the classic standard of the colleges of the day. But he was an ambitious and lifelong student. And he had an uncommon mind, an engaging personality, charming manners, and such an amazing gift for oratory that Kentucky, and then the Northwest, were soon at his feet. By 1800, at the age of twenty-three, he had started on a brilliant public career of half a century.

Three years later he dazzled Washington with his speeches in the Senate, to which he was appointed to fill a temporary vacancy. And in

1811, on the day that he first took his seat in the House of Representatives, he was elected Speaker. In that office, which, in power, is second only to the presidency, he remained for sixteen years, except for one term, when he declined election. He served as Secretary of State to John Quincy Adams, and narrowly failed of election to the presidency in 1824, 1832, and 1844. During the last eighteen years of his life he represented Kentucky in the Senate.

The Home of Henry Clay

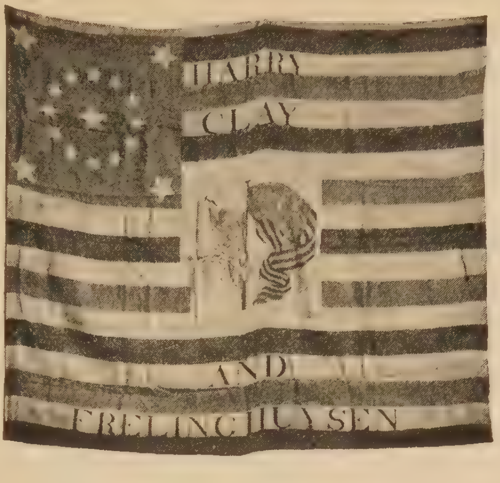
Here we are looking into the spacious grounds of the home of Henry Clay at Lexington, Ky. Lexington is in the famous blue-grass region and is noted for the beauty and fertility of the surrounding country. The grounds of Clay's home are filled with magnificent specimens of all the great variety of trees that grow in that region. The trees most conspicuous in the picture are oaks, as you can see from the character of the leaves and the rugged angular outlines of the limbs and branches.

Clay was the greatest party chief the country has produced, and the most popular orator. For fifty years he swayed applauding audiences to his mood. His style of oratory flowery, his appeal emotional, he moved men to laughter or tears, or to sweet reasonableness. He softened the hearts of men toward their enemies; drowned opposition under floods of eloquence, and stilled every storm with the music of his voice of persuasion. With hosts of friends and ardent admirers in all parties, Henry Clay had practically no enemies.

The Character of Henry Clay

Now, no man, however brilliant his gifts, could win such a place of general esteem and power, hold it so long, nor keep his enduring fame, unless he had solid qualities. What did Henry Clay stand for? What was his contribution to the problems of his time? He began his public life as a Democrat, but, as you know, there was for many years only the one political party in the country. This was divided into four factions; and Clay headed his own. The War of 1812 developed an ardent national patriotism in the West, and both Jackson and Clay were as staunch for the Union as Webster. But Kentucky differed with Ten-

A Henry Clay Banner

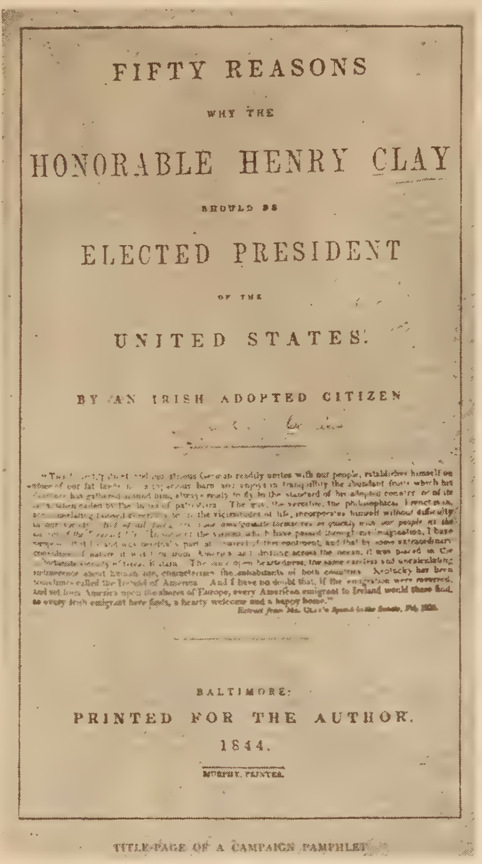


This is one of the banners carried in the political campaign of 1844 when Henry Clay ran for the presidency. Frederick T. Frelinghuysen was a candidate for the vice-presidency. Frelinghuysen was an eminent lawyer and was chancellor of the University of New York from 1839 to 1850, and president of Rutger's College from 1850 to 1862. You see the great orator and statesman was affectionately known as "Harry Clay" just as Lincoln was spoken of as "Abe" Lincoln. Notice how many stars there were in the flag at that time. *Could you name the states that made up the United States then?

nessee. It was more like Ohio and Indiana. It made hemp rope at an early date, while Ohio grew wool for the factories of New England. So Clay was in favor of a protective tariff.

You must remember that men's opinions are influenced by the needs and problems of the people around them. Had Clay represented some small, well developed seaboard state, he would probably never have appeared as the champion of internal improvements at the expense of the federal government. But living in the New West, with its poor, struggling pioneers, and its enormous stretches of wilderness, through which farm products could not be sent to market, nor needed goods returned, Clay thought a rich country should come to the rescue. In his time the great National Road was opened across Ohio, Indiana and Illinois to the Mississippi. Canals were cut, the naviga-

The "Fifty Reasons Why"



FIFTY REASONS

WHY THE

HONORABLE HENRY CLAY

SHOULD BE

ELECTED PRESIDENT

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

BY AN IRISH ADOPTED CITIZEN

BALTIMORE:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR.

1844.

MURPHY, PRINTER.

TITLE-PAGE OF A CAMPAIGN PAMPHLET

This is the title page of one of the pamphlets circulated in the Clay campaign, and as you can see, gives fifty reasons why he should be elected President. It is by "An Irish Adopted Citizen," and as we can see by the extract from one of Mr. Clay's speeches lays particular stress upon his tribute to the character of the Irish and how they have helped to make America. Among other things he says, "Of all foreigners, none amalgamate themselves so quickly with our people as the natives of the Emerald Isle."

tion of rivers improved in the days of steamboating, and the earliest railroads were assisted by free rights of way and grants of public land. With a statesman-like vision, Clay made possible the rapid settlement and prosperous development of Kentucky and the Northwest.

Why He Was the Great Pacificator

This work was federalistic in principle, and all of Clay's natural leanings were toward the theories of Hamilton. After being in public life for thirty years, and representing the interests of only one section of the country, he found his true political home on the organization of the Whig Party, with its comprehensive national policies. But he was a different type of Whig from Adams or Webster. Living on the western border of the free and slave states, where violent opinions were not held on the tariff or slavery questions, he was noted for his tolerance. For thirty years he stood between the warring factions and parties of North and South. With a rare understanding and sympathy for both sides, he used his influence and powers of persuasion in the interests of mutual concessions and peace. He was the author of the Missouri Compromise of 1820. After the passage of Jackson's Force Bill he persuaded the New England Whigs to consent to a gradual lowering of the tariff for the relief and pacification of the southern states. And before he died, in 1852, he made a last effort to settle the slavery question by another compromise.

Of course he settled nothing permanently, because it could not be done by compromise. But he softened many asperities, sweetened the bitter spirit of his time, and helped delay an inevitable conflict until the country was better prepared to meet the shock of civil war. And, he, as well as Webster and Jackson, played an important part in educating the next generation in national patriotism. The honor of which he was proudest was his popular title, "The Great Pacificator."

The Story of Daniel Webster

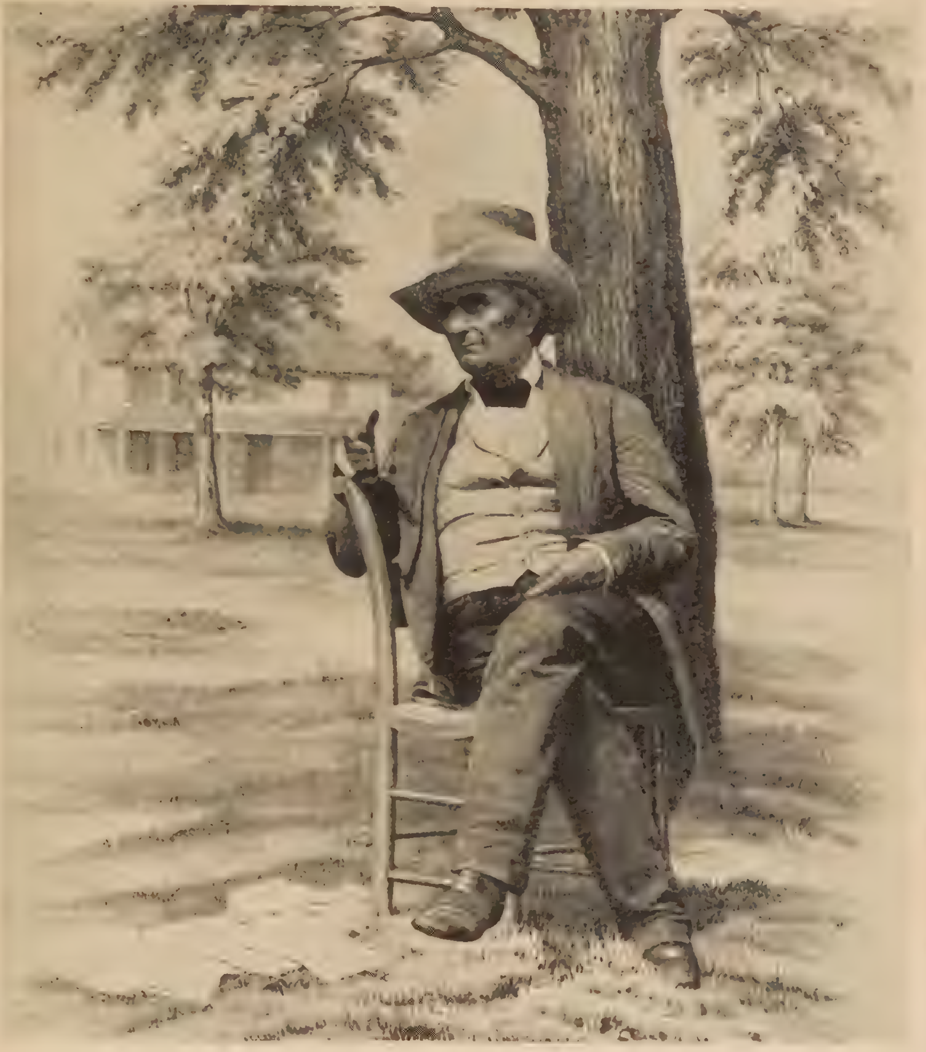
His Delicate Childhood

In reading the stories of great men we learn the potential value of all life. Many whom the world could ill have spared were frail in childhood. Daniel Webster, whose name is spoken with reverence and awe today, for his inspired patriotism and genius for oratory, was so delicate in infancy that he was kept alive only by the intelligent devotion of a Puritan mother. And as he grew up on a poor, stony farm, near Salisbury, New Hampshire, he was the only one of a large pioneer family, who was exempt from hard labor.

Even as a child his head was too heavy for his slight body. It was covered with a mop of thick, black hair. With his dark eyes glowing in his swarthy face, under a bulging forehead and bushy eyebrows, he early got his nickname of "Black Dan." His mother, in teaching him what she knew, discovered that he had a remarkable mind. At fifteen he had mastered all that was to be learned in a local academy. Then the father, mother, brothers and sisters, gathered around the rude fireplace for family prayers, decided that, no matter at what cost of toil and privation to the others, little Black Dan must go to college.

The sensitive boy burst into tears at this proof of confidence and devotion. And he repaid it in kind.

Webster Under the Big Elm Tree



Although New England farms were never rich, they have produced some of the finest crops in the history of the country. These crops were great men. Webster was one of them. He grew up on a stony farm near Salisbury, N. H., and he never got over his love for country life. Here you see him in one of the big soft hats he loved to wear on his vacations, sitting under an elm tree on his country estate at Mansfield, Mass., which he bought after he became a famous man. He is evidently chatting with someone and at his feet are probably some state papers which are the subject of their conversation.

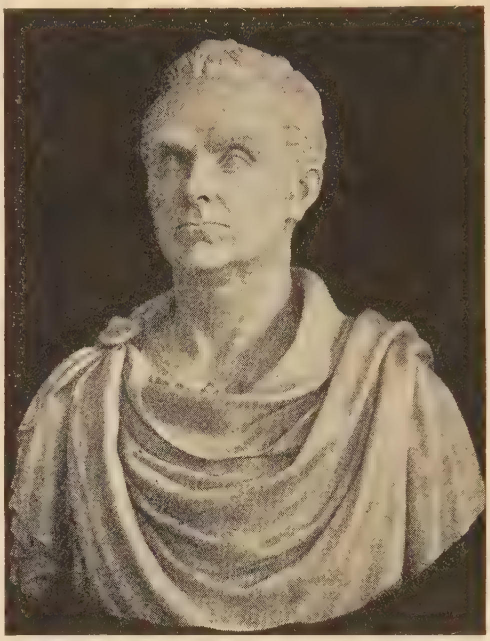
You wouldn't think to look at him, that he was once a delicate, frail child, would you? He was so delicate that he could not help much with the farm work, but he afterwards grew into the magnificent specimen of physical manhood we see here under the tree. His mother was his first and best teacher. She taught him all she knew and insisted on his going, first to the local academy, and afterward to college. All the family agreed to this, and when they told little Dan of their decision, he burst into tears to think how much they cared for him and believed in him. After he graduated from Dartmouth, he himself taught in an academy to earn money to send his brother Ezekiel to college. Then later when he had built up a law practice in one town, he turned it over to Ezekiel and started over in another town.

After his graduation from Dartmouth, he sent a brother through college. He cared for his father and mother until their death. He built up a law practice in Boston and gave it to a brother, beginning again in Portsmouth. In all history there is not a finer example of family love and loyalty than that of the Websters'.

In Daniel Webster's great heart and mind, this love and loyalty grew until they embraced his country. At the age of eighteen he delivered a Fourth of July oration, in which he made an impassioned appeal for national patriotism. This was in 1800, long before the people had outgrown their strong sense of the separate colonial origins of the states. Until 1816 Dartmouth College cherished and used the charter granted to it by King George, in 1760.

Webster served a term in Congress in 1812, and again in 1823, and he lost no opportunity to put his broad conception of patriotism before the country. By three speeches—at the celebration of the second centennial of the landing on Plymouth Rock, in 1820; at the dedication of Bunker Hill Monument in 1825; and by his eulogies of Jefferson and Adams in 1826—he made his views known throughout the country, and won enduring fame as an orator. But his great opportunity did not come until January, 1830, when, at forty-eight years of age, he was one of the United States senators from Massachusetts.

If Webster Had Been a Cicero



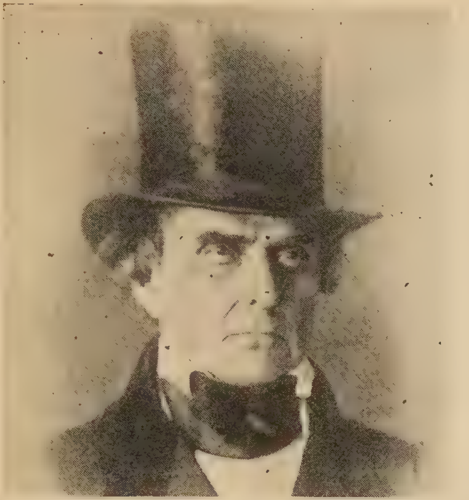
If Webster had lived in the days of the Romans, the Roman Senate instead of the United States Senate, would have echoed the tones of his wonderful voice with its "range and melody of a chime of bells," and he would have worn a toga as he does here and gone about everywhere without a hat, as the Romans did. This is a portrait bust of him in marble by the famous American sculptor, Hiram Powers. Powers, like Webster, was a New England country boy and studied art in Italy; so no one could have been better fitted to "translate" the great American orator into Latin. What magnificent eyes and brows; and that powerful neck, and chin and jaw, and the "mastiff mouth" as Carlyle called it. Webster, by the way, was a fine Latin scholar and attributed his success as an orator to his study of the Greek and Latin poets and orators. From his college days on he used to read them over and over, and could recite practically the whole of Virgil's Aeneid.

The Famous Reply to Hayne

Then it was that, in his "Reply to Hayne" he made a memorable speech, and became the greatest figure in public life in America. Senator Hayne, of South Carolina, who was Calhoun's chief disciple, had declared that the federal government was only a loose confederation, erected by the sovereign states, and that any state had the right to refuse to obey a law of Congress, or even to secede from the Union.

Webster rose to packed galleries,

And Such Eyes!



As a member of Congress and when practicing at the bar, Webster wore this tall silk hat. We can realize as we look into his face why he was called "Black Dan." His face was swarthy, and his dark eyes so remarkable that they at once attracted attention. When he visited London in 1839, his whole appearance and bearing was so striking that even in that crowded city, where you have to be a very great man indeed for anyone to pay any attention to you, the people on the streets everywhere used to stop and look at him whenever he passed along.

Thomas Carlyle who met him in London, drew the following pen picture of him in a letter to Emerson:

"Not many days ago I saw at breakfast the notablest of your notabilities, Daniel Webster. He is a magnificent specimen; the tanned complexion, the crag-like face; the dull, black eyes under the precipice of brows, like dull smouldering furnaces, needing only to be blown."

Character of Webster's Oratory

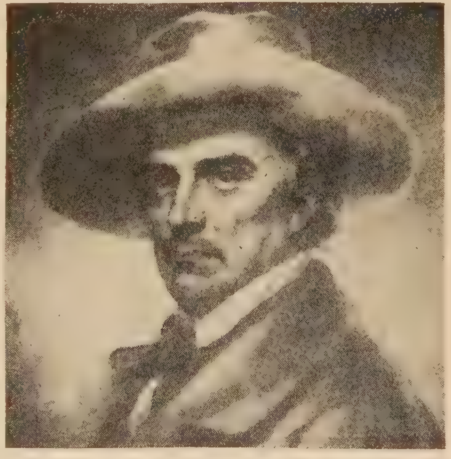
"looking like Judgment Day." Grave and dignified, he had the noblest head America has produced. His oratory was not as polished as Calhoun's, nor as graceful and persuasive as Clay's. There was something in him of his granite hills, and the spirit of duty and sacrifice of his Puritan ancestry. His logic was unanswerable, his learning profound, but his choice of words was so simple that the unlettered could follow him. He made no appeal to the emotions. His argument rested on moral principles and impassioned patriotism. And his voice had the range, melody and solemn beauty of a chime of church bells on a Sabbath morning.

Our government was then forty-two years old, and this was the first defense of the federal Constitution heard since the death of Hamilton. Webster's speech lifted the whole question of "States' Rights versus Federal Authority," from the level of political theory to the high plane of national ethics. We had a charge to keep—our sacred republican institutions. He declared that nullification was not only dangerous but treasonable. It could lead to nothing but disruption and civil war, and to the betrayal and destruction of all that our revolutionary fathers had fought and died for, and left to us in trust for future generations.

Devotion to the Union

For twenty-two years after that Webster was a colossal figure. He stood apart and above party politics. To those he was more or less indifferent. While he was one of the organizers of the Whig Party, be-

Webster in the Big Hat Again



This is another picture of Webster in his big soft hat. Mrs. M. L. Joy of Boston, who loaned Pictured Knowledge this portrait for reproduction, says that it was one of the latest portraits painted of him and adorned the walls of his country home at Mansfield. "The hat which he wears," she says, "was one in daily use when he was in the country."

cause of its federalistic principles, he believed, with Jefferson, in free trade. He supported the protective tariff only because it had been established, and could not easily be abandoned without ruining American industries. Opposed to the extension of slavery, he yet joined Clay in his compromises. And he joined Jackson in putting through the Force Bill. In truth, he hated abolitionist and nullifier alike, as did Jackson, and he fought every measure and every opinion which tended to divide the country.

His one passion and political doctrine was love and loyalty to his country. He made a profound impression on the people of all classes and sections. Extracts from his patriotic speeches were used in school readers. Little boys declaimed them in log schoolhouses on Friday afternoons. Lincoln, at twenty-one, read the "Reply to Hayne" in a Louisville newspaper in the little settlement at Salem, Illinois. Long afterwards he said "Patrick Henry was the greatest American orator, Clay the most persuasive, Calhoun the most brilliant, but Webster's Reply to Hayne was the greatest single speech delivered since Demosthenes' 'On the Crown.'"

The "Other Man" in the Great Debate

Next to delivering one of the greatest speeches in the history of oratory, it is a great distinction to have been the cause of such a speech. The young man with the pleasant smile who is looking at you here has this distinction; for this is Robert Y. Hayne in reply to whom Webster delivered the greatest of his public speeches in defense of the Union in opposition to the doctrine of states' rights, which Hayne supported.

But you may be sure that Hayne himself was an orator of rare ability, or what he said could not have furnished the occasion for such a reply from such a man as Webster. As a school boy he did not show much talent at first, but he made a study of oratory and, after he entered public life, soon distinguished himself as one of the most brilliant speakers among the younger senators.

He had a fine personal appearance and a winning manner. His method of speaking was quite different from Webster's. While Webster's manner was deliberate and ponderous, Hayne "dashed into debate like Mameluke Cavalry upon a charge." He had a gallant air about him which won admiration. After the close of Webster's speech he was the first to approach him with extended hand and the warmest expressions of admiration.

Our portrait of him was supplied by Mrs. Robert Y. Hayne, the widow of the orator's grandson.

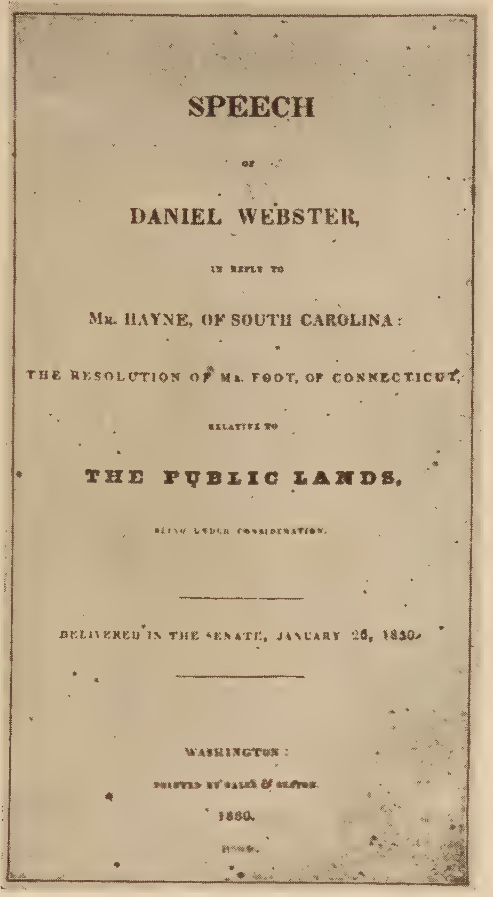
Grief and alarm were felt throughout the country when Webster died in October, 1852. How was distracted America to live without him? Clay had died in June; Calhoun two years before; Adams in 1848; Jackson in 1845. It had been an age of giants. Now they were all gone. Both parties were left without able or responsible leaders. The Democrats got out of hand and passed the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, which repealed the Missouri Compromise. The Whigs went to pieces.

The Republican Party was organized in 1856, and soon attracted to itself all the federalistic and anti-slavery sentiment in the country—the Whigs, Know-Nothings, Free

Webster's Greatest Speech in Pamphlet Form

Soilers and Abolitionists. Lincoln was one of the organizers of the new party in Illinois. Aroused by the peril to the Union, this unknown lawyer, in a small western capital, developed a remarkable gift for oratory, and qualities of leadership that swept the Republicans to victory in 1860.

Then the storm of civil war, that had been gathering for a quarter of a century, broke. It was Lincoln's task, begun by Webster, Clay, and Jackson, to preserve the Union.



SPEECH

OF

DANIEL WEBSTER,

IN REPLY TO

MR. HAYNE, OF SOUTH CAROLINA:

THE RESOLUTION OF MR. FOOT, OF CONNECTICUT,

RELATIVE TO

THE PUBLIC LANDS,

BEING UNDER CONSIDERATION.

DELIVERED IN THE SENATE, JANUARY 26, 1830.

WASHINGTON:

PRINTED BY GALES & SEATON.

1830.

[illegible]

It was not only the custom in the golden age of American oratory for the newspapers to print speeches of eminent public men in full, but they were reprinted in convenient pamphlet form, so that men could carry them about in their pockets and read and reread them and argue about them with their neighbors, and many of these speeches were preserved in this form and handed down as precious possessions. This copy of Webster's speech in reply to Hayne is in the collections of historic documents in the Smithsonian Institution at Washington. Wouldn't you like to have a copy of it!

The Blue and the Gray

*By the flow of the inland river,
Whence the fleets of iron have fled,
Where the blades of the grave-grass quiver,
Asleep are the ranks of the dead:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the one, the Blue,
Under the other, the Gray.*

*These in the robings of glory,
Those in the gloom of defeat,
All with the battle-blood gory,
In the dusk of eternity meet:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the laurel, the Blue,
Under the willow, the Gray.*

*From the silence of sorrowful hours
The desolate mourners go,
Lovingly laden with flowers
Alike for the friend and the foe;
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the roses, the Blue,
Under the lilies, the Gray.*

*So with an equal splendour,
The morning sun-rays fall,
With a touch impartially tender,
On the blossoms blooming for all:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Broidered with gold, the Blue,
Mellowed with gold, the Gray.*

*So, when the summer calleth,
On forest and field of grain,
With an equal murmur falleth
The cooling drip of the rain:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Wet with the rain, the Blue,
Wet with the rain, the Gray.*

*Sadly, but not with upbraiding,
The generous deed was done,
In the storm of the years that are fading
No braver battle was won:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the blossoms, the Blue,
Under the garlands, the Gray.*

*No more shall the war cry sever,
Or the winding rivers be red;
They banish our anger forever
When they laurel the graves of our dead!
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Love and tears for the Blue,
Tears and love for the Gray.*

FRANCIS MILES FINCH

The Story of Abraham Lincoln

The Crumbling Cabin in the Marble Shrine

This is a scene on the Lincoln farm at Hodgensville, Ky., when President Wilson, on behalf of the nation, accepted the memorial temple which encloses all that remains of the little cabin in which Lincoln was born. Let us imagine that we are among the twenty thousand people present and listening to this speech. Among other things this is what we hear:

"How eloquent is this little house within this shrine, of the vigor of democracy! There is nowhere in the land any home so humble that it may not contain the power of mind, and heart, and conscience to which nations yield and history submits its processes. Every door is open in every hamlet and countryside * * * for the ruler to emerge when he will and claim his leadership in the free life.

* * *

"This little hut was the cradle of one of the great sons of mankind. * * * His heart seemed to comprehend all mankind in its catholic and benignant sympathy. * * * The mind that sat enthroned behind those brooding, melancholy eyes * * * comprehended what it had never seen, and understood the language of affairs with the ready ease of one to the manner born; a nature that seemed in its varied richness to be the familiar of men of every way of life.

* * *

"We are not worthy to stand here unless we ourselves be, in deed and in truth, real democrats and servants of mankind, ready to give our very lives for the freedom, and justice, and spiritual exaltation of the great nation which shelters and nourishes us."

The Savior of Democracy

WITHOUT any doubt, the birth of Lincoln, of poor, illiterate parents, in the backwoods of Kentucky, was the most important event in America, after the Declaration of Independence and the adoption of the Constitution. Our country was founded in the new faith that the common people possessed the wisdom, virtue and unselfish patriotism necessary for self-government. Lincoln justified that faith. From the humblest origin and the scantiest opportunities, he appeared in a national crisis, not only to save the Union, but to prevent, for all liberty-loving people, the failure of democracy.

A Visit to Lincoln's Birthplace

Let us take a little journey to the farm in Hardin County, where he was born on February 12, 1809. You leave the train at the quiet village of Hodgensville, and drive out over a pleasant country road. The farm is, today, part of a landscape of pastures, groves and cornfields. Nearby is the shady creek where Lincoln learned to swim and fish. And there are still lichen-crusted, briar-grown remnants of the rail fences that enclosed the little clearings of more than a century ago. In such a rustic scene, it is strange to come upon a temple of glistening white marble, its flight of broad steps leading up to a lovely line of classic pillars. The visitor instinctively takes off his hat as he steps within the historic shrine that was built by the Lincoln Farm Association over the decaying log cabin, in which our great president was born.

The Home of the Lincolns

The top of its stick and clay chimney crumbled and fell long ago. Its roof of weather-worn clapboards and poles long since ceased to keep out the rain. But even when new, it could have furnished little better shelter than an Indian lodge. The floor was of earth. A deer skin curtain served as its first door. The bed was of poles, laced with deer hide, and supported by holes bored in the logs. There was not even an iron crane to hang a kettle over the fire. Even among poor pioneers the Lincolns were poorer than others. The food of the family was game, fish, wild berries, honey from bee trees, and the little corn that could be grown between the stumps, pounded into hominy. Little Abe wore buckskin clothing. When very young he had to ride ten and twenty miles through the woods, to have corn ground at the nearest water-mill. And he had to carry a gun to defend himself from the wolves, black bears, lynxes and wild cats that infested the woods.

Death of Lincoln's Mother

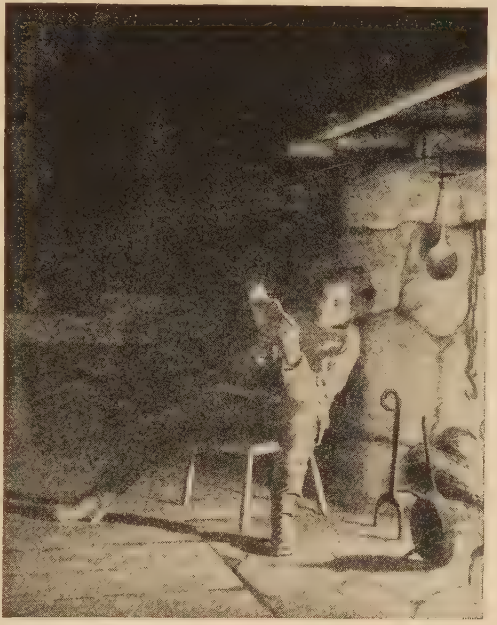
Southern Indiana, to which the family moved in 1816, was equally wild. The new cabin was scarcely up before the young mother—Nancy Hanks Lincoln—died of milk sickness, for the one cow had eaten poisonous weeds in the woods. The nine-year-old boy helped his father whipsaw boards and whittle pegs for the rough coffin in which they laid her away by a deer path in the forest.

A Mother's Inspiration

The piteous death of his mother, for lack of a doctor or the simplest remedies, was a life-long grief to Lincoln. In an unlettered family, and with no schooling, Nancy Hanks had, in some way, learned to read and write. She taught her son all she knew and told him stories of Washington, and of the brave grandfather for whom she had named him, who had come out to Kentucky with Daniel Boone and fought Indians. She often urged him: "You l'arn all you kin, Abe an' be somebody."

So, with the nearest log schoolhouse nearly five miles distant, and teachers little better than wandering vagabonds, Lincoln taught himself from Webster's spelling book and the Bible. He earned a copy of Weems's Life of Washington by cutting two cords of wood. His cousin, Dennis Hanks, ten years older than himself, got him The Arabian Nights. His kind and capable stepmother helped and encouraged him. He often read aloud to her, as he lay at length, his book between his elbows, before the fire. He borrowed and read every book within twenty miles of his home, even the dry statutes of Indiana. And at the country store and mill at Gentryville, now Lincoln City, he read the speeches of Henry Clay, in the small newspapers of Cincinnati and Louisville.

How Lincoln Taught Himself



© Horace K. Turner Co. Lincoln's Boyhood, by Eastman Johnson.

"He borrowed and read every book within twenty miles of his home. * * * By the time he was twenty-one, he had done an astonishing amount of reading in his scant leisure, after nightfall and at noon when he rested the plow horse."

An All-around Education

By the time he was twenty-one, Lincoln had done an astonishing amount of reading in his scant leisure, after nightfall, and at noon when he rested the plow horse and munched his dry corn dodger under a tree. And it was not only from books that he learned. He made time to know and to love and serve his neighbors; to keep informed on events of the day, and to improve himself in every manly, useful way. He excelled at running, wrestling and all country sports. Growing up tall and strong, he was the champion tree-chopper, rail-splitter and log-roller of the countryside. He broke up crowds of rowdy young men and won their friendship. He protected women, children and dumb animals; and he soundly thrashed bullies who could be persuaded to good behavior in no other way. He lost no chance to hear a good sermon, stump speech or courtroom argument; or to talk with a judge, lawyer or preacher traveling the circuit. It was his instinct to sit at the feet of superior men. He committed some of Henry Clay's speeches to memory; and working his way down to New Orleans as a deck-hand on a flatboat, he saw things that set him to pondering on public questions that the wisest men then in the country were unable to solve.

He Starts Out Into the World

For twenty-one years he gave cheerful obedience, affection and unstinted service to a lovable but impractical father who "never could seem to get ahead." For good measure he helped the family move to Illinois, and clear and fence a field for corn. Thirty years later John Hanks set the State Republican Convention wild by carrying two rails he had split into the hall. But little he thought of the end of the journey, when he tied his homespun shirts and knitted socks in a bandana handkerchief and set out afoot along the banks of the Sangamon River. His fortune did not concern him. He sought only knowledge, and a wider field of usefulness and service to humanity.

Further Education and Training

In the thriving little settlement of three hundred people of New Salem, where he found a home and friends for the next six years, there were books, educated people, and a schoolmaster to teach him grammar. He had things to say, already, and his first necessity was to learn how to express himself in speech and writing. Here he read and was deeply stirred by Webster's "Reply to Hayne." As the village postmaster, carrying mail to distant farms, if he had an errand that way, he read every newspaper that circulated in the region. Fighting Indians in the Black Hawk War, civilizing the rowdy Clary's Grove boys, who terrorized peaceable settlers, clerking, failing as a storekeeper, serving the town in the state legislature, and winning hosts of friends by his social gifts, Lincoln lived the precarious life of a student, while, with borrowed books, he educated himself for the bar. It is not to be supposed that he could not have made a better living; with his strength and skill and tireless industry, and with the personal popularity and public respect that are, everywhere, valuable assets. He won the sort of success that he cared most about.

Beginning the Practice of Law

As poor in pocket as when he entered the town, Lincoln borrowed a horse to ride away to Springfield to begin the practice of law, at the age of twenty-eight. He remained in the state legislature until 1842, and secured the removal of the capital from Vandalia. In the forties he served one term in Congress; but there he made no attempt to distinguish himself. He used the opportunity to listen to Webster, Clay, and Calhoun, and he went home to devote ten years to the routine practice of law.

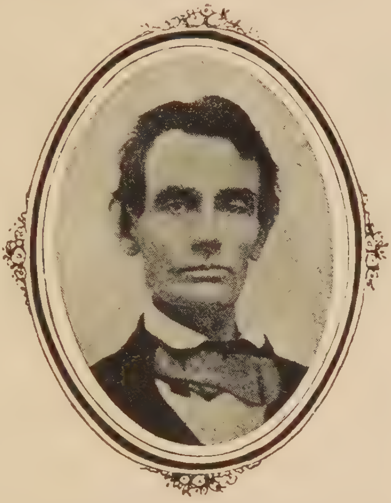
How He Won His Cases

Long afterwards, almost every lawyer and judge who traveled the circuit with Lincoln filled a book with stories about him. They told how people crowded into the courtroom whenever he was to address a jury. He captured audiences and won verdicts with his homely wit, kindly humor, tender pathos, apt anecdotes that were like the parables of the Bible, and by his sincerity and shrewd common sense. He won the nickname of "Honest Abe" because he would defend no man unless he believed him to be innocent. He did not dazzle people at all. Any child could understand him. College-bred associates who fell under his spell, marveled at his power, for, according to the classic standards of the day, he had no learning. His very simplicity caused him to be long underestimated. Not until 1856, when he was forty-seven was he regarded as a profound thinker, a gifted political leader and an orator of the first rank.

Entry Into National Politics

Lincoln had been out of politics for ten years, when the northern states were alarmed by a threatened spread of slavery. By 1852 all the old leaders of both parties were dead. The Whigs went to pieces, and the distracted northern states were divided among several small, ineffective parties—the Whigs, Abolitionists, Free Soilers, Know Nothings, and the Democrats who were united with the solidly Democratic South. It was a northern Democrat, Senator Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, who was the author of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill which repealed Clay's old Missouri Compromise. Free-soil and pro-slavery colonists immediately swarmed into Kansas Territory to fight for possession of the next new state. Then the Dred Scott Decision of the United States Supreme Court permitted masters to take their slaves into any free state, and to hold them there.

A Face That Speaks of History



If ever the history of a brave life was written in a human face, it was in that of Abraham Lincoln, but in none of his portraits can we read so clearly and definitely—letter by letter, so to speak—what the face has to say, as in what is known as the "Macomb" portrait which is here reproduced. If we contrast it with one of his earlier pictures, we will see what an air of determination has here come over his face. This portrait was taken when he had decided to pursue a course in his debates with Douglas, against which all his friends and political associates advised him, and which he knew would probably cost him the election to the United States Senate for which he was running. It was taken at Macomb, Ill., two days before one of the debates, and is now owned by Captain W. J. Franklin who loaned it to Pictured Knowledge for reproduction. It shows, as none of his other portraits do, the unbending determination of which he was capable when his conscience told him to take a certain course.

In this crisis Lincoln re-entered public life. As his first concern was to oppose the re-election of Senator Douglas, he returned to the state legislature. He joined the movement to bring all the federalistic and anti-slavery sentiment in the state together, and to organize the Republican Party in Illinois. In his speech before the Republican State Convention he made an observation that set the nation to thinking as it had not thought on any question since Patrick Henry: "A house divided against itself cannot stand. I believe this nation cannot remain permanently half slave and half free."

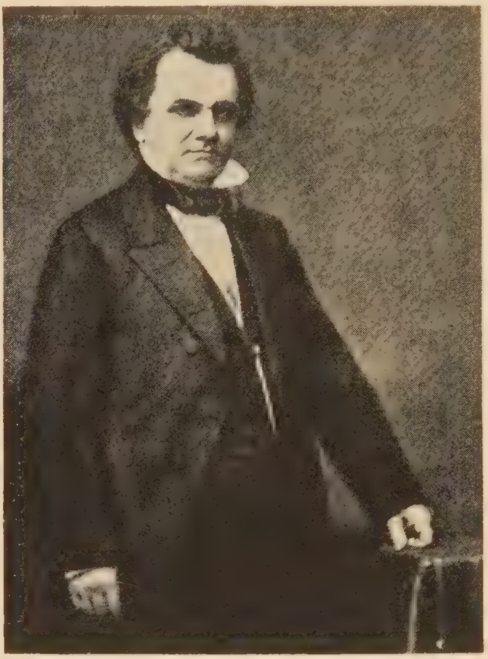
The Famous Douglas Debates

Lincoln was immediately put forward as the Republican choice for senator. His reply to a Chicago speech by Douglas led to a series of debates between the two that covered every congressional district in the state. The challenge attracted the attention of the country. Douglas was the "Little Giant," an orator of national fame and the probable Democratic candidate for the presidency in 1860. Outside of his own state Lincoln was unknown. Men rode and drove, and even walked, thirty miles to hear those speeches.

Eastern newspapers reported them. And people went home to say: "Douglas is the most eloquent speaker, but—Lincoln has the right of it."

That is the final test of oratory: to be convincing. Lincoln was so simple, so direct, that people who heard him were not carried away at the time, but it was astonishing how single sentences of his stuck in the public mind. He was unforgettable. He failed to win the senatorship, but he split the Democratic Party by admissions that he forced from Douglas. His fame was nationwide; and his name swept the National Republican Convention in Chicago, like a prairie fire and won the election of 1860.

"The Little Giant"



"Douglas was the 'Little Giant,' an orator of national fame and a probable democratic candidate for the Presidency in 1860." People who heard the Douglas debates said: "Douglas is the most eloquent speaker, but Lincoln has the right of it."

The contrast between the appearance of the two men was equally striking. While Lincoln was tall, Douglas was hardly five feet high. He was called "The Little Giant," not only because he had such a brilliant mind, but because he had a large head and a massive chest for his size.

School textbooks have too little room to explain Lincoln's political convictions. Born and brought up in the Ohio River Valley, when Henry Clay was the popular idol for a half century, he was a Whig of the Clay faction. He had also been profoundly influenced by President Jackson's vigorous handling of the nullification doctrine and talk of secession in the thirties. But most of all he was moved by Webster's twenty years' defense of the Federal Constitution, and eloquent pleas for national patriotism. His one fixed determination, on entering the White House, was to preserve the Union.

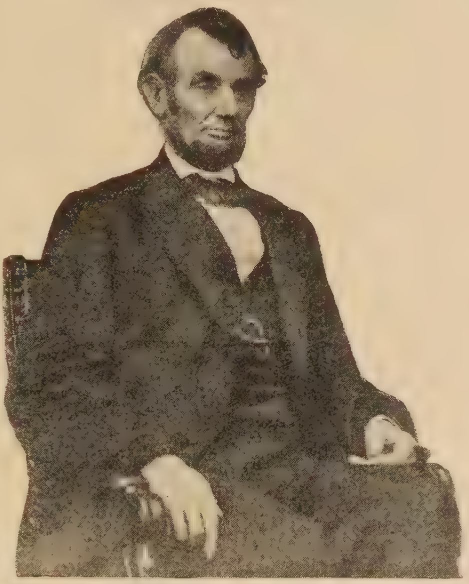
The Slavery Question and the Union

Although slavery shocked and saddened him, and he resisted its spread into the free states and territories, he was not an Abolitionist. Like Henry Clay, he understood the difficulty of changing the labor system upon which the agricultural industries of the southern states were based, and sympathized with them. He knew that there was a strong sentiment in the border states for the gradual emancipation of the slaves; and he thought that, as the states came to that frame of mind, the entire country should share the social and financial burden of freeing the black race.

In that time of heated feeling, Lincoln was the best friend the South could have had in the White

House. He would not have been hurried, for abolition sentiment was so far from dominating the Republican Party that it was not until 1863 that he was sure of support in issuing the Emancipation Proclamation. And he did not abolish slavery. He simply freed the slaves of states that were in rebellion, to weaken the Confederacy and prevent its recognition by England. In neutral border states and in states that had been conquered by Union armies, slavery was undisturbed, until it was abolished by amendment to the Constitution after the war ended.

How Lincoln Looked in '64



This picture of Lincoln is from a photograph taken in Washington early in 1864 by a Mr. Brady and hence is known as the Brady photograph. The rough appearance of the ear and a portion of the clothing is due to a defect in the negative. The American sculptor, Bartlett, commenting on Lincoln's appearance when seated, said: "Lincoln's dignity when sitting shows that the popular notion as to his ungainliness is exaggerated. He also stood well and, above all, in a natural and unassuming manner."

But, alarmed by Lincoln's large majority, misunderstanding and mistrusting him, and over-estimating the strength of abolition sentiment in the North, the southern states were convinced that an immediate attack was to be made upon slavery. Between November and March seven states seceded and set up the Confederate Government. The saddest man in the country, Lincoln went to Washington under guard to be inaugurated.

Then Came the War

Your history tells you all about the four years' war; its great campaigns and battles, its shifting fortunes, the conquest of the exhausted South, and Lincoln's official acts. So let us give you this little picture of the war's beginning, as it appeared in Chicago where, in the June before, Lincoln had been nominated in the barn-like Wigwam, to the booming of cannon, shrieking of whistles, and clamor of fire bells.

"Fort Sumter was bombarded on Saturday, April 13, 1861. Nothing could be done on Sunday. It was one of those cloudless days, warm as July. An azure sky was reflected in a sapphire lake. A gentle breeze stirred the folds of Old Glory, which floated from every gable. Church doors and pulpits were draped in the colors. Congregations sang America. Ministers prayed that the untried president might have wisdom and strength for his patriotic task. It was a day of grief, bewilderment and prayer. On Monday morning President Lincoln issued his call for volunteers. In just three weeks thirty-eight companies of boys in blue—among them Germans, Swedes, Poles, and a whole Irish Brigade under Colonel

Mulligan, marched from Chicago to Springfield." All over the North tramping regiments sang:

"We are coming Father Abraham
Three hundred thousand strong."

It was not, however, until the issue of the Emancipation Proclamation, January 1, 1863, that the country realized that it had a statesman comparable to Washington in the White House; nor until the following July that it had one of the greatest of heroes. In a speech of fewer than three hundred words (delivered at the dedication of the battlefield of Gettysburg as a national cemetery) Lincoln revealed the mind of a sage, the foresight of a prophet, the purpose of a historic reformer and the heart of a mother. In that, and in his second inaugural he gave us literary classics.

The Words That Freed the Slaves

On the opposite page is a reduced reproduction of one of the four pages of the first draft of what the London Spectator called, "the noblest political document known to history," the Emancipation Proclamation. It is all in the handwriting of Lincoln except two interlineations on another page by Secretary Seward, and the formal heading and ending which was written by the Chief Clerk of the State Department.

The original draft is dated September 22nd, 1862. On New Year's Day, 1863, as you see he expresses his intention of doing in the second paragraph of this reproduction, he issued the final Proclamation.

When you go to Washington some day you can see both the original draft and the final Proclamation which are kept among the precious original documents of the nation, and you will notice that the signature of the final Proclamation shows that the president's hand trembled a little. "Not," said Mr. Lincoln in speaking of it afterwards, "because of any uncertainty or hesitation on my part; but it was just after a public reception and three hours of handshaking is not calculated to improve a man's handwriting."

As the document lay unrolled before him, he took a pen, dipped it in ink, moved his hand to the place for signature, held it a moment and then without signing, laid the pen aside, and turning to the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, said:

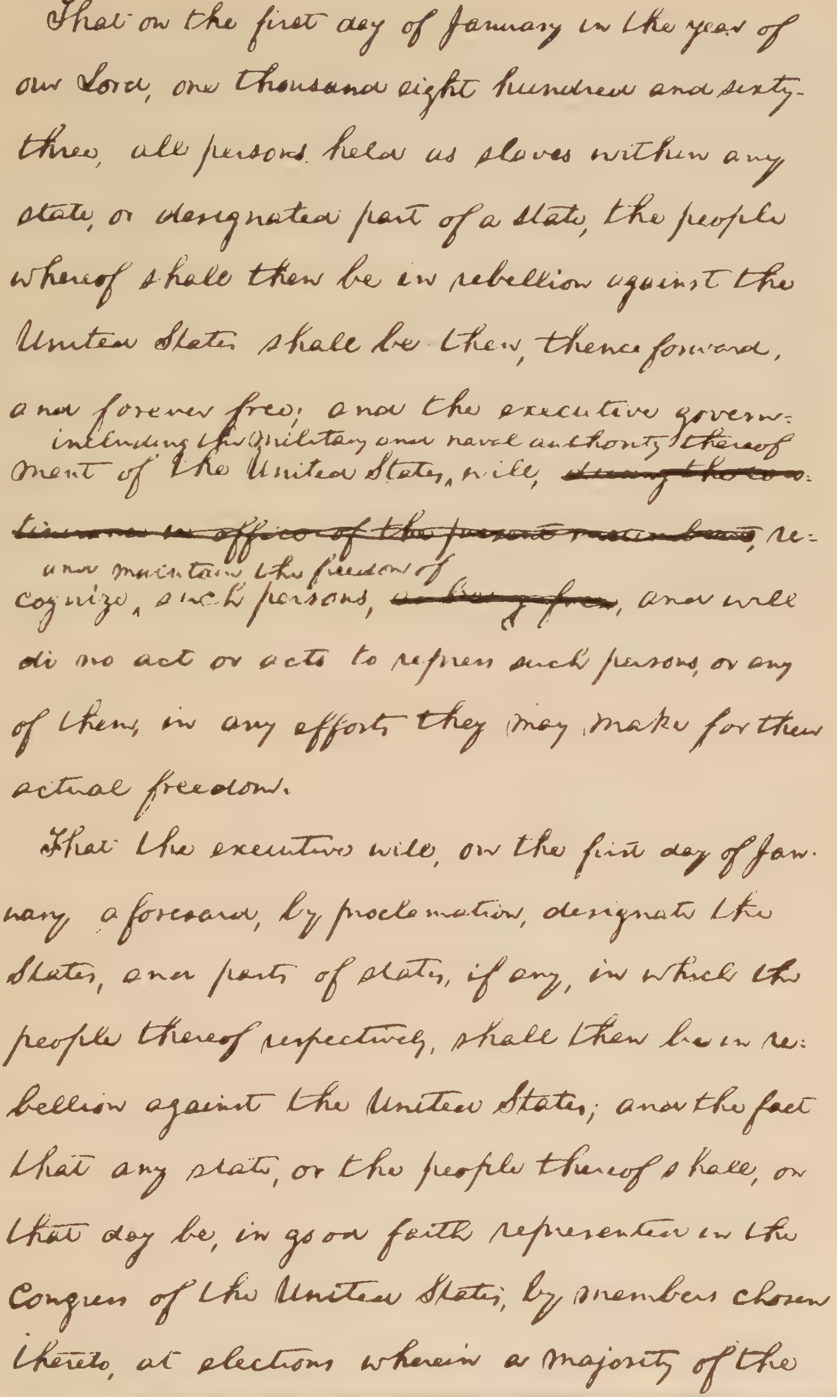
"I have been shaking hands since nine o'clock this morning and my right hand is almost paralyzed. If my name ever goes into history it will be for this act and my whole soul is in it. If my hand trembles when I sign the Proclamation, all who examine the document hereafter will say, 'he hesitated.'" He then turned to the table, took up the pen again and slowly and carefully signed his name.

A Martyr for His Country

On April 15, 1865, four years and two days from the beginning of the war, and five days after the South laid down its arms, Lincoln suffered a martyr's death, dying "with malice toward none and charity for all." His task was not finished. The ruined South lost its best and wisest friend. A member of his cabinet who saw him breathe his last, spoke the thought of the world and the verdict of history: "Now he belongs to the ages."

"Honest Abe Is Dead"

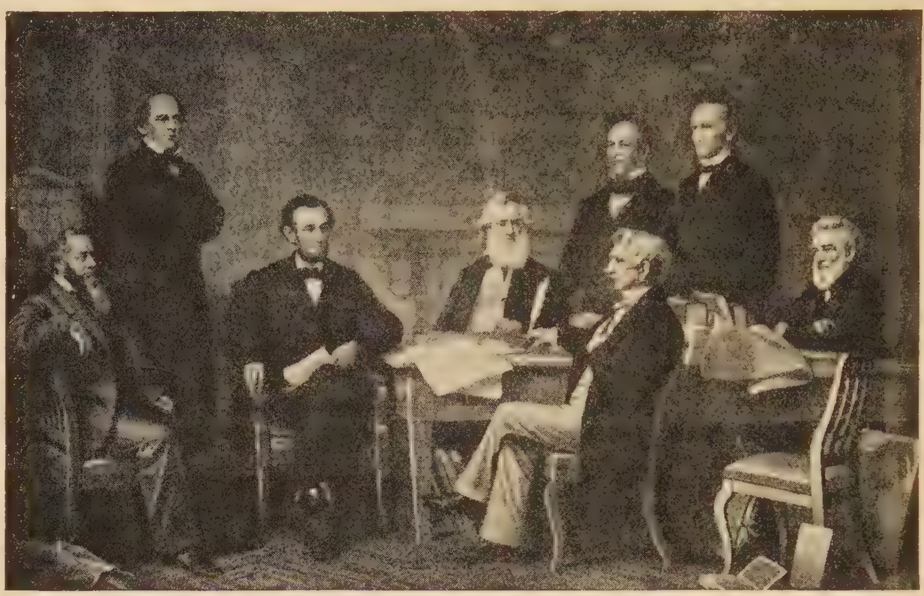
One more little picture. You will not find it in your textbooks. It was drawn for the writer of this sketch by Dennis Hanks, Lincoln's cousin and earliest friend. He was ninety at the time, and our great president had been dead a quarter of a century. An uneducated cobbler of sixty-six, "a little



That on the first day of January in the year of our Lord, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, all persons held as slaves within any state, or designated part of a state, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States shall be then, thence forward, and forever free; and the executive government of the United States, including the military and naval authority thereof, will, ~~during the continuance in office of the present incumbent~~, recognize and maintain the freedom of such persons, ~~as being free~~, and will do no act or acts to repress such persons, or any of them, in any efforts they may make for their actual freedom.

That the executive will, on the first day of January aforesaid, by proclamation, designate the States, and parts of states, if any, in which the people thereof respectively, shall then be in rebellion against the United States; and the fact that any state, or the people thereof shall, on that day be, in good faith represented in the Congress of the United States, by members chosen thereto, at elections wherein a majority of the

Lincoln and His Cabinet at the Signing of the Emancipation Proclamation



It was without consultation with, or the knowledge of, his cabinet that Lincoln prepared the original draft of the Proclamation, although the idea of emancipation had frequently been discussed. When he had written it out, he called a meeting of the cabinet and submitted it. To preserve in picture form the memory of this great event, F. B. Carpenter, the artist who painted this picture, spent six months with Mr. Lincoln at the White House, getting materials and information so that the picture should be as accurate as possible. In describing the circumstances of the meeting to the artist, Mr. Lincoln said that no suggestions were offered that he had not anticipated and settled in his own mind, until Secretary Seward suggested that the Proclamation should not be issued at that time because the war had been going against the Union armies. "His idea," said Mr. Lincoln, "was that it would be considered our last shriek on the retreat, and that it should be given to the country following some military success. It was an aspect of the case that I had entirely overlooked, and seeing the wisdom of it I put the Proclamation aside as you do a sketch for a picture. From time to time I added or changed a line, touching it up here and there, anxiously watching the progress of events." Finally came the battle of Antietam and on the first day of the year following, the Proclamation was issued.

The picture shows the meeting of the cabinet when the Proclamation was first submitted. The President sat near the head of the table. Facing him was the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward. Seated at his right is Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, and between them is Mr. Chase, Secretary of the Treasury. On Mr. Lincoln's left in the order named are: Secretary Welles, of the Navy; Secretary Smith, of the Interior; Postmaster General Blair, and Attorney General Bates, the man with the folded arms.

The President is represented as holding in his hand the Proclamation, which he has just read, and listening to the important suggestion by Secretary Seward that it should not be issued until after a Union victory.

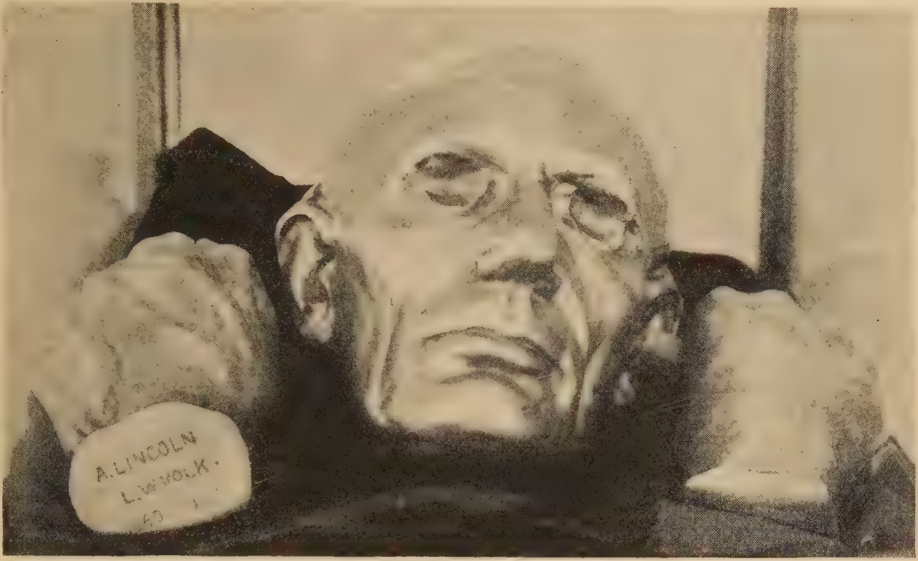
runt of an old man," as he described himself, he was pegging away at a broken shoe, in his shop in Charleston, Illinois, when a neighbor, white and shaken, ran in from the streets.

"Denny!" he cried, "Honest Abe's dead; shot dead!"

"Like the Earth Had Stopped"

"I been hearin' that in my dreams for twenty-five years, an' I kaint believe it yit. It was in April, the sun shinin', the grass turnin' green, an' the laylocks in bloom. Then it was like the 'arth had stopped. Thar wasn't sca'cely any tradin' done. Everything kivered with black, an' people standin' round the streets cryin'. Crowds waited at every depot from Washington to Springfield, to scatter posies on the track, an' to stand unkivered while the

A Life Mask of Lincoln



A life mask looks anything but lifelike, but it serves an important purpose. It reproduces a man's face exactly as it is and stands in the same relation to sculpture that a photograph does to a painting. In taking a life mask, the face of the sitter is covered with plaster of paris which is allowed to remain on the face for an hour or so until it becomes hardened. It is then removed and this cast is used as a mold for making the life mask itself, such as the one of Lincoln which you see here. In the same way the casts of the hands are made. In order that the sitter may breathe while his face is covered with the plaster, two quills are inserted in his nostrils which extend to the outer air.

Death masks from the faces of the distinguished dead are taken in the same way. The death mask of Napoleon is one of the best known. It would be impossible to say, merely from the look of it, which is the life mask and which the death mask of a man because in both cases the eyes, of course, are closed.

funeral car went by. We didn't keer none about him bein' president. We jist wanted Abe to come home, an' visit around with the folks that loved him. Thar won't be another man like Abe Lincoln until Judgment Day."

A Priceless Memory

A noble monument marks his grave in Springfield, Illinois. His plain old frame house there is a memorial, filled with relics, and kept open to visitors by the state. A marble temple protects the humble cabin in which he was born. His mother's grave in Indiana is marked by a shaft, in the center of a little state park. Hundreds of books have been written about him. Through numerous statues, busts, bas-reliefs, and portraits, the world has been made familiar with his tall, spare figure, heavy black hair, deep-set gray eyes, and the tender, wistful mouth which betrays his sadness. Countless stories illustrate his wisdom, humor and wide sympathies. And in his writings we have precious examples of the clearness, force and beauty of his style, and the nobility of his mind and heart.

Lincoln and Washington

With Washington, Lincoln is the one man in our history whose fame is not accounted for by anything or everything that he did. We love and revere him for what he was. His life conveys the impression of duty rather than of glory. His spirit is

Lincoln at Gettysburg

timeless, his appeal universal. The humblest man may cultivate his virtues. His very dear memory admonishes every American patriot.

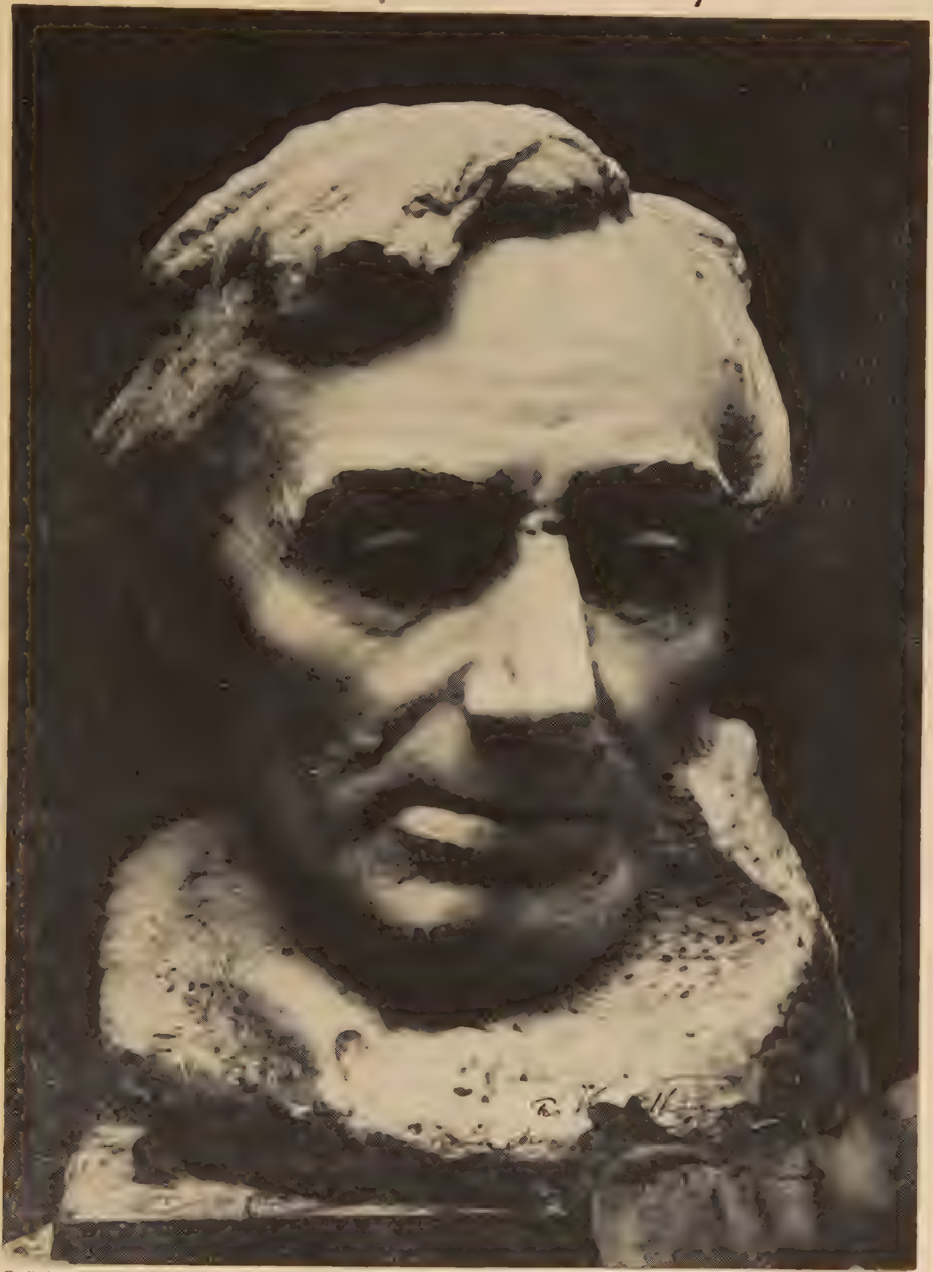
If the nation which he lived and died to save is not to perish from the earth, it will be because it continues to breed such men.

Statue by D. C. French, at Lincoln, Neb.

This is how Lincoln stood when he uttered those few but immortal words at the dedication of the battlefield of Gettysburg as a National Cemetery, and this is what he said:

"Fourscore and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and dedicated, can long endure. We have met on a great battlefield of that war. We are met to dedicate a portion of that field as the final resting place of the men who here gave their lives that the nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this. But in a larger sense we cannot consecrate, we cannot hallow, this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far above our power to add or detract. The world will little note nor long remember, what we say here, but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly carried on. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the task remaining before us; that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to the cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion: that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that the nation shall, under God, have a new birth of freedom, and that government of the people, by the people and for the people shall not perish from the earth."

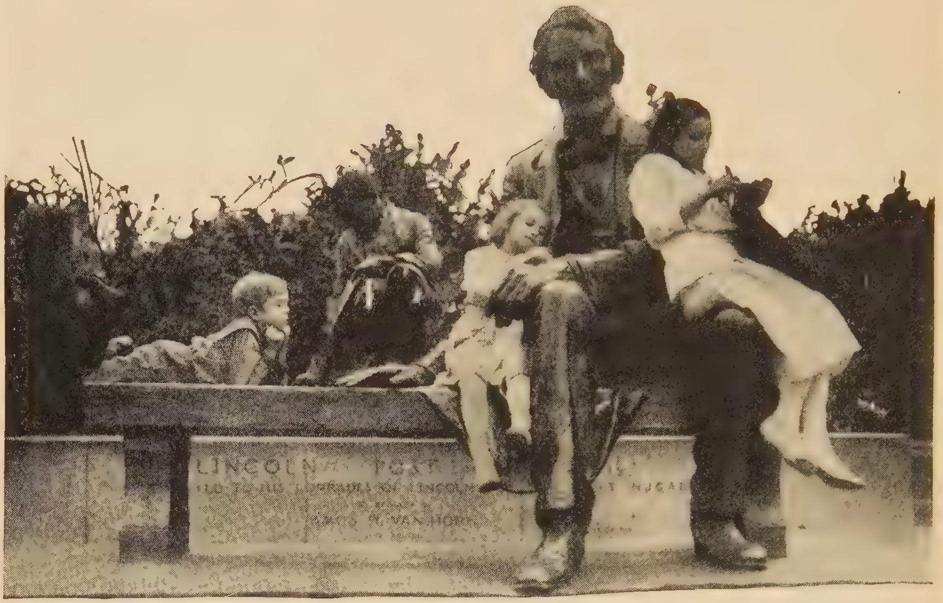
The Saddest Face in History



© *Gutzon Borglum* *By permission of the Artist*

A great leader and statesman carrying the burdens of a nation—this is the impression given us by this head of Lincoln in the Capitol at Washington. It is the work of Gutzon Borglum, one of the most eminent of modern sculptors. As we look at it, how it reminds us, by the kindly lines of the face, the splendid thoughtfulness of the brow, the firm yet tender mouth—of this expression of Lincoln's character in words: "He had the brain of a sage, the inflexible purpose of a reformer, the tender heart of a mother."

Lincoln's Love for Children and Good Stories



This is another conception of Lincoln by Borglum. It occupies a site in front of the Essex County Court House, at Newark, N. J., and was erected by one of the local posts of the Grand Army of the Republic. The figure of Lincoln and the bench on which it rests is a favorite resting place for the children who love to play here. Lincoln himself was very fond of children and would, without doubt, have enjoyed having the very children in the picture on his knee and at his side, just as they are shown.

The Loving Father, the Boy, and the Books

AFTER he became president, he used to spend all the time he could spare from the burdens of his great work to "chum" with his little son, Tad, whose real name was Thomas, after Lincoln's father. But the President used to call him "Tadpole" and this became a family name shortened to "Tad." Opposite we see the boy and his father looking over a beautifully illustrated book with brass clasps. After he became president, people sent Mr. Lincoln a great many books and always having been fond of books himself, it was one of the delights of his life to open them in the evening with Tad standing beside him, and they would talk together as they turned the pages. It was also Mr. Lincoln's custom to read aloud to his family every morning a chapter from the Bible, and while doing so he usually had his arm around Tad, who stood close beside him. Lincoln always loved the Bible, both for its moral teachings and for the beauty and power of its language. Those who heard him read or quote the Bible say that they never listened, even to the most eloquent preachers, with the same feeling of awe and reverence.

President Lincoln, "Tad," and the Goats

Both the President and Tad were very fond of a pair of pet goats and used to play with them for an hour at a time. One day when the goats were

Lincoln and Tad

playing by themselves on the White House lawn, Lincoln called a lady to the window and said:

"Come here and look at my two goats; notice how they sniff the air and play in the sunshine." Then, as one of them jumped up in the air and came down solid on his feet, as little goats have a way of doing to express their joy of living, Lincoln said:

"Whew, what a jump!"

Tad and the Photographers

Once Tad took possession of an unoccupied room at the White House and fitted up in it a little theater with stage, curtains, orchestra, stalls, parquet and everything. A few days afterward, some photographers went into the room to develop some pictures. When Tad heard about it he was very angry because they had not asked his permission. He locked the door and wouldn't let anybody in. When his father was told about it he said, very mildly:

"Tad, go and unlock the door."

But Tad, muttering to himself, went off to his mother's room. One of the artists tried to coax him but it did no good. When Lincoln was told of it, he closed his lips firmly and going straight to Mrs. Lincoln's room returned with the key to the little theater and unlocked the door himself. Then he explained to one of the artists about Tad.

"Tad," said he, "is a peculiar boy. He was violently excited when I went to him. I said, 'Tad, do you know you are making your father a great deal of trouble?' He burst into tears and gave me the key at once."

When Tad's Father Died

When Tad was told of his father's tragic death, it nearly broke his heart. For a long time he shut himself up and would speak to no one. Then one Sunday morning when the sun had risen in the clear and beautiful sky, he looked out of the window and said to a gentleman who had called on Mrs. Lincoln:

"Do you think my father has gone to heaven?"

"I have not a doubt of it," was the reply.

"Then," said Tad in a broken voice, "I am glad he has gone there for he was never happy after he came here. This was not a good place for him!"

Little "Dan" Webster's "Other Hand"

Here is a story of Daniel Webster's boyhood that Lincoln had heard and which he loved to repeat. One day at school Dan had done something quite naughty and was called up by the teacher for punishment. In those days it was common for the teacher to punish by using a ruler on the palm of the culprit's hand. Dan's hands were very dirty—as boys' hands sometimes are. On his way up to the teacher he wiped off the palm of his right hand the best he could against his trousers. When he held it out for punishment, the teacher looked at it and said:

"Daniel, if you will find another hand in this school room as dirty as that, I'll let you off."

"Here it is, sir," said Daniel, promptly holding out his left hand.

"That will do," said the teacher, "for this time; you can take your seat, sir."

The Boy and the Lost Apple

Lincoln was so easy to get at, that people used to come to him with all sorts of little complaints. One day, in order to impress a visitor with the idea that there were too many great things in those troubled times for him to think about to permit his going into all these little matters, he told the story of a lumberman, named Jack Chase, who was known as the best raftsman on the Mississippi. Jack afterward became captain of a steamer, and when the vessel was passing the rapids he always took charge of the wheel himself. One day when the boat was plunging and wallowing through a boiling current and it was all Jack could do to keep her in the channel, a boy, who was one of the passengers, pulled his coat-tail and shouted:

"Say, Mister Captain! I wish you would just stop the boat a minute—I've lost my apple overboard!"

The Boy and the Naval School

Once there was a boy named Willie Bladen, who wanted very much to go to the naval school. He had served on a gun-boat as powder-monkey in two important battles and had conducted himself with such coolness that he had been chosen as the captain's messenger. One requirement was that a candidate for a place in the school must be fourteen years of age. When Willie heard this he cried because he would not be fourteen until the September following. A member of Congress, in whose district Willie lived, went to the President to see what he could do. This is how he tells the rest of the story:

"Taking by the hand the little fellow—short for his age, dressed in the sailors' blue trousers and shirt,—I advanced with him to the President and said:

'Mr. President, my young friend, Willie Bladen, finds a difficulty about his appointment.' Before I got half through with the details, Mr. Lincoln laid down his spectacles, rose and said:

'Bless me! Is that the boy who did so gallantly in those two great battles? Why, I feel that I should bow to him and not he to me,' for the little fellow had made his graceful bow. Then the President took the papers and made the necessary order for the boy's appointment."

That Wonderful Dollar!

When Lincoln was a boy of eighteen, he built a little flatboat, with his mother's consent, to take some produce they had raised, down the river to New Orleans and sell it. Before he started he got an opportunity to carry some trunks on this raft to a steamer in the river. The two gentlemen to whom the trunks belonged, each tossed a half dollar. In telling the story to the members of his cabinet one evening, he said:

"I could scarcely believe my eyes as I picked up the money. Gentlemen, you may think it was a very little thing, but it was the most important incident in my life—that in less than a day I, a poor boy, had earned a dollar by honest work. The whole world seemed brighter and fairer before me. I was a more hopeful and confident being from that time."

Lincoln's High Ambition

Lincoln was, in one way, a very ambitious man. He was ambitious to do his duty in everything that came to him to do, whether large or small. And do you know that, with very few exceptions, all the men in the world who have become great, began in just this way—doing the best they could whatever work was nearest to them to do? Very few of them ever began to dream of large success until after large things began to grow out of these small beginnings.

Lincoln's feeling of gratitude that he was able to earn a dollar by honest work, governed his conduct throughout life. For instance, after he was elected president the second time he said:

"Being only mortal, after all, I should have been a little mortified if I had been beaten; but the sting would have been more than offset by the thought that the people had notified me that all my official responsibilities were soon to be lifted off my back." Doesn't that last remark remind you of what Tad said? "He never was happy after he came here. This was not a good place for him!"

A member of Congress who called on the President one morning in the winter of 1863, and found him looking more than usually pale and careworn, inquired the reason. He replied that with the bad news he had received on the previous night about a reverse of Union armies, he had not closed his eyes all night and could eat no breakfast, and exclaimed:

"How willingly would I exchange places today with the soldier who sleeps on the ground in the Army of the Potomac!"

Why Lincoln Laughed

Lincoln loved to tell and hear good stories, not only because a story is the best thing in the world with which to make a point or teach a lesson, but also because laughter, and looking at the humorous side of things occasionally were a great relief from the burdens and sadness of his own life. His laugh was very hearty. A congressman said one day as he heard the President's hearty voice in another room:

"That laugh has been the President's life preserver."

And Lincoln himself said one day that if it were not for this occasional "vent," he should die.

Minnehaha and Minneboohoo

Some gentlemen who had recently returned from what was then the "Far West," called at the White House, and, in the course of the conversation, spoke of a town in Nebraska called "Weeping Water." "That's a very picturesque name," said Mr. Lincoln, "but as 'laughing water,' according to Longfellow, is 'Minnehaha,' why didn't they give it an Indian name and call it Minneboohoo"?

The New Hat

Soon after his nomination in 1860, a hat manufacturer in Brooklyn sent him a very handsome hat which he had made especially for him. After admiring it for some moments, Mr. Lincoln put it on his head and walked up to a looking-glass. Glancing from the reflection in the mirror he said to Mrs. Lincoln, with a characteristic twinkle:

"Well, Wife, there is one thing likely to come out of this scrape, anyhow; we're going to have some new clothes!"

The Canvased Hams

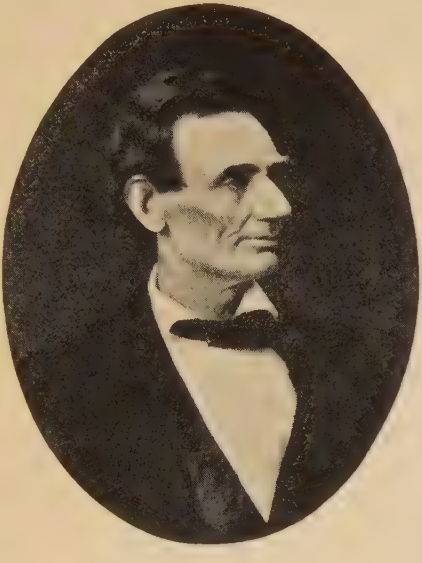
Lincoln used to joke a good deal about his own personal appearance. Among other things, about his hands. Although his hands were in good proportion to his body, he used to refer laughingly to their size. Once, when a congressman called on him, he found the president in his office dressed for a state dinner. Holding up his hands, on which were the conventional white gloves, he remarked with a laugh that an Illinois friend could never see his hands in that "predicament" without being reminded of "canvased hams."

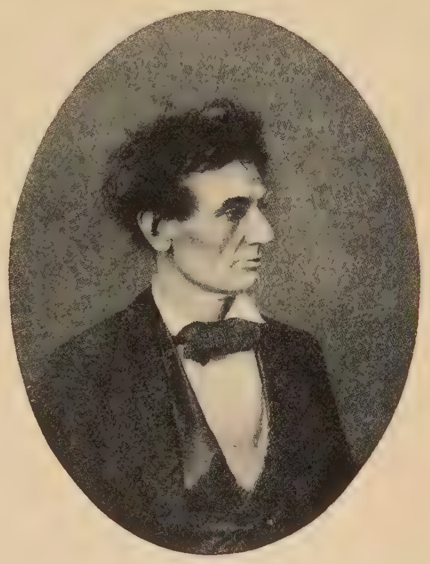
Lincoln's Unruly Hair

Of his rough, unmanageable hair, Lincoln once said it had "a way of getting up as far as possible in the world."

But in addition to what nature had done in making his hair so "ambitious," Mr. Lincoln had a habit when approaching some knotty point or situation, of running his fingers through his hair, which tumbled it up still more.

These Pictures Show Lincoln's Habit of Tumbling His Hair





You can see that in these two portraits, one of which was taken only a few moments after the other. This was shortly after his first nomination and before he began to grow the beard that you see in his later portraits. After the negative was taken for the first of the two pictures, and before the second exposure, he got to thinking about something and up went his fingers through his hair; with the result you see.

The Mother Who Smoothed His Hair

Once a mother who had two sons in the army and so was left without support, called on Lincoln to have one of them released. He said to her:

"I know what you wish me to do and I shall do it without your asking; I shall release to you your second son."

Upon this he took up his pen and began writing the order. The poor mother standing by his side with tears running down her face could not speak, but passed her hand softly over his head, stroking his rough hair. By the time he had finished the order his own eyes were full of tears.

The Handsomest of Men

Thaddeus Stevens once called at the White House with an elderly lady whose son had been in the army, and for some military offense had been sentenced to imprisonment at hard labor. After hearing all the facts, Lincoln wrote out a pardon. As the lady was passing down the stairs with Mr. Stevens on their way out, she suddenly said with much excitement:

"Why, they told me he was an ugly looking man. He is the handsomest man I ever saw in my life!"

O Captain! My Captain!

O Captain! my Captain! our fearful trip is done,
The ship has weathered every rack, the prize we sought is won;
The port is near, the bells I hear, the people all exulting,
While follow eyes the steady keel, the vessel grim and daring;
But, O heart! heart! heart
O the bleeding drops of red,
Where on my deck my Captain lies,
Fallen cold and dead.

O Captain! my Captain! rise up and hear the bells;
Rise up—for you the flag is flung—for you the bugle trills,
For you bouquets and ribboned wreaths—for you the shores a-crowding.
For you they call, the swaying mass, their eager faces turning;
Here Captain! dear father!
This arm beneath your head!
It is some dream that on the deck
You've fallen cold and dead.

My Captain does not answer, his lips are pale and still,
My father does not feel my arm, he has no pulse nor will.
The ship is anchored safe and sound, its voyage closed and done,
From fearful trip the victor ship comes in with object won;
Exult, O shores, and ring, O bells!
But I, with mournful tread,
Walk the deck my Captain lies,
Fallen cold and dead.

WALT WHITMAN

STORIES OF AMERICAN HISTORY

GRANT, LEE AND FARRAGUT

Three Great Military Leaders of the Civil War

First Sight of the Cavalry Group

When you visit Washington, one of these days, you will look up the Mall, one of the broad avenues leading to the Capitol and see this man galloping into view, and beyond him that immense white dome. He is a captain leading a charge in the Civil War and belongs to the Bronze Group which is part of the Grant memorial monument designed by Henry M. Shrady.

WHEN Lincoln issued his call for volunteers to defend the Union, mass meetings were held in every northern city and village. The meeting in Galena, an old Mississippi River town in northwestern Illinois, has become historic. One of the first men to come forward there was a son of Jesse Grant, an aging hardware merchant of the place. U. S. Grant was a man of thirty-nine, a shabby, middle-aged clerk in his father's store. Coming to Galena only a few years before, poor, obscure, and with nothing to say for himself, he had attracted no attention, and was generally looked upon as a failure.

Now he surprised the people of Galena by admitting modestly that he was a graduate of West Point Military Academy, and that he had resigned from the regular army with the rank of captain, in 1854. Very simply, he offered his services in training raw recruits. He thought he could "lick the boys into shape so they would

Chose the Duty Nearest Him

give a good account of themselves at the front." He was urged to go to Washington, where he would be restored to his rank in the army. There was a scarcity of trained officers, and his promotion would be rapid. He dismissed this suggestion with few words, organized a local company of volunteers and went with it to the state capital. This action was characteristic of the man. Politics and self-seeking were foreign to his nature. Like Lincoln, his ruling passion was devotion to the nearest duty.

Little Promise of His Greatness

There is nothing in Grant's early history to give any hint of his military genius. A number of other boys who were born in Point Pleasant, Ohio, the birthplace of General Harrison, who won fame as an Indian fighter in the War of 1812, also wanted to be soldiers. Hiram Ulysses Grant was not the most brilliant. It was just by dogged determination and plodding work that he prepared himself to pass the examinations and enter West Point at seventeen. This was in 1839. By an error in registering, his name was changed to Ulysses Simpson Grant. As "Simpson" was his mother's maiden name, the young cadet made no great effort to have the mistake corrected. Graduated in 1843, he was sent as a Lieutenant to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri. Before twenty-five he won distinction for gallant action in the Mexican War. Marrying Miss Julia Dent, the accomplished sister of a classmate, he spent six years in the service in California, in gold fever days.

Like Lincoln, a Failure in Business

He resigned from the army because there was little to do. It is true that the storm of the Civil War was gathering; but there had been talk of war for more than twenty years, and most of the people in the country thought there was too much smoke for any danger of fire. Captain Grant opened a real estate office in St. Louis, and also worked a small farm near the city. Like Lincoln and many other great men, he was a failure in business. His military title would have been a help to him, but he made no use of it. His office was soon closed. For a few years he was seen in the residence districts of the city, delivering cord wood in a farm wagon. This appeared to be his only source of income. Then he disappeared. Getting deeply into debt, he was obliged to sell his farm, and to remove his family to Galena. All his father could do for him was to offer him the small but regular wages of a clerk in his hardware store.

His Talent Begins to Be Recognized

In the training camp at Springfield, Illinois, his ability was recognized at once. Within a month he was made colonel of an infantry regiment. By August he was in the field as a brigadier-general, with headquarters at Cairo, and given the task of pushing southward, along both banks of the Mississippi. He was only an officer of volunteers, but, as a matter of fact, the great opportunity to make a military reputation, during the early years of the war, lay in the West. While Grant steadily smashed his way to Vicksburg, four generals, commanding the army of the Potomac, found themselves unable to make any headway against General Lee in Virginia.

Grant's first move was to capture Paducah, and secure Kentucky for the Union. His campaign was marked by military strategy, and aggressiveness. In November he routed the Confederate forces in Missouri. By February, 1862, he had pushed into western Tennessee. It was at the siege of Fort Donelson, where he captured a garrison of 14,000 men, that he wrote his famous "unconditional surrender" note that won him his nickname. It was as a major-general that he advanced to Shiloh, Iuka and Corinth. Leaving a series of brilliant victories behind him, he moved on Vicksburg. This fortified river port in Mississippi surrendered, with its garrison of 32,000 men, in July of 1863.

The Gunners and the Big Guns

This is the artillery group of the Grant monument. The gunners are shown sitting on the "limber." The limber consists of two wheels, an axle and a pole to which the horses are attached. The frame of the limber also supports one or more ammunition chests on which the gunners usually sit. When the guns are being got ready for action, the limber is detached from the gun carriage and so you hear the expression, "unlimbering the guns." As you may imagine, it isn't an easy thing to ride on the limber of a gun, and the men are here shown holding on, because there is a sudden jolt. The captain will give the order to unlimber in a few minutes. The gunners will then jump down and load the piece.

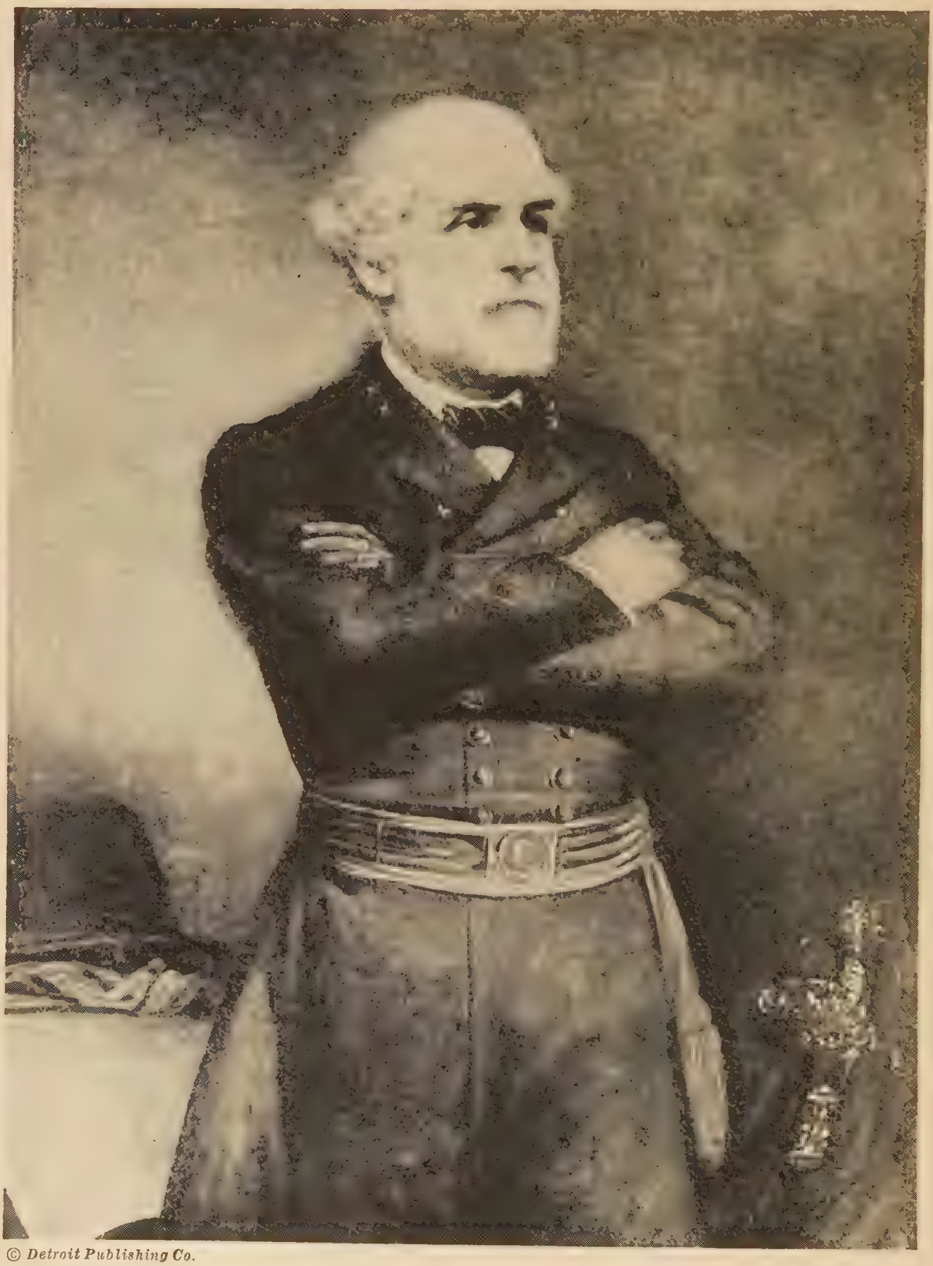
Farragut, by a naval expedition from the Gulf, had captured New Orleans the year before, and, then, after sixteen months of galling work under fire, had cleared the lower end of the river of Confederate fortifications, mines and gunboats. The river open, "unfettered from its source to the sea," as Lincoln said, and with Missouri, Arkansas, Texas and Louisiana lost to the Confederacy, Grant turned eastward to the relief of the Federal army, besieged and cut off from supplies, at Chattanooga. Tennessee was won in two battles, at Lookout Mountain and on Mission Ridge, in November, and the way was opened for Sherman's march through Georgia to the sea. By this plan the Confederacy was to be divided again, and Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, and Florida conquered. Farragut's part was to take Mobile from the Gulf.

Pitted Against General Lee

A Contest Between Two Giants

Grant was called from the West; made Lieutenant-General of the Union armies, and given the supreme task of driving back and forcing the surrender of General Robert E. Lee. For three years this Confederate leader had operated in Virginia, crossed Maryland, and penetrated into southern Penn-

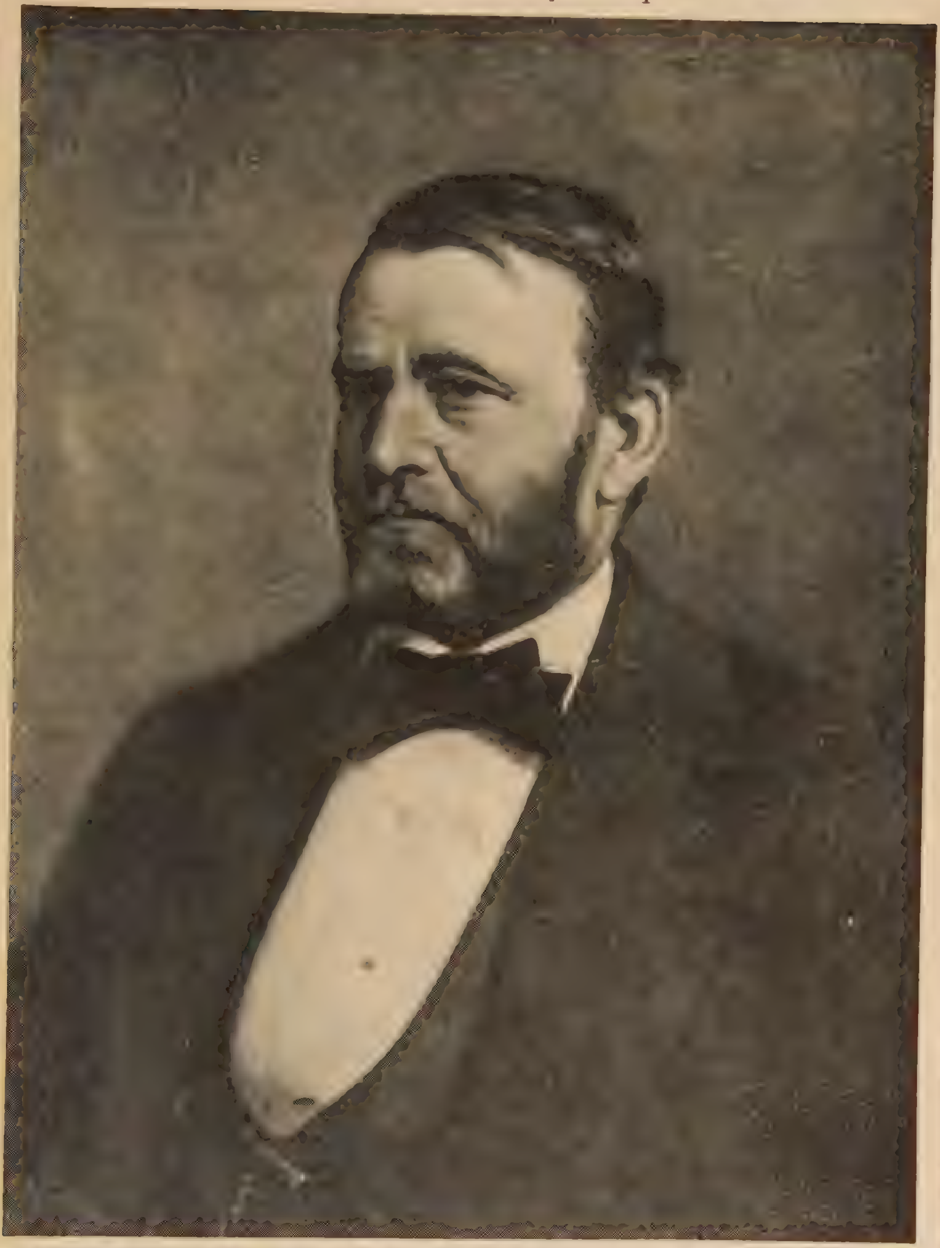
The Brilliant Leader of the Southern Armies



© *Detroit Publishing Co.*

This portrait of Lee, which is to be seen in the Corcoran Gallery of Art in Washington, expresses admirably the character of a very intellectual man of good breeding and polished manners. It expresses no less the man who refused a high command in the Federal armies with certainty of rapid promotion and consented to lead the armies of the South in what he must have known was probably a lost cause because he believed his duty and service lay with his own state rather than with that of the national government. Although he fought a losing fight, he left a record as one of the greatest generals, as well as one of the noblest characters, in all history.

The Man of Steady Purpose



A man of quite a different type from General Lee, but equally unselfish and equally patriotic was General Grant. We can read in this fine portrait the steady purpose, the firm determination which sent the message to the Chief of Staff at Washington: "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." Both Lee and Grant had seen service in the Mexican War and each had the greatest respect for the other's character and abilities. On the day of surrender at Appomattox, the great leaders, after shaking hands chatted over incidents of the Mexican conflict before Grant drew up the simple terms of surrender to which Lee subscribed his name.

sylvania. He had lost battles, but had always escaped with his army. He had broken the reputations of four Union commanders of the Army of the Potomac. And even after his crushing defeat at Gettysburg he had retired in good order. He found his match in "Unconditional Surrender" Grant. All the western world watched the titanic duel between the two great commanders of armies that were produced by the Civil War.

Grant moved southward in March of 1864, and soon met the enemy in the terrible Battle of The Wilderness. Criticized for his sacrifice of troops in his smashing drives, Grant replied tersely: "I'll fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." There was, indeed, no other way to conquer Lee and end the war. It took all summer and all winter, and into the early months of the next spring. Sherman reached Savannah before Christmas, while Grant was still fighting Lee at Spottsylvania, at North Anna and Cold Harbor Slowly Lee's exhausted, ill-supplied army was pressed back. But it stood a long siege at Petersburg; escaped from that city and from Richmond, and made a last gallant stand at Appomattox Courthouse. The Confederate armies surrendered on April 9th, 1865. The war was over.

Grant's Saddle and the Story of the Teamster

This is the saddle and bridle used by Grant in his campaigns and is one of the relics of her great General which the State of Illinois preserves in the collection of the Chicago Historical Society. Grant was fond not only of the noble horse that bore him through so many battles, but of horses in general, and one of the only two occasions in which he lost his temper during the Civil War, was when he saw a teamster beating a horse over the head. Throwing himself from this saddle, he seized the teamster, who was a big coarse man, by the throat and shook him furiously.

His Attitude Toward Lee

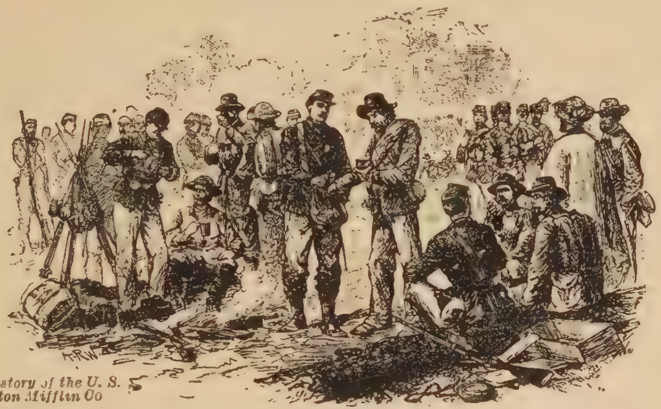
Hailed as the deliverer of the nation, General Grant went to Washington to hasten the disbanding of the army. With noble magnanimity he had refused to take Lee's sword from him, and to the Confederate troops he had left their horses; "to ride home and use in plowing their ravaged fields." He threatened to resign if Lee was tried for treason.

His Election to the Presidency

In 1868, General Grant was elected president, the third "hero on horseback" to ride into the White House. The other two were Indian fighters in the War of 1812—General Jackson elected in 1828, and General Harrison in 1840. As a president, Grant's personal conduct was marked by the same characteristics as when he commanded armies. His eight years in office covered most of the difficult period of reconstruction in the South, and the retirement of the paper money issued during the war. Politics were bitter and times hard. A soldier who did not understand political methods, his confidence was sometimes betrayed. He made a real contribution to good government by securing the passage of the first civil service reform bill; and he clarified international relations in his treaty with Great Britain, in which was defined the rights of neutral nations in time of war.

East and West were in rivalry to do him honor, when he made his tour around the world in 1877. On his return home he found himself too poor to maintain his family in his enforced prominent position. The salary of the president was, at that time, only $25,000 a year, and he had been able to save little. Investing his capital and lending his name to a banking firm, he was robbed by dishonest partners and connected with a disgraceful failure. A fall had injured him so that he was obliged to use a crutch.

Union Soldiers Sharing Their Rations



From Fiske's History of the U. S. Courtesy Houghton Mifflin Co

There were many times during the Civil War when the soldiers on both sides showed that they felt toward one another like brothers, although they were fighting on opposite sides. This picture shows Union soldiers sharing their rations with the half-starved men in gray.

The Death of a Hero

Dictation of His Memoirs

Bankrupt, crippled, dying of cancer of the tongue, at the age of sixty-two, the last year of his life was the most heroic. A publishing company had offered him a large sum and heavy royalties for his memoirs. So he earned a fortune for his family. He dictated to his secretary for hours, every day, when it was agony for him to speak. The work fills two large volumes, and literary critics have compared his military autobiography with Caesar's Commentaries. He fought out his last battle on that line. The task was completed only four days before his death at Saratoga, New York, in July, 1885.

Robert E. Lee

His Affectionate Nickname

ONE of the pleasantest discoveries, in reading American history, is that so many of our great men won nicknames that were tributes of affection and admiration from the people of their time. To Robert E. Lee, the military genius of the Confederate States, was given the title of loving respect that was used by his negro servants on the beautiful estate of Arlington, were he was "master." To the entire South he was, and is today, "Marse Robert."

His Belief in States' Rights

To understand General Lee, the noblest of all the men who took up arms against the Union in the Civil War, you must remember, that from the framing of the Constitution, the most patriotic men in the country were divided on the question whether we should have a strong federal government, or a loose confederation of sovereign states. Had they been living at the time of the Civil War, Washington and Hamilton would have been true to their principles in defending the Union. Jefferson, equally patriotic, would, in all probability, have decided that he owed fealty to his native state of Virginia. Federalist sentiment was always strongest in the North; Democratic principles finally dominated the South.

His Distinguished Ancestry

Robert E. Lee was a Virginian, born in 1807, the son of "Lighthorse" Harry Lee of Revolutionary fame. Two of his ancestors were signers of the Declaration of Independence, and political disciples of Jefferson. Other members of the family served in the Constitutional Convention, in Congress, and in the army. The Lees were the Adamses of Virginia. Every generation furnished its distinguished men to the public service. It was in accordance with family traditions that Robert E. Lee, and his son after him, should go to the West Point Military Academy. Taking the engineering course, he was graduated with honors at twenty-three. Two years later he was married to Miss Mary Custis, a great-granddaughter of Martha Washington, and heiress of the estate of Arlington, on the Potomac River opposite the Capital.

How Much He Had to Sacrifice

Fortune seemed to have marked Robert E. Lee for its own. He had birth, wealth, a cultivated mind, courtly manners, a handsome face, personal happiness and, as the years went by, he added eminence in his profession. As chief engineer of the army, he won distinction in the Mexican War. Then, as Superintendent of West Point Academy in the fifties, he introduced the best military methods of Europe. While there he admonished his own son, among other cadets:

"Duty is the sublimest word in the human language. You cannot do more than your duty; you should never wish to do less."

When Virginia seceded from the Union, Lee was confronted with the question whether his duty was due to his country or to his home state. In deciding to resign his commission in the army, and offer his services to Virginia, it must not be forgotten that he sacrificed every material interest. Immediate promotion to command of the Union armies awaited him, with protection for his family and home within the fortifications of the Capital. He was a ruined man; his wife's birthplace and his children's inheritance lost, his family in exile, and Union troops encamped on beautiful Arlington. when he deliberately chose to lead what he must have known to be a hopeless cause.

Historians are agreed that, in Robert E. Lee, the federal government lost a military genius. Not until General Grant was developed by the campaigns in the West, did the northern army produce his equal. It was his superior organization, strategy and engineering which enabled him to hold Virginia in a deadly grip for three years. From April, 1861, to July, 1863, he fought a dozen historic battles, crossed Maryland, and penetrated into southern Pennsylvania. He was not always the victor—was defeated at Antietam and Gettysburg; but he always managed to retreat in good order, to save his army, and to protect the roads to Richmond. As we have said in the sketch of Grant, he successively discredited, and brought to failure the plans of four Union generals placed in command of the Army of the Potomac.

When Grant was called from the West and began his march toward "The Wilderness," in the spring of 1864, Lee still menaced the Capital. Then, for a year, his ragged and starving armies, while slowly retreating contested every vantage ground in a half-dozen pitched battles. He stood a long siege and escaped from Petersburg and from Richmond, before he was conquered at Appomattox Courthouse.

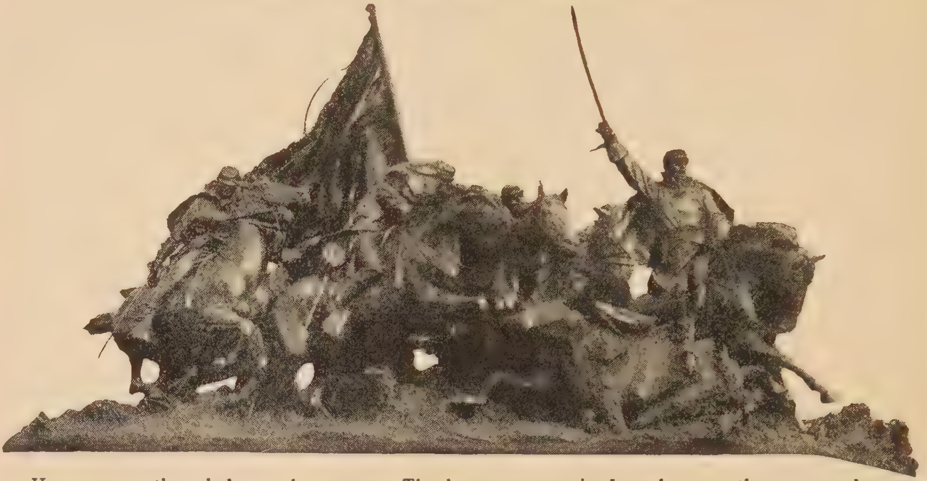
Lee's surrender ended the war; and he need not have surrendered. By breaking up his army into bands of guerillas and retreating to the mountains, he could have prolonged the struggle indefinitely. This he refused to do. With a nobility rare in history, he accepted defeat and shared the ruin of the southern people. Foreign governments offered him wealth and the highest military offices, in return for his services. But, although impoverished and prematurely aged by the war, with Arlington confiscated and turned into a national cemetery, he set himself to the task of making his country once more a union of loyal states. He accepted the presidency of Washington and Lee University at Lexington, Virginia. Its doors had been closed for four years. Within the next five years 900 students came under his influence. By his spirit of resignation, and co-operation with the government, he cooled the hot heads and sweetened the bitter hearts of the rising generation. This was his last call to duty, his part in the work of reconstruction that finally built up a New South.

General Lee and the New South

He knew that, dreadful as was the ruin, it would be repaired in time, and Blue and Gray would clasp hands above the many graves of the Civil War. But the day of restoration and reconciliation must have seemed far away indeed when, in October, 1870, "Marse Robert" fell asleep, and was laid away under the college chapel.

On the 19th of January, 1907, the

A Closer View of the Cavalry Group



Here we see the whole cavalry group. The horses seem mixed up because they are no longer in the line formation with which a cavalry charge begins. After the first formal charge, there are apt to be little side skirmishes over the battlefield and the ranks are broken up just as shown here. The ground is very rough and one of the horses has fallen.

centenary of his birth was celebrated, not only by Virginia and the South, but by the nation. All parties, and the press of every political opinion, united to honor one of our greatest soldiers and noblest characters. His eulogy was pronounced by an Adams of Massachusetts.

David Glasgow Farragut

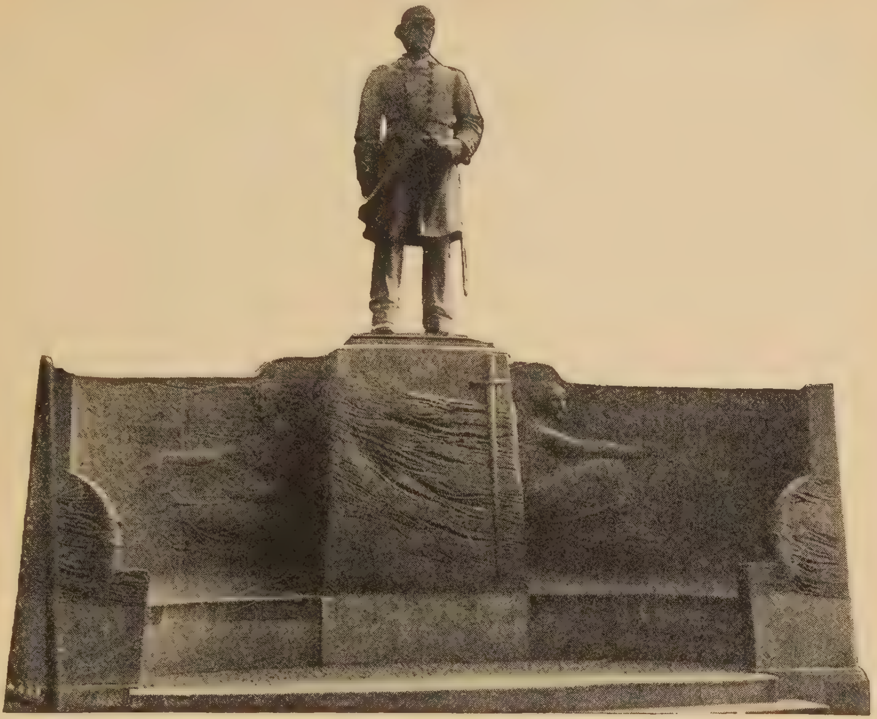
AT the beginning of the Civil War another eminent man was placed in the same difficult position as General Lee. This was Commodore Farragut, who had been in the United States naval service for a half-century, although he was only sixty years old. Born in Tennessee in 1801, the year Jefferson was inaugurated president, he had found a wife and a permanent home in Virginia. His heart torn between love for his country and for the South, he did not hesitate a moment in his decision that his fealty belonged to the Union.

How Farragut Decided

A Midshipman at the Age of Ten

A few years before his birth his father, who belonged to an old Spanish family of the Gulf Coast, emigrated to the little backwoods settlement of Knoxville, Tennessee. The mother was of Scotch descent, which accounts for the son being christened David Glasgow. Like many other pioneers of that early day, the Farraguts had the best of social connections in the East and South. One of the friends who did not forget them was Commodore Porter of the navy. He offered the little son a berth as midshipman. As our naval academy at Annapolis was not established until 1845, cadets were then taken at an early age, and trained on shipboard, at sea Farragut was only ten years old when he left his backwoods home, journeyed across the mountains, and was put aboard the frigate *Essex*. There with other homesick boys, he went to school every minute he was awake,

The Saint Gaudens Statue of Farragut



© Underwood & Underwood

This is the famous statue of Farragut by Augustus Saint Gaudens. It stands in Madison Square, New York City. The Admiral is represented as watching an action at sea. His frock coat is buttoned close and the skirt flies loose in the wind. In his hand he holds a double field glass. The legs are a little apart as would be natural on shipboard, and his face and attitude expresses the chief commander, conscious of his responsibility; the man to whose skill, courage and judgment has been committed the life of his men and the honor of his country. A French critic, speaking of the original design of the statue as it was exhibited in Paris, says that the whole figure expresses "the boldness of conception and initiative force peculiar to Americans."

The figure surmounts a curving wall with a seat like the outdoor marble benches of the Greeks. Each of the two arms of the seat are formed by the curved back of a fish, typical of the sea. Across the base of the statue are sea waves. The sword is symbolic of battle, while the two female figures represent Loyalty and Courage.

learning to be a sailor, a scholar and a gentleman.

Within two years he was in the thick of the naval fighting of the War of 1812. In the sea battle off Valparaiso, Chile, the young "middy" acted as powder boy; and he took a prize ship into the harbor of Santiago. Then followed forty-five years of routine duty. He lived on training-ships, instructing classes of cadets. He tested naval guns; made long cruises at sea; superintended the work of constructing the naval station of Mare Island at San Francisco, and helped plan the equipment and the course of instruction of the new naval academy.

Penalty of a Neglected Navy

In all his long service there had, with the exception of the introduction of steam, been very little improvement in naval construction. American merchant ships, both sail and steam, were on every ocean, trading in every port of the world, but because of our long peace and our sense of security in the protection of two wide oceans, the government had grown careless. In 1861 our navy had dwindled to ninety vessels of all classes. Only forty of these were steamships. Many were in foreign ports at the time of the firing on Fort Sumter; and as there were no ocean cables to call them home quickly, it took weeks to reach them by mail. Others were undergoing repairs; some were condemned as unseaworthy, or had to be equipped with modern guns and supplies. A total of only thirteen vessels were ready for instant use.

And Then Came the Great War

Naval commanders were dismayed by the task before them, with the old-fashioned, insignificant fleet at their service. The coast, from Virginia to Texas, had to be blockaded, to cut off the foreign trade of the South. Seaports and forts had to be captured, and the great bays—especially the Chesapeake—guarded; commerce protected; blockade runners brought in as prizes, or sunk; and the cruisers that the Confederacy was certain to purchase abroad, chased and destroyed.

Merchant steamers were sent out to bring naval vessels home; others were built as rapidly as possible, and ships in the merchant marine were purchased and refitted. Within a few months we had four hundred naval vessels, and John Ericsson was building the iron-clad "Monitor" which, with the Confederate "Merrimac," was to revolutionize naval construction. Admiral Farragut, however, fought his historic battles with wooden ships.

The war was only nine months old, and Grant was in western Tennessee, when Farragut was sent to clear the lower Mississippi of Confederate forts and gunboats, and captured New Orleans. He was given a fleet of forty-eight vessels mounted with two hundred guns, the largest ever fitted out by the government up to that time. But not one of his ships was an iron-clad; quite half of them were sailing vessels, almost impossible to maneuvre in the narrow, winding channels of the river where there was seldom enough wind to fill the sails; and even the steamers had been built for sea service.

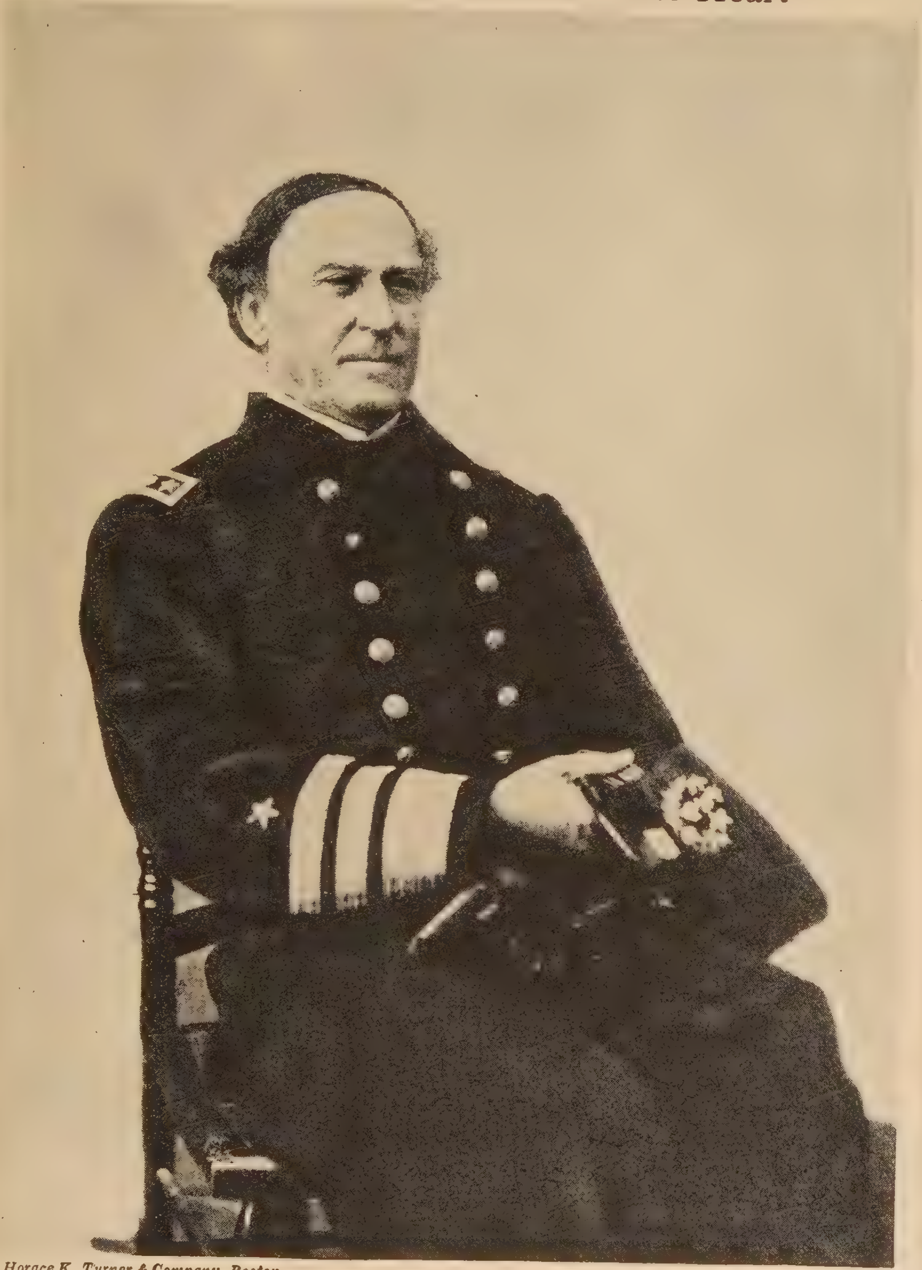
The Task Set Before Him

A Master of Strategy and Daring

Modern naval battles,—those of Dewey at Manila, Togo in the Japan Sea, and the engagements of the great European war which began in 1914, cannot be properly compared with the feats of Farragut of more than a half-century before, for all the conditions of modern naval construction and gunnery are different. His fleet and weapons were very little better than those of Nelson in the Napoleonic wars of fifty years before; the difficulties that he overcame were much greater, and his operations extended over a longer period of time. In daring he matched Paul Jones of Revolutionary fame, while as a master of strategy he was the equal of Grant or Lee on land

New Orleans was well defended. The Eads jetties had not yet been built to open and deepen the South

The Brave Man with the Tender Heart

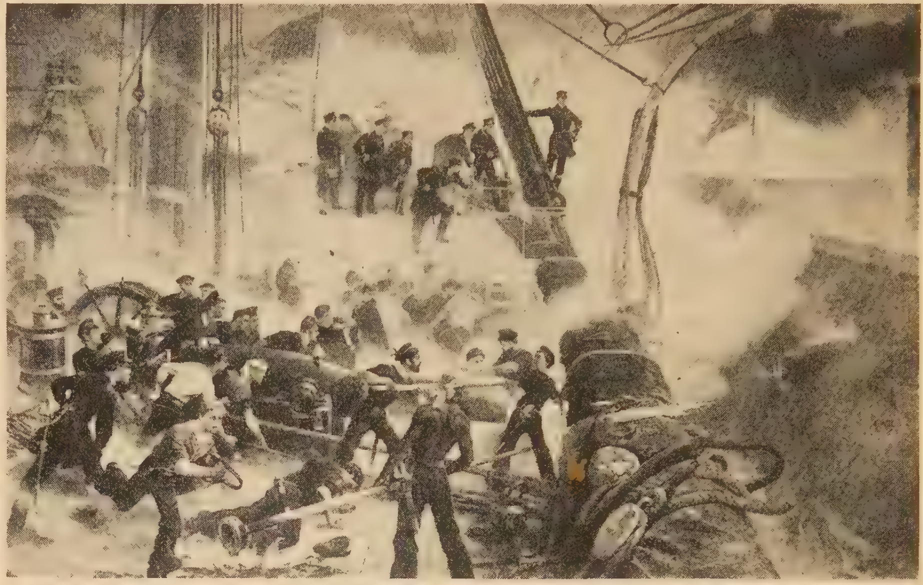


© *Horace K. Turner & Company, Boston*

This is the great naval commander after fifty years in the service of his country. Like England's hero, Nelson, he began his naval career as a boy. When only twelve he took a prizeship in the War of 1812, into Santiago, Chile, and served as powder-boy in the battle of Valparaiso.

Utterly fearless as to his personal safety, and of incredible daring in an attack, he had, like other brave men, a very tender heart. After the battle of Mobile Bay when the dead were laid out on the deck on the flag ship, he could not speak for weeping.

Farragut and the Pilot's Foot at Mobile Bay



Here is how the painter, W. H. Overand, tells us about the battle of Mobile Bay. The original of the painting is in the Wadsworth Athenaeum at Hartford. The general character of the action is well shown, but it is not absolutely accurate as to details. Farragut stood in the main rigging as here shown, but higher up near the platform surrounding the head of the lower mast, because from this high position he could get a wide view of all that was going on. This platform is called the "top," and, as you can see by turning to the word in your unabridged dictionary, has a hole in it called the "lubber's hole." Farragut standing in the rigging, reached his arm through the lubber's hole and took hold of the foot of the pilot who was standing on the "top." Whenever he wanted to give an order, he squeezed the pilot's foot as a signal. The pilot bent his ear down to the lubber's hole, got the order and then turning, shouted it to the helmsman. It was only by such an arrangement that the voice of the commander away up in the rigging could be heard above the noise of the battle.

How New Orleans Was Defended

Pass. The narrow channel was so choked with mud that vessels were always in danger of running aground. And as soon as the fleet reached deep water it found the river crossed by great chain cables fastened to anchored barges. Above the cables, and seventy-five miles below the city, the Mississippi was flanked by two forts mounted with naval guns. The bed of the channel was sown with mines, and above the forts waited a flotilla of Confederate gunboats.

A Wonderful Victory

Farragut boldly entered the river, and worked his way through shallow water up to the cables. For a week he bombarded the forts, while they tried to destroy his fleet. Cutting the cables and towing away the barges, he plowed over the mines and ran past the forts, under dreadful fire. Then he engaged the flotilla of gunboats, sank them and captured New Orleans. General Butler, waiting on Ship Island, with an army of 15,000 men, marched in and occupied the city. The task was completed in three months' time, with the loss of one ship and thirty-seven men.

Why He Was Called "Old Salamander"

For the next sixteen months, while Grant was moving southward and laying siege to Vicksburg, Farragut worked his way up stream, so continuously under fire from shore fortifications and gunboats, and so invariably the victor, that he won the nickname of "Old Salamander." And then, the Mississippi conquered, he descended to the Gulf. In 1864, as a part of Sherman's campaign across Georgia to Savannah, he fought the battle of Mobile—one of the most brilliant victories in naval history. The poet Holmes called him:

"The Viking of the River Fight,
The conqueror of the Bay."

As was the case with General Lee, the war wrecked his health. He was retired soon afterward with the rank of Admiral, which was created to reward his services and to give recognition to his genius as the greatest of American naval heroes. A statue of him was erected in Farragut Square, Washington; and New York City has another, modeled by Saint Gaudens, the sculptor of the Lincoln statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

Compared to Lord Nelson

In character we are proud to find in Admiral Farragut the finest qualities of Lord Nelson, England's naval hero of the battles of Copenhagen, the Nile and Trafalgar. Beginning his services at the age of ten, as Nelson began his at thirteen, he had done every kind of work in seamanship, gunnery and naval construction. At any moment he could have taken the place, and done the work, of any man on his fleet.

He Wept at Sight of the Dead

Honest, upright, religious, a strict disciplinarian, but of quick sympathies, he commanded respect and instant obedience, but he also inspired enthusiasm and won the warmest affection. As tender-hearted as Nelson, he wept like a child when the dead were laid out on deck, after the battle of Mobile.

"The bravest are the tenderest,
The loving are the daring."

Sheridan's Ride

Up from the South at break of day
Bringing to Winchester fresh dismay,
The affrighted air with a shudder bore,
Like a herald in haste, to the chieftain's door,
The terrible grumble and rumble, and roar,
Telling the battle was on once more—
And Sheridan twenty miles away.
And wider still those billows of war
Thundered along the horizon's bar;
And louder yet into Winchester rolled
The roar of that red sea uncontrolled,
Making the blood of the listener cold,
As he thought of the stake in that fiery fray—
And Sheridan twenty miles away.

But there is a road from Winchester town,
A good, broad highway leading down;
And there, through the flush of the morning light,
A steed as black as the steeds of night
Was seen to pass as with eagle flight;

* * * *

Still spring from those swift hoofs, thundering South,
The dust, like smoke from the cannon's mouth,
Or the trail of a comet, sweeping faster and faster,
Forboding to traitors the doom of disaster.
The heart of the steed and the heart of the master,
Were beating like prisoners assaulting their walls,
Impatient to be where the battle field calls:
Every nerve of the charger was strained to full play,
With Sheridan only ten miles away.

Under his spurning feet the road
Like an arrowy Alpine river flowed,
And the landscape sped away behind
Like an ocean flying before the wind,
And the steed, like a bark fed with furnace fire,
Swept on, with his wild eye full of fire.
But lo! He is nearing his heart's desire:
He is snuffing the smoke of the roaring fray,
With Sheridan only five miles away.

The first that the general saw were the groups
Of stragglers, and then the retreating troops.
What was done—what to do? A glance told him both.
Then, striking his spurs, with a terrible oath
He dashed down the line, 'mid a storm of huzzas,
And the wave of retreat checked its course there, because
The sight of the master compelled it to pause.
With foam and with dust the black charger was gray;
By the flash of his eye and the red nostrils' play,
He seemed to the whole great army to say:
"I have brought you Sheridan all the way
From Winchester down to save the day."
Hurrah! hurrah for Sheridan!
Hurrah! Hurrah for horse and man!
And when their statues are placed on high,
Under the dome of the Union sky,
The American soldiers' Temple of Fame,
There, with the glorious general's name,
Be it said, in letters both bold and bright:
"Here is the steed that saved the day,
By carrying Sheridan into the fight,
From Winchester, twenty miles away!"

T. Buchanan Read

"IN THE PAGES OF GOOD BOOKS
LIES THE MAGIC TO INSPIRE OUR
DREAMS AND THE POWER TO MAKE
THOSE DREAMS COME TRUE"